



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

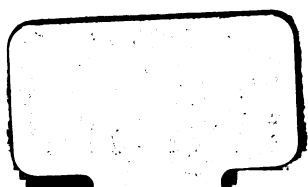
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

FREUDENBERG.

GERMAN GRAMMAR.



600084313P



A NEW
PRACTICAL METHOD
OF LEARNING THE
GERMAN LANGUAGE

BY
W. FREUDENBERG.

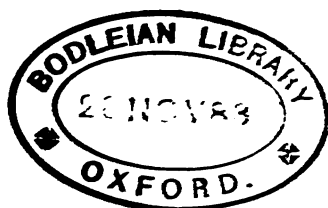
PART I:
GRAMMAR AND EXERCISES.

~~~~~  
LONDON:  
DAVID NUTT, 270 Strand.  
HEIDELBERG: CARL WINTER'S UNIVERSITÄTSBUCHHANDLUNG.  
1884.

303.

.2.

100.



All rights reserved.

## PREFACE.

---

The method of learning the German language pursued in the following pages is founded throughout on a grammatical system, though this may not be apparent at the first glance. An experience of more than thirty years in teaching has led me to the conclusion, that in a grammatical work, if too many rules are given, there is a great danger of their being insufficiently regarded, or soon forgotten, and that even those most essential to correctness of writing and speaking, are probably overlooked. For this reason, I have given rules only in those cases where the German language differs from the English, taking no account of those in which the two languages correspond. This principle considerably reduced the number of necessary rules, thus making them much easier for the pupil to remember.

I have also observed, that many German grammars for the use of English people teach the *grammar* carefully and correctly, but neglect to supply the *material* necessary to speak, read and write the language. The examples that illustrate the rules, especially the exercises belonging to them, are too plain — too uniform — and provide but a very limited vocabulary, so that when the book is finished, and even when it has been carefully studied, a pupil may have a fair acquaintance with the German *grammar*, but knows very little of the German *language*.

These considerations induced me to write the present «Practical Method of learning the German language». It



— IV —

contains ample material for ordinary intercourse — speaking and writing —, so that a diligent and intelligent student will soon be able to make himself understood, and after six or nine months' study to read German books with ease.

I wish to show some peculiar results of my work. That which often offers a foreigner great difficulties, for more or less talented students almost unsurmountable, are the German declensions of the nouns with the adjectives, the definite and indefinite article, or without any article, in the three genders, singular and plural. I have tried in my method to introduce the various forms of the declensions gradually and in a compact way, the adjective only when the pupil is fully acquainted with the noun and its declension, so that this part of the grammar, otherwise so difficult and confusing to foreigners, will be easily acquired.

The acquirement of the dreadful gender of the German nouns, I obviated by adding to them, not an «m, f, n», but always the full article, and making my pupils learn the noun inseparably together with its article.

Another difficulty for a foreigner is the position of the words in sentences, the place which the past participle and infinitive, the separable particle of compound verbs take in principal and accessory sentences, and the frequent inversions used with predilection by Germans (*gestern war ich, gern käme ich* &c.). When taught in the clear and summary way of this grammar, they can not offer any difficulty.

Our subjunctive, especially as it is used in the indirect way of speech, is peculiar to the German language, and so very deviating from the English and French. I adopted here, as generally in my method, the rules and principles of Becker's standard German grammar, though the custom of the language is vacillating about the employment of the

present and imperfect of the subjunctive, as: *Er behauptete, er sei (wäre) krank*. The rules on this mood, I hope, are short, clear and easy to remember.

My punctuation in the English exercises deviates on purpose from the English and corresponds with the German way, to facilitate German punctuation.

There are however one or two points of my method that must not be overlooked, as their strict observation is essential to success. *I. Every lesson must be thoroughly studied and known before a new lesson can be begun. Even the first grammatical lesson presupposes a full knowledge of all the words of the preceding reading lessons given for the German pronunciation. II. Every exercise is to be read over repeatedly until the student is able to translate it with as much fluency in German, as if he were reading it in his own language. III. Most careful repetitions are to be made every four or five lessons, so that the pupil may always have such a full command of the material he has learned, as to be able to use it with facility in conversation.*

If a student uses «the Practical Method» in this way, a *satisfactory* knowledge of the German language after six months, and an *extensive* knowledge after twelve months will be the gratifying result of his study.

Coblenz 1883.

W. F.

# CONTENTS.

|                                                                                                   | Seite. |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| 1. Section. Pronunciation. The vowels . . . . .                                                   | 1      |
| 2. " " The consonants . . . . .                                                                   | 2      |
| 3. " The present tense of the <i>verbs</i> . . . . .                                              | 3      |
| 4. " Declension of nouns with the <i>definite</i> article in singular . . . . .                   | 5      |
| 5. " The <i>indefinite</i> article . . . . .                                                      | 7      |
| 6. " Accusative of the personal and reflective pronouns . . . . .                                 | 8      |
| 7. " <i>Prepositions</i> that govern the <i>accusative</i> . . . . .                              | 9      |
| 8. " Some <i>prepositions</i> that govern the <i>dative</i> . . . . .                             | 10     |
| 9. " Interrogative words . . . . .                                                                | 11     |
| 10. " Nouns that take <i>n</i> in the genitive . . . . .                                          | 13     |
| 11. " Declension of the personal pronouns . . . . .                                               | 15     |
| 12. " Verbs which govern a dative (person) and accusative (thing) without a preposition . . . . . | 19     |
| 13. " Past participle of the <i>regular verbs</i> . <i>Perfect tense</i> . . . . .                | 20     |
| 14. " Past participle of <i>irregular verbs</i> . . . . .                                         | 22     |
| 15. " Verbs which take the auxiliary <i>sein</i> . . . . .                                        | 24     |
| 16. " <i>Prepositions</i> that govern the <i>dative</i> and <i>accusative</i> . . . . .           | 25     |
| 17. " The prepositions <i>at</i> and <i>to</i> . . . . .                                          | 28     |
| 18. " The <i>auxiliaries</i> of mood . . . . .                                                    | 30     |
| 19. " Their perfect . . . . .                                                                     | 31     |
| 20. " Irregularity in the perfect tense . . . . .                                                 | 32     |
| 21. " <i>Plural</i> of nouns. <i>Cardinal numerals</i> . . . . .                                  | 33     |
| 22. " One more, no more . . . . .                                                                 | 35     |
| 23. " Nouns with the plural termination: <i>er</i> . . . . .                                      | 36     |
| 24. " Masculine and neuter nouns terminating in: <i>el, en, er, gen und lein</i> . . . . .        | 37     |
| 25. " Plural of feminine nouns . . . . .                                                          | 38     |
| 26. " Masculine nouns terminating in <i>e</i> take <i>n</i> in plural . . . . .                   | 39     |
| 27. " <i>Irregular</i> declensions . . . . .                                                      | 41     |
| 28. " Adjectives. Adverbs . . . . .                                                               | 43     |
| 29. " Declension of the <i>adjectives</i> , <i>attributively</i> used . . . . .                   | 44     |
| 30. " The plural of adjectives . . . . .                                                          | 48     |
| 31. " <i>Adverbs</i> of time and place and their position . . . . .                               | 50     |
| 32. " <i>Adverbs</i> of rest and motion . . . . .                                                 | 52     |
| 33. " Comparison of the adjectives and adverbs . . . . .                                          | 54     |
| 34. " The adjective not preceded by an article or a pronoun . . . . .                             | 57     |
| 35. " Adjective-substantives with the definite and indefinite article . . . . .                   | 59     |

— VII —

|                                                                                                                                                     | Seite. |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------|
| 35. Section. The prepositions: <i>an, in, vor, nach, seit, um, zu</i> with reference to time . . . . .                                              | 61     |
| 36. " Position of the <i>personal pronouns</i> and the <i>nouns</i> as objects <i>without</i> and <i>with</i> a preposition . . . . .               | 63     |
| 37. " <i>Adverbien</i> in <i>Superlativform</i> . . . . .                                                                                           | 65     |
| 38. " The <i>present tense</i> in <i>German</i> , the <i>perfect</i> in <i>English</i> . . . . .                                                    | 66     |
| 39. " <i>Inversion</i> . . . . .                                                                                                                    | 67     |
| 40. " The ordinal numerals . . . . .                                                                                                                | 69     |
| 41. " <i>Coordinate conjunctions</i> that require an inversion of the subject (Lesson 39) . . . . .                                                 | 71     |
| 42. " <i>Impersonal verbs</i> . . . . .                                                                                                             | 72     |
| 43. " <i>Absolute possessive pronouns</i> . . . . .                                                                                                 | 75     |
| 44. " The <i>imperfect</i> of the auxiliaries of time and mood . . . . .                                                                            | 76     |
| 45. " The absolute possessive pronouns used without an article . . . . .                                                                            | 77     |
| 46. " The <i>imperfect</i> of <i>regular verbs</i> . . . . .                                                                                        | 78     |
| 47. " The <i>imperfect</i> of <i>irregular verbs</i> I . . . . .                                                                                    | 79     |
| 48. " <i>Irregular verbs</i> II . . . . .                                                                                                           | 81     |
| 49. " <i>Irregular verbs</i> III . . . . .                                                                                                          | 84     |
| 50. " <i>Derivative verbs</i> with <i>inseparable prefixes</i> . . . . .                                                                            | 86     |
| 51. " <i>Derivative verbs</i> with <i>separable prefixes</i> . . . . .                                                                              | 91     |
| 52. " Some verbs personally used in <i>English</i> , <i>impersonally</i> in <i>German</i> . . . . .                                                 | 97     |
| 53. " The <i>indefinite pronouns</i> : <i>man, es, das</i> . . . . .                                                                                | 98     |
| 54. " There is, there are <i>es find, es ist, es giebt</i> . . . . .                                                                                | 100    |
| 55. " <i>Deviating position</i> of the article. Contraction of the pronouns <i>it, them, what</i> with a preposition. What (what kind of) . . . . . | 102    |
| 56. " The <i>relative and determinative pronouns</i> I . . . . .                                                                                    | 104    |
| 57. " The relative pronoun <i>der, die, das</i> (II) . . . . .                                                                                      | 108    |
| 58. " <i>Relative pronouns</i> III . . . . .                                                                                                        | 108    |
| 59. " The <i>future tenses</i> . . . . .                                                                                                            | 110    |
| 60. " The <i>passive voice</i> , present, imperfect, perfect. The <i>subordinate conjunctions</i> : <i>wenn, als, weil</i> . . . . .                | 113    |
| 61. " The verbs <i>sein</i> and <i>werden</i> . . . . .                                                                                             | 116    |
| 62. " <i>Subordinate conjunctions</i> I: <i>Wenn, wann, als, ehe, bis, daß, nachdem</i> . . . . .                                                   | 118    |
| 63. " <i>Subordinate conjunctions</i> II: <i>als, da — so, weil, indem, nachdem, seit, während</i> . . . . .                                        | 121    |
| 64. " The <i>English present participle</i> rendered by an <i>infinitive</i> in <i>German</i> . . . . .                                             | 124    |
| 65. " <i>Subordinate conjunctions</i> III: <i>obgleich, wenn auch, zwar</i> . . . . .                                                               | 126    |
| 66. " <i>Obgleich, ob auch, wenn gleich, wenn auch</i> IV . . . . .                                                                                 | 127    |
| 67. " <i>Subjunctive</i> , formation and use of it . . . . .                                                                                        | 128    |
| 68. " <i>Conditional</i> . . . . .                                                                                                                  | 134    |
| 69. " Should <i>sollte</i> . Whether, if, <i>ob</i> . In case <i>falls, im Fall</i> . . . . .                                                       | 140    |
| 70. " Could have, should have, would have liked, would have been allowed . . . . .                                                                  | 142    |

— VIII —

|                                                                                                                                         | Seite.  |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| 71. Section. The <i>familiar imperative</i> . . . . .                                                                                   | 144     |
| 72. " The <i>prepositions</i> that govern the <i>dative</i> . . . . .                                                                   | 148     |
| 73. " The <i>prepositions</i> that govern the <i>genitive</i> . . . . .                                                                 | 153     |
| 74. " In English <i>no</i> article or the <i>indefinite</i> article, in<br>German the <i>definite</i> article . . . . .                 | 157     |
| 75. " Verbs and adjectives that require an object <i>with</i><br><i>a preposition</i> . . . . .                                         | 165     |
| 76. " Formation of deviated nouns of the feminine gender,<br>with the terminations: <i>e, ei, in, heit, feit, schaft, ung</i> . . . . . | 175     |
| 77. Conversation . . . . .                                                                                                              | 179—202 |
| 1. In a hotel . . . . .                                                                                                                 | 179     |
| 2. Breakfast. Tea . . . . .                                                                                                             | 181     |
| 3. Dinner . . . . .                                                                                                                     | 182     |
| 4. Supper . . . . .                                                                                                                     | 184     |
| 5. To take a furnished room . . . . .                                                                                                   | 185     |
| 6. To pay a visit . . . . .                                                                                                             | 186     |
| 7. With a tailor . . . . .                                                                                                              | 187     |
| 8. With a shoemaker . . . . .                                                                                                           | 188     |
| 9. To hire or to buy a horse . . . . .                                                                                                  | 190     |
| 10. With a hackney coach-<br>man . . . . .                                                                                              | 191     |
| 11. Roads. Conveyances . . . . .                                                                                                        | 191     |
| 12. Materials of writing.<br>Letters . . . . .                                                                                          | 192     |
| 13. Chess . . . . .                                                                                                                     | 193     |
| 14. Cards . . . . .                                                                                                                     | 195     |
| 15. The master before get-<br>ting up . . . . .                                                                                         | 196     |
| 16. Spring. Summer . . . . .                                                                                                            | 197     |
| 17. Illness . . . . .                                                                                                                   | 199     |
| 18. How to break ill news . . . . .                                                                                                     | 201     |
| 78. Letters 1—31 . . . . .                                                                                                              | 202—234 |
| 79. Tales, fables etc. . . . .                                                                                                          | 234—264 |
| 1. The shepherdboy . . . . .                                                                                                            | 234     |
| 2. The wise mouse . . . . .                                                                                                             | 235     |
| 3. The lion and other beasts<br>hunting . . . . .                                                                                       | 235     |
| 4. The town-mouse and the<br>field-mouse . . . . .                                                                                      | 236     |
| 5. The hungry Arab . . . . .                                                                                                            | 237     |
| 6. The carpenter and the axe . . . . .                                                                                                  | 237     |
| 7. Three friends . . . . .                                                                                                              | 238     |
| 8. The desert island . . . . .                                                                                                          | 239     |
| 9. The two tubs . . . . .                                                                                                               | 244     |
| 10. The reward . . . . .                                                                                                                | 244     |
| 11. All for the best . . . . .                                                                                                          | 245     |
| 12. The seven sticks . . . . .                                                                                                          | 246     |
| 13. The cuckoo . . . . .                                                                                                                | 246     |
| 14. The fall of the Rhine . . . . .                                                                                                     | 247     |
| 15. The thief . . . . .                                                                                                                 | 248     |
| 16. The peasant's son as<br>captain of horse . . . . .                                                                                  | 250     |
| 17. The peaches . . . . .                                                                                                               | 251     |
| 18. Strange ride . . . . .                                                                                                              | 252     |
| 19. The policeman in the rat-<br>trap . . . . .                                                                                         | 253     |
| 20. Frederic the Great and<br>the miller : . . . .                                                                                      | 254     |
| 21. An awkward situation . . . . .                                                                                                      | 254     |
| 22. The choice . . . . .                                                                                                                | 256     |
| 23. The pains of idleness . . . . .                                                                                                     | 256     |
| 24. Female courage and fide-<br>lity . . . . .                                                                                          | 258     |
| 25. French wit and English<br>common sense . . . . .                                                                                    | 259     |
| 26. A voracious shark . . . . .                                                                                                         | 262     |
| 80. A Play: The return home, by Lewald . . . . .                                                                                        | 265     |
| Vocabulary . . . . .                                                                                                                    | 281     |



# German Writing.

1. i, n, m, u, ü

i n m u ü

n, m, u

e ei eu

m, m, m

m, m, m

2. o, v, v, v, v, v

o a ö a au

" v, v, v, v

au v w r

v, v, v, v, v

v, v, v, v, v

v, v, v, v, v

3. *g, y, l, b, d, t, k*

*g g l b d t k*

*ck, f, f, f, y, ff*

*ck s f h ch sch*

*jüng, gült, lieb, leib*

*brünn, küssen, klain*

*fuhr, fuffel, müß, fufen*

*fufen, kuck, yare*

4. *z, z, b, p, p, z*

*z, z, z, s, st, ss, ss*

*z, z, z*

*z, z, z*

zu, füz, vuz, nuz, uz,  
holz, uol, quor, lüßig,  
flüßig, flüßbar, grüßig,  
wüßig,

u. Co, Oo, Jo, Jo, Oo, Oo,  
Oo, Oo, Oo, Oo, Oo,  
Quelle,

u. La, Li, Li, Li, Li, Li,  
Li, Li, Li, Li, Li, Li,  
Li, Li, Li, Li, Li, Li,  
Li, Li, Li, Li, Li, Li,  
Li, Li, Li, Li, Li, Li,  
Li, Li, Li, Li, Li, Li,





## 1<sup>st</sup> Lesson.

### Pronunciation.

#### a) The vowels\*).

The German *vowels* have *always* the same or nearly the same pronunciation.

a (aa, ah) like a in far:

|            |            |           |           |
|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| der Mantel | the cloak  | der Stahl | the steel |
| der Saal   | the saloon | kalt      | cold      |
| die Nadel  | the needle | hart      | hard.     |

e (ee, eh) like ai in wait, or like e in let:

|          |              |        |          |
|----------|--------------|--------|----------|
| das Beet | (flower) bed | mehr   | more     |
| das Bett | bed          | selten | rare     |
| das Meer | sea          | nehmen | to take. |

i (ie, ih, ieh) like i in guilt, field:

|        |           |       |           |
|--------|-----------|-------|-----------|
| finden | to find   | sehen | look, see |
| ihn    | him       | wild  | wild      |
| sie    | she, they | wir   | we.       |

o (oo, oh) like o in gold, or in lot (but not exactly so):

|          |             |           |      |
|----------|-------------|-----------|------|
| hohl     | hollow      | das Moos  | moss |
| der Ofen | stove, oven | der Sohn  | son  |
| der Mond | moon        | die Sonne | sun. |

u (uh) like u in rule, or in put:

|            |        |            |         |
|------------|--------|------------|---------|
| die Schule | school | das Blut   | blood   |
| der Schuh  | shoe   | die Wunde  | wound   |
| und        | and    | die Mutter | mother. |

The words are to be learned by heart, the nouns *with* the article.

#### b) The modified vowels.

Three vowels are modified: a into *ä*, o into *ö*, u into *ü*.  
*ä* is pronounced like a in care, *ö* like ou in enough or rather French *eu* in *feu*, *ü* like French *u* in *rue*.

\*) Vowels are generally long when followed by one consonant, and short when followed by the two consonants, no difference if it be *nd* or *nt*, *ld* or *lt*, *lb* or *lp*, *rb* or *rp* etc. Exceptions: *Art*, *Ärzt*.

|                |                 |              |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| Vater, Väter   | father, fathers | alt, älter   | old, older      |
| Sohn, Söhne    | son, sons       | groß, größer | large, larger   |
| Mutter, Mütter | mother, mothers | kurz, kürzer | short, shorter. |

c) The diphthongs.

ai, ei like I; au like ou in loud; eu, äu like oy in boy.

|           |            |          |        |        |         |
|-----------|------------|----------|--------|--------|---------|
| klein     | little     | laut     | loud   | neu    | new     |
| der Stein | stone      | das Haus | house  | Häuser | houses  |
| die Seite | side, page | die Maus | mouse  | Mäuse  | mice    |
| die Saite | chord      | auf      | upon   | neun   | nine    |
| der Wein  | wine       | kaufen   | to buy | Leute  | people. |

2<sup>d</sup> Lesson.

Pronunciation. The consonants.

1. g, *gh* in the beginning of a word as in great, christian:

|      |       |            |              |
|------|-------|------------|--------------|
| groß | great | gut        | good         |
| Gott | God   | ein Christ | a christian. |

2. g, *gh* after a, o, u, au have the guttural sound of the Scotch ch in loch:

| vowel short |        | vowel long |                   |
|-------------|--------|------------|-------------------|
| das Loch    | hole   | hoch       | high              |
| das Buch    | book   | der Flug   | flight (of birds) |
| die Nacht   | night  | die Magd   | house-maid        |
| die Sache   | matter | sagen      | to say            |
| der Koch    | cook   | der Krug   | stone-bottle      |
| auch        | also   | das Auge   | eye.              |

3. g, *gh* after l, r, and the vowels e, i (ä, ö, ü, ei, eu) is produced by the tip of the tongue:

|           |           |               |               |
|-----------|-----------|---------------|---------------|
| folgen    | to follow | Bücher        | books         |
| der Berg  | mountain  | Löcher        | holes         |
| ich, mich | I, me     | Nächte        | nights        |
| recht     | right     | Mägde         | house-maids   |
| der Weg   | way       | der Leuchter  | candlestick   |
| das Licht | the light | nicht, nichts | not, nothing. |

j like y in yes:

|          |      |          |         |            |          |
|----------|------|----------|---------|------------|----------|
| ja       | yes  | jagen    | to hunt | der Jäger  | huntsman |
| das Jahr | year | die Jagd | hunting | der Januar | January. |

v like f:

|           |          |               |             |
|-----------|----------|---------------|-------------|
| der Vater | father   | vor           | before, ago |
| der Vogel | bird     | der Vorschlag | proposal    |
| von       | of, from | Vögel         | birds.      |

w between v and w (not so full as w):

|            |       |          |              |
|------------|-------|----------|--------------|
| das Wasser | water | der Wald | wood, forest |
| der Wein   | wine  | die Welt | world        |
| der Weg    | way   | watchen  | to watch     |
| die Woche  | week  | wagen    | to risk      |
| die Woge   | wave  | wo       | where.       |

z like ts; c before e, i (ä, ö) like ts:

|             |        |         |         |
|-------------|--------|---------|---------|
| kurz        | short  | zwei    | two     |
| das Holz    | wood   | zehn    | ten     |
| die Zeit    | time   | zwölf   | twelve  |
| die Citrone | lemon  | zwanzig | twenty  |
| Cäfar       | Caesar | Cypern  | Cyprus. |

ch like x:

|            |      |            |             |
|------------|------|------------|-------------|
| der Ochſ   | ox   | das Wachſ  | wax         |
| der Fuſ    | fox  | wachſen    | to grow     |
| der Flachſ | flax | die Büchſe | box, rifle. |

ng *always* like ng in England:

|            |         |          |        |
|------------|---------|----------|--------|
| der Finger | finger  | lang     | long   |
| der Engel  | angel   | länger   | longer |
| England    | England | der Ring | ring.  |

ſch like sh:

|            |          |            |        |
|------------|----------|------------|--------|
| der Schuh  | shoe     | der Schlaf | sleep  |
| die Schule | school   | ſcharf     | sharp  |
| ſchreiben  | to write | ſchnell    | quick. |

th like t:

|          |      |          |        |
|----------|------|----------|--------|
| die Thür | door | der Thee | téa.   |
| das Thor | gate | thun     | to do. |

tion = zion. Die Nation, die Revolution, die Reformation.

The other consonants are pronounced as in English.

### 3<sup>d</sup> Lesson.

The *present tense* of the *verbs*.

1. The German verbs end in en. Kommen to come; komm is the root of the verb, en the Infinitive termination. The terminations of the different persons of the Present tense are added to the root.

#### Present tense.

|                           |                |                        |
|---------------------------|----------------|------------------------|
| Singular: 1 <sup>st</sup> | 2 <sup>d</sup> | 3 <sup>d</sup> person. |
| ich komm-e                | du komm-ſt     | er, ſie, eſ komm-t     |
| I come                    | thou comest    | he, ſhe, it comes.     |
| Plural: 1 <sup>st</sup>   | 2 <sup>d</sup> | 3 <sup>d</sup> person. |
| wir komm-en               | ihr komm-t     | ſie komm-en            |
| we come                   | you come       | they come.             |

*Observation.* You come is generally expressed by: Sie kommen; du kommſt, ihr kommt is only used in intimate and familiar life, or when no individual is addressed.

To be conjugated like *kommen*:

|                    |          |                 |           |
|--------------------|----------|-----------------|-----------|
| to go              | gehen    | to know         | kennen    |
| to remain, to stay | bleiben  | to write        | schreiben |
| to bring           | bringen  | to buy          | kaufen    |
| to send            | schicken | to say, to tell | sagen     |
| to drink           | trinken  | to risk         | wagen.    |

2. When the root of a verb ends in *s*, *sch*, *ß*, the 2<sup>d</sup> person takes: *est*; when it ends in *b* or *t*, the 2<sup>d</sup> person takes: *est*, the 3<sup>d</sup>: *et*.

|         |         |         |        |         |           |
|---------|---------|---------|--------|---------|-----------|
| to wash | waschen | to find | finden | to bind | binden    |
| to wait | warten  | to sit  | sitzen | to wish | wünschen. |

3. Many verbs that have *e* in their root, change it into: *i* (*ie*), some verbs that have *a* in their root, change it into: *ä* in the 2<sup>d</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> person singular.

|          |          |         |        |          |          |
|----------|----------|---------|--------|----------|----------|
| to give  | geben    | to eat  | essen  | to sleep | schlafen |
| to speak | sprechen | to help | helfen | to carry | tragen   |
| to throw | werfen   | to see  | sehen  | to let   | lassen.  |

Conjugate those verbs under 1, 2, 3 in the present tense.

4. to have *haben*.

to be *sein*.

*ich habe, du hast, er hat,  
wir haben, ihr habt, sie haben.*

*ich bin, du bist, er ist,  
wir sind, ihr seid, sie sind.*

#### Exercise 1.

1. I go, we go. He remains, she remains, you remain. She brings, they bring. We buy, I buy. He sends, she sends. We drink, you drink, they drink. I write, we write. I say, he says. He knows, they know, I know, she knows. He risks, he sits, he waits, she washes, she finds. Thou findest, thou waitest.

2. 3. I give, thou givest, he gives, you give. I speak, he speaks, they speak, she speaks. He sleeps, he carries, she carries, she is asleep. I help, he helps. We eat, he eats. We are, thou art, you are, they are, I am. He has, I have, you have, she has. I wait, he waits, thou waitest. She sits, thou art seated. I let, thou lettest.

#### Exercise 2.

Make a list of: 1. the verbs, 2. the nouns with their articles, 3. the adjectives ect. of the first three lessons, and complete this list after each new lesson.

#### Exercise 3.

The night is long. The night is not long, it is short. The water is cold, it is not too cold. The father is old,

the mother is not old, they are not old. The way is long, it is not long, it is short. The father and (the) mother are old. The house is large, it is not large. The sun is large, he is very large. The moon is not so large, is she not very small? Is the time not too short? The needle is of steel. The father is waiting (waits), is going. The son writes. The people stay. The house-maid brings. The saloon is large, it is not too large. The shoe is long, it is not too short. The son is small, he grows. The servant does not watch, she sleeps. He eats and drinks. She sees, she speaks. She helps, she gives, she throws.

too zu          very sehr          so so          small klein.

*Remark.* The words in round brackets (—) are to be translated, those in straight brackets [—] are not.

#### 4<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Declension of nouns with the *definite* article in Singular.

**Rule 1.** Most masculine and neuter nouns take *es* in the genitive, and *e* in the dative, but the *e* is often omitted. Feminine nouns never alter in singular.

**Rule 2.** Masc. and neut. nouns terminating in: *el, en, er, en* and *lein* only add *s* in the genitive and never *e* in the dative.

|      | Singular.           |            |                     |
|------|---------------------|------------|---------------------|
|      | masc.               | fem.       | neut.               |
| N.   | der Sohn            | die Mutter | das Haus            |
| G.   | des Sohn- <i>es</i> | der Mutter | des Haus- <i>es</i> |
| D.   | dem Sohn- <i>e</i>  | der Mutter | dem Haus- <i>e</i>  |
| Acc. | den Sohn            | die Mutter | das Haus.           |

Decline: der Berg, der Weg, der Mond, der Wald, der Saal; die Sonne, die Wunde, die Woche, die Welt, die Zeit; das Blut, das Noos, das Holz, das Licht, das Auge.

**Ex. 2.** Singular.

|      | masc.               | neut.                | Decline:                 |
|------|---------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| N.   | der Vater           | das Wasser           | der Garten, das Messer,  |
| G.   | des Vater- <i>s</i> | des Wasser- <i>s</i> | der Mantel, der Jäger,   |
| D.   | dem Vater           | dem Wasser           | der Vogel, der Finger,   |
| Acc. | den Vater           | das Wasser           | der Engel, der Leuchter. |

**Rule 3.** Like the definite article are declined:

|                          |        |
|--------------------------|--------|
| dieser, diese, dieses    | this   |
| jener, jene, jenes       | that   |
| welcher, welche, welches | which. |

|      | masc.          | fem.         | neut.         |
|------|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| N.   | dieser Stein   | diese Nadel  | dieses Bett   |
| G.   | dieses Steines | dieser Nadel | dieses Bettes |
| D.   | diesem Steine  | dieser Nadel | diesem Bette  |
| Acc. | diesen Stein   | diese Nadel  | dieses Bett.  |

Decline: jener Schuh, welches Moos, dieses Holz, jener Berg, diese Schule, dieses Meer, welches Bett, jenes Beet, diese Woche, welche Sache, welcher Vogel, dieses Messer, jener Garten.

*Observe:* Do you see, are you seeing is always to be translated by: *Sehen Sie?* Does he not find, by: *Findet er nicht?*

The *imperative*: Bring, come, by: *Bringen Sie, kommen Sie.*

garden der Garten      knife das Messer.

#### Exercise 4.

Nominative (subject). Accusative (Object).

Do you see the school? Do you not find the shoe? Bring the water. Do you know the father? He knows the son. He sends the mother. I know the way. Does she know the way? which way? The father drinks the wine. The son drinks the water. They drink the wine and the water. The house-maid brings the wood. I buy the bird. The father sends the son. He sends the bed. They hunt the fox. He brings the stone. The hunter hunts the fox. Do you drink wine or water? Do you bring the candlestick? I do not see the moon. He does not find the shoe. Come here. Wait here. Stay here. Bring the water here. Send the son here. Throw the ball here. Do not throw the ball. Do you not come here?

here hier (rest), her (motion)      the ball der Ball.

#### Exercise 5.

Do you buy the bed? Do you bring the stone-bottle? Do you see the mountain? This mountain is very high. I do not find the stone. I do not buy the ring. This night is very long. The people send the flax. Throw the stone. Which stone? this or that [one]? Hunt the fox. Carry the bird. Which bird? this or that [one]? Buy the house. Which house? this or that house? Send the flax here. She binds the shoe. She washes the finger, it is not clean. He washes the hand, it is not clean. (The) January is cold. It is not very cold here. He writes the

book. I see the sun from here. This forest is very wild. The candlestick is hollow. Which candlestick? this or that [one]? The world is large, it is very large. The bird eats the mouse; which bird? It is cold here. Is it not very cold here? It is too cold here. It is no more cold. This wood is hard. (The) steel is hard.

hard hart                      or oder                      the hand die Hand  
clean rein                      no more nicht mehr.

### 5<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

The indefinite article.

|      | masc.        | fem.         | neut.        |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| N.   | ein Sohn     | eine Mutter  | ein Haus     |
| G.   | eines Sohnes | einer Mutter | eines Hauses |
| D.   | einem Sohne  | einer Mutter | einem Hause  |
| Acc. | einen Sohn   | eine Mutter  | ein Haus.    |

Like the indefinite article are declined:

no, not any kein, and the possessive pronouns:

|     |      |       |       |                        |
|-----|------|-------|-------|------------------------|
| my  | mein | our   | unser |                        |
| thy | dein | your  | euer  | dein und euer only in  |
| his | sein | their | ihr   | familiar conversation. |
| her | ihr  |       |       | your book Ihr Buch.    |
| its | sein |       |       |                        |

1. Thy and your are usually translated by: Ihr.

2. Unseres, unserem, unseren are contracted into unser's, unsern, unsern, unsere into unsre.

Ex.      mein Sohn      meine Mutter      mein Haus  
          Ihr Sohn      Ihre Mutter      Ihr Haus.

Decline: mein Mantel, deine Mabel, Ihr Auge, unsere Schule, sein Weg, ihre Zeit, eure Zeit, unser Weg, ihr Ring, Ihr Ring, sein Schlaf, euer Vater, eure Mutter, kein Berg, keine Seite, kein Licht.

at home zu Hause      home nach Hause.

### Exercise 6.

He does not find his book. I do not see my shoe. Bring a needle here. Send her ring here. Does she know my ring? He throws a stone. My father buys a house. I do not drink any water. He does not drink any wine. Do you not drink any wine? I know no way. —(Nominative and Acc.) no bird, no proposal, our proposal, his proposal,



a hole, a cook, my cook, your cook, no sun and no moon, her finger, his wound, an ox, a fox, your rifle. I know my way. Do you know your way home? They are not at home. My father and (my) mother are not at home. Send the servant home. Come home. Go home. Carry my book home.

### Exercise 7.

Genitive.

The light of the sun. The light of the moon. The ring of my mother. The house of my father. The size of your garden. The price of his house. The price of my wine, of this wine, of that wine, of which wine. Of this wood, of that wood, of which wood. Of no bird, of my bird, of your bird, of which bird. Of my bed, of my needle, of this mountain, of that moss. The finger of the servant. The eye of God. The proposal of your father. The water of the sea. The wound of the hunter. The rifle of the huntsman. The moss of this tree. I know that moss. I know no moss. Do you drink that water? I do not drink any water. I go home. Is he at home? They are not at home. Is he here? They are not here. Send your son home. Stay at home. Do not stay too long. Do you not stay here?

size die Größe price der Preis tree der Baum.

Repeat the words of the first five lessons, the nouns with their article.

Repeat the first seven exercises to fluency.

### 6<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Accusative of the personal and reflective pronouns.

|          |           |            |             |         |         |
|----------|-----------|------------|-------------|---------|---------|
| N.       | ich       | du         | er          | sie     | es      |
| Acc.     | miß       | diß        | iñ          | sie     | es      |
|          | me        | thee       | him         | her     | it      |
| Reflect. | miß       | diß        | fiß         |         |         |
|          | myself    | thyself    | himself     | herself | itself. |
| N.       | wir       | ihr        | sie         |         |         |
| Acc.     | uns       | euch       | sie         |         |         |
|          | us        | you        | them        |         |         |
| Reflect. | uns       | euch       | fiß         |         |         |
|          | ourselves | yourselves | themselves. |         |         |

Instead of: diß, euch are usually used: Sie, reflective fiß.

**Prepositions that govern the accusative:**

|       |                  |       |                   |
|-------|------------------|-------|-------------------|
| durch | through          | ohne  | without           |
| für   | for              | um    | around, about, at |
| gegen | against, towards | wider | against.          |

|                |                 |                              |                      |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------------------|----------------------|
| Conjugate:     | sich sehen      | to see one's self            |                      |
|                | sich freuen     | to rejoice, enjoy one's self |                      |
|                | sich verstellen | to disguise one's self       |                      |
|                | sich schämen    | to be ashamed                |                      |
|                | sich irren      | to be mistaken.              |                      |
| der Tisch      | table           | das Fenster                  | window               |
| der Stuhl      | chair           | die Thür                     | door                 |
| der Morgen     | morning         | das Thor                     | gate                 |
| der Abend      | evening         | der Garten                   | garden               |
| das Betragen   | conduct         | der Brief                    | letter               |
| um 2 Uhr       | at 2 o'clock    | widersprechen                | to contradict (dat.) |
| oder           | or              | widerstehen                  | to resist (dat.)     |
| die Versuchung | temptation      | die Sünde                    | sin                  |
| die Waise      | orphan          | da                           | there                |
|                |                 | das Leben                    | the life.            |

**Exercise 8.**

Through the window, through the house, through the forest, through the garden, through the door or through the gate. For me, for you, for us, for thee, for them, for themselves, for him, for himself, for her, for herself. Towards morning, towards evening, against me, against himself, against yourself, against themselves, against my proposal, towards 10 o'clock, towards 12 o'clock. Without me, without him, without her, without her book, without his father, without your mother. At one o'clock, at 2 o'clock, at 12, round the table, round the stove, round the garden. For this week, for one (a) night. Through the world, without sleep, without water, without a table, without a chair. I see myself. I enjoy my life (gen.). You disguise yourself. She is ashamed of her conduct. He is ashamed of his conduct. I am ashamed of my conduct. You are mistaken. We are not mistaken. Are you not mistaken? I am not mistaken. Do you not see yourself? Is he not ashamed of his conduct?

**Exercise 9.**

The sportsman goes through the forest. Are we going through the garden? Come through the window. They sit round the table, they sit round the stove. Do not contra-

dict your father. The son contradicts his mother. He contradicts himself. Do not contradict yourself. Resist (the) temptation. Resist (the) sin. Do not go without me. Do not go without your mother. Do you buy a house without a garden? This table is for our garden. Go at 10 o'clock. Come at 12. Go towards evening. Send this book this evening. Send it here. I write this morning. He is against me. He speaks against my proposal. Your mother is without a light. The wave of the sea. He stays [for] a week. She has no needle. They have no time. An orphan has no father and no mother. Have you a bird? Is this book for me? There is a letter for you. Is this letter for my brother or for myself?

### 7<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Some prepositions that govern the dative.

|     |                      |      |                     |
|-----|----------------------|------|---------------------|
| aus | out of, from         | nach | to (a place), after |
| bei | with, at (place)     | von  | from, of            |
| mit | with (company, tool) | zu   | to (a person).      |

aus, from the interior of a closed place; von, from a place in general.

|            |             |             |            |
|------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| the church | die Kirche  | the country | das Land   |
| concert    | das Concert | the street  | die Straße |
| theatre    | das Theater | the roof    | das Dach   |
| yard       | der Hof     | the market  | der Markt. |

at his uncle's (with his uncle) bei seinem Onkel.

### Exercise 10.

From England, from London, from the street, from the roof. From the theatre, from (the) school, from (the) church, from the concert, from the garden, from the forest. From the country, from the market. With my father and (my) mother, with a table, with a book. After you (Sinen), after (the) church, after school. From Cöln to Coblenz. After 9 o'clock, after (the) supper, after dinner, after breakfast, after tea, after coffee. After him (ihm), after her (ihr), after us, after two. Go to your son. Go to the cook. Go to my mother. Come with me (mir). To England, to London, to America, to Frankfurt, to Wiesbaden. He is at my father's (with my father), at my mother's, at his uncle's.

Is she at her son's? Is he not at this hunter's? Are you going home? Is your father at home?

### Exercise 11.

Do you come from the market, from church, from school? He goes to London, to America. She speaks to (with) her mother. She sleeps at her aunt's. I come from the yard, from the country, from the concert. I go with my father. The mother goes with her son. I have it from the cook, from the house-maid. He is at the hunter's. We speak of your bird. Do you speak of the concert? He comes from school. I speak to the cook. Do you speak of my book? We eat with my father. We dine (eat) at my father's. A house of stone, a house of wood. A ring of gold, a needle of steel. When do you come from school? When do you come from church? How far is it from here to Berlin? It is not far from Manchester to Liverpool. Do not come after 12. When do you go to bed? I go to bed at 10. Come here after breakfast. We play after supper. Do you go after dinner? Do you go to bed after supper? Write after tea. Is it far from Frankfurt to Heidelberg?

|                   |                          |
|-------------------|--------------------------|
| how? wie?         | to play spielen          |
| when? wann?       | dinner das Mittagessen   |
| far weit          | supper das Abendessen    |
| two o'clock 2 Uhr | uncle der Onkel          |
| tea der Thee      | aunt die Tante           |
| coffee der Kaffee | breakfast das Frühstück. |

(dat.) me mir, him ihm, her ihr, you Ihnen, us uns.

Kirche, Schule, Frühstück, Mittag-, Abendessen, Thee, Kaffee (as meals) are in German always used with the def. article.

### 8th Lesson.

#### Interrogative words.

|                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| N. who wer            | D. to whom wem |
| G. whose wessen       | Acc. whom wen  |
| when wann             | where to wohin |
| how wie               | what was       |
| where wo              | why warum      |
| which welcher, e, es. |                |

Wo expresses rest at, wohin motion to a place.

### Exercise 12.

Who is going? Where are you going to? When do you go? Why do you go? What do you bring? I bring [some]

water. Where does he stay? He stays at his uncle's. Where do you carry this bird? I carry it home. When do you bring my coffee? Why do you not carry this chair? Whose chair is this (das)? It (es) is my chair. Carry this jug with water. For whom do you buy this cloak? For my sister, for my cousin, for myself. Why do you not come? What do you see? Whom do you see? I see my aunt. Where do you see her? Where are you? I am here. She is at home. Is she at home? Where do you see my uncle and (my) aunt? What do you say? I say nothing. Where do you send your son to? I send him home. Why do you send him home? The sister comes with her brother. She comes with him. She comes without her brother. She comes without him. Do not come without her.

|                      |                           |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
| sister die Schwester | nephew der Nefte (gen. n) |
| brother der Bruder   | cousin (he) der Vetter    |
| niece die Nichte     | cousin (she) die Cousine. |

*this, those* referring to a preceding noun are always: *das*.

*it, he, she, they* referring to a noun following are always: *es*.

### Exercise 18.

The uncle goes with his nephew. Who is it? The husband and his wife. Whose wife is she? She is the wife of my cousin. Your aunt is here with her niece. Who comes? An old man and a boy. The tutor comes without his pupil. What do we eat? What do we drink? How do you find my sister? To whom do you speak? I speak to my tutor. This letter is for my uncle, for my cousin. For whom? For her nephew, for his aunt. With whom do you go? With my uncle and aunt. To whom does she go? To her niece. From whom does she come? From her sister. Go to my uncle. Do you speak of my uncle? He is at my uncle's, at my aunt's. I speak to (with) his pupil. I bring a book for his wife. She goes with her husband. The pupil goes to his tutor. Do not contradict your tutor. That boy contradicts the old man. I do not know my uncle. The uncle does not know his niece.

|                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| boy der Knabe (gen. n) | tutor, teacher der Lehrer |
| old man der Greis      | pupil der Schüler         |
| man, husband der Mann  | cat die Katze             |
| woman, wife die Frau   | dog der Hund.             |

### Exercise 14.

What (before a noun) N. was für ein, eine, ein } was für?  
 Acc. was für einen, eine, ein }

**Ex.** What letter? was für ein Brief? What meat? was für Fleisch?

What book is that (das)? What book do you read? What bird is that (das)? What bird have you there? What cat is that (das)? What cat does she bring there? What letter do you bring? What letter do you read? What meat? What wine? What meat do you eat? Beef or veal? What wine do you drink? Rhein- or Mosel-wine? What paper? Whose cat is that? Whose book is that? Whose wine is that? Whose son is he? Whose daughter is she? How old are you? How high is that mountain? How pretty she is! How good my brother is! How good you are! How much is it? How much does it cost? How young she is! How large this garden is! My uncle does not know me. I do not know your uncle. I know your aunt and her niece. Do you not know me? Why does the tutor send his pupil to my brother? The tutor buys a book for his pupil. Where does the woman stay? Where does my wife stay? What does the boy eat? What meat does he eat? Where does the old man sleep? Where does the boy sleep?

|                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| letter der Brief       | good gut       |
| paper das Papier       | pretty schön   |
| meat das Fleisch       | here hier      |
| beef das Ochsenfleisch | there da       |
| veal das Kalbfleisch   | much viel      |
| to read lesen          | to cost kosten |
| daughter die Tochter.  |                |

### 9th Lesson.

Nouns that take *n* in the genitive.

**Rule 1.** Masc. nouns that terminate in *e* take *n* in the genitive, and keep it in the dative and accusative.

**Rule 2.** Adjectives, used as substantives and preceded by the definite article, take *e* in the nominative and *n* in the other cases, when masc. When neuter or feminine the acc. is like the nominative.

|          |      |        |       |           |        |
|----------|------|--------|-------|-----------|--------|
| gut      | good | wahr   | true  | böse      | wicked |
| schlecht | bad  | falsch | false | krank     | sick   |
|          | neu  | new    | schön | beautiful |        |
|          | alt  | old    | blind | blind.    |        |

der Gute a good man  
der Schlechte a bad man

das Gute a good thing  
das Schlechte a bad thing.

Der Alte, das Alte, das Neue, das Wahre, das Falsche,  
das Schöne.

der Matrose sailor  
der Bediente servant  
der Gesandte ambassador  
der Geistliche clergyman  
der Löwe lion  
der Ochse ox  
der Affe monkey  
der Nefte nephew  
der Fremde stranger

der Knabe boy  
der Franzose Frenchman  
der Russe Russian  
der Türke Turk  
der Grieche Greek  
der Preuße Prussian  
der Deutsche German  
der Heide heathen  
der Jude jew.

Like them are declined:

der Held hero  
der Herr master  
der Soldat soldier  
der Hirt herdsman  
der Christ christian  
der Mensch man

der Protestant Protestant  
der Katholik (Roman) Catholic  
der Dichter poet  
der Philosoph philosopher  
der Fürst prince  
der Prinz prince.

|      |            |           |           |             |
|------|------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| N.   | der Knabe  | der Gute  | das Gute  | die Kranke  |
| G.   | des Knaben | des Guten | des Guten | der Kranken |
| D.   | dem Knaben | dem Guten | dem Guten | der Kranken |
| Acc. | den Knaben | den Guten | das Gute  | die Kranke. |

### Exercise 15.

Liebe das Gute, hasse das Böse. Unterscheide das Wahre von dem Falschen. Das Neue gefällt uns, das Alte gefällt uns oft nicht. Folge dem Guten, folge nicht dem Bösen. Der Böse verführt oft den Guten. Der Arme beneidet den Reichen. Der Reiche hilft oft dem Armen. Das Neue kommt, das Alte geht. Das Neue gefällt uns oft mehr als das Alte. (3<sup>d</sup> Lesson, observ.)

Do you (du) hate what is bad (the bad), and like the good? Do you discern (the) truth from (the) falsehood? Do not new things (sing.) please us often, and old things do not please us? Does he follow the good (dat. sing.), does he not follow the bad [one]? Does not the wicked often mislead the good? Is a poor man always unhappy, is a rich man always happy? Why does the poor envy the rich? When is a poor happy and a rich man unhappy? Why does the rich not help the poor (dat.)? What is new (the new) is not always good, what is old is not always bad. An old thing (sing.) is often better than a (the) new [one].

The new is often worse than the old. The weak [one] fears the strong [one].

|                           |                        |
|---------------------------|------------------------|
| lieben to love, to like   | immer always           |
| hassen to hate            | mehr more              |
| unterscheiden to discern  | glücklich happy        |
| gefallen (dat.) to please | unglücklich unhappy    |
| verführen to mislead      | arm poor               |
| beneiden to envy          | reich rich             |
| oft often                 | besser als better than |
| schwach weak              | schlechter worse       |
| stark strong              | fürchten to fear.      |

### Exercise 16.

The life of a sailor. The dog of the boy. Which boy is like (resembles) a monkey? The servant helps his master. Which ambassador goes to Paris? The life of an ambassador. The clergyman goes to the sick (man). The home of the lion is Africa. The roaring of a lion. The uncle with his nephew. Does the Frenchman like the German? The German does not fear the Frenchman. The Turk fears the Russian. The Russian does not like the Turk. The Russian is no friend of the Turk. The Russian helps the Greek. The life of a soldier. The palace of the prince is large and beautiful, the hut of the shepherd is small and bad. A hero does not fear his enemy. The faith of a Protestant, of a Catholic, of a christian, of a jew. The christian and the jew believe in one God. The life of (the) man is short.

|                     |                                 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|
| life das Leben      | palace der Palast               |
| dog der Hund        | hut die Hütte                   |
| home die Heimat     | faith der Glaube                |
| roaring das Gebrüll | to believe in glauben an (acc.) |
| enemy der Feind     | to resemble gleichen (dat.)     |
| friend der Freund   | to fear fürchten                |
|                     | sick krank.                     |

### 10<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Declension of the personal pronouns.

|      | Singular. |        |        |       |            |
|------|-----------|--------|--------|-------|------------|
| N.   | ich       | du     | er     | sie   | es         |
| G.   | meiner    | deiner | seiner | ihrer | — (dessen) |
| D.   | mir       | dir    | ihm    | ihr   | —          |
| Acc. | miß       | diß    | ihn    | sie   | es.        |



| Plural. |       |      |                 |
|---------|-------|------|-----------------|
| N.      | wir   | ihr  | sie (they, you) |
| G.      | unſer | euer | ihrer           |
| D.      | unſ   | euch | ihnen           |
| Acc.    | unſ   | euch | sie.            |

1. The pronoun *eſ* has no genitive and dative. Instead of the genitive, *deſſen* is used (genitive of the demonstrative pronoun *daſſ*). Instead of the dative the adverb *da* is joined with the prepositions that govern the dative:

|           |        |          |       |       |       |
|-----------|--------|----------|-------|-------|-------|
| out of it | darauſ | with it  | damit | of it | davon |
| at it     | dabei  | after it | danaç | to it | dazu. |

In the same way are formed:

|                   |         |            |                  |
|-------------------|---------|------------|------------------|
| for it            | dafür   | against it | dagegen, dawider |
| through it, by it | dadurch | round it   | darum.           |

When the preposition begins with a vowel, an *r* is put between.

2. The adverb *nicht* follows the pronouns, but precedes a pronoun with a preposition: *Ich erinnere mich ſeiner nicht.* *Ich gebe eſ ihm nicht.* *Ich fürchte mich nicht vor ihm.*

|                 |                          |             |                   |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-------------|-------------------|
| to promise      | verſprechen              | the promise | daſ Verſprechen   |
| to remind of    | erinnern an (acc.)       | no more     | nicht mehr        |
| to remember     | ſich erinnern (gen.)     | instead of  | anſtatt (gen.)    |
| to be afraid of | ſich fürchten vor (dat.) | to answer   | antworten (dat.). |

### Exercise 17.

Do you remember me? I remember you. Instead of him, of her, of you. He remembers you. He does not remember us. Instead of us. The daughter comes instead of her mother. The uncle goes instead of his nephew, the father instead of his son, he instead of me. Come with me. I go with you, with them. Without me, without you. I come to you. The clergyman goes to the sick [man], goes to him. From us, from you, from her. For us, for you, for her. God with us. Come to me. Go to him. Come with her. Believe me (dat.). Do not believe him. Do not follow them (dat.). Follow me. Speak to (with) me. Do not speak to her. Do not believe her. Do not contradict her. I do not contradict you. I am not afraid of you. The child is not afraid of me. It is not afraid of me. Why do you not answer me? Do not answer him. Do not tell him (dat.). Tell me. I tell you.

I tell her. They do not answer us. Answer me. Answer him. Answer her.

child das Kind.

### Exercise 18.

I do remember it, thou dost not remember it, does he not remember it, we do not remember you, do you not remember me, they do not remember us. I am not afraid of him, he is not afraid of you, she is not afraid of it (bavor), we are afraid of them, are you afraid of me? Do you no more remember me? do you no more remember her, do they no more remember us? we do no more remember them, I do no more remember you. He does no more remember it, we do not remember it. Why do you no more remember it? Remind me of my promise. Remind me of it (baran). Remind me of your letter. Do not remind me of my home. Do you not remember your home? Do not remind her of the child. Remind me of my friend. Remind me of him. Do not remind me of her. That book reminds me of her. Do you not remember it? Do not remind him of it. I remember that boy. Do you not remember our Frenchman? I do not remember the Russian. I remember that gentleman quite well (ganß wohl). I am not afraid of this hero. Are you afraid of a soldier? She is afraid of the prince. The child is afraid of her mother. The son is afraid of his father. He is afraid of him. She is afraid of her. Which boy is afraid of a Turk? Are you afraid of me? Be not afraid of us. Be not afraid of anything (nißts). They are afraid of you. Answer your father. Do you not answer your cousin? She does not answer me. My mother answers my cousin. She answers her. My father does not answer me. We do not answer them. We answer you. You answer them. Instead of a book, instead of a chair, instead of it, instead of a bed, instead of your friend, instead of him, instead of us, instead of her sister, instead of her.

### Exercise 19.

To answer a letter, a question einen Brief, eine Frage beantworten.

I answer his letter. Do you not answer my question? do you not answer it? Why does he not answer

my letter? why does he not answer it? Why do you not answer me? Why do you not answer my question? When do we answer them? When do we answer their letter? Answer me. Answer my letter, answer my question, answer her.

Does my son not resemble me? Do you not resemble him? Who resembles me? I resemble you. They resemble us. We do not resemble them. They please us, they do not please us. This book does not please me. Why does this book not please you? His conduct does not please his father. It does not please him, it does not please me, does it please you? How does her conduct please her mother? Why does her conduct not please you, why does it not please her father, her mother, her aunt? Do not follow me. Do not follow your friend. Do not follow the soldier. Follow the boy, follow the child, follow him, follow us, follow them. I follow you. The daughter follows her mother. I help you. Why do you not help me? Help us. Do not help him. He does not help me. The sister does not help her brother. She does not help him.

#### Exercise 20.

The daughter is ashamed of her conduct. Are you not ashamed of your conduct? She is ashamed of his conduct. He is ashamed of it. Who is ashamed of his conduct? Why are you ashamed of it? Which son is ashamed of his father and mother? Why are you ashamed of me? Why is he ashamed of you? They are ashamed of us and we are ashamed of them. Do you not remember the hero of Aboukir and Trafalgar? Who is he (es)? Why do you not remember him? I do not remember your prince. Speak to him, but speak loud. Come here, we are speaking of you. Speak to your uncle and aunt. Do not speak to them. Why does he not speak to you? How do you speak to me! Where do you send this letter? Where do you send it? Where do you write your letter? When do you write it? When do you answer my question? Why do you not answer it? Who reads your letter? Who reads it? Do you not remember your promise? Remind me of my promise, remind me of it. I remember it, I do not remember it. Remind

your sister of her promise, remind her of it. Promise me to go. Promise her to come. Do not promise her this book. Do not promise her anything. Help me [to] write. Do not help her. She helps me to read, I do not help you. Why do you not come to me? Why do you not come here? Stay here. Do you not remember the way? We remember it. We do not remember it.

*Observation.* Repeat the words of the last 5 lessons carefully.

Repeat the corresponding exercises to fluency.

### 11<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Verbs which govern a dative (person) and an accusative (thing) without a preposition.

|                                 |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------|
| geben to give                   | kaufen to buy         |
| bringen to bring                | holen to fetch        |
| leihen to lend                  | schneiden to cut      |
| reichen to hand, to pass        | verwahren to keep for |
| schicken to send                | verkaufen to sell     |
| schenken to give (as a present) | zeigen to show.       |

### Exercise 21.

Please, give me a sheet of paper and a pen. Bring me a cup of coffee, please. Lend me your umbrella, it rains. Send me a bottle of wine. Buy me a pound of sugar. Fetch me [some] beer. Keep [for] me this book. Cut me, please, a piece of bread. Hand me the salt, please. Give me time. Sell me this knife. Why do you buy that parasol? Cut me [some] cheese. Hand me the potatoes. Show me your pen. Show your knife to your brother. Do not show him your ring. Do not show her the letter. Show it me. Do you not take any meat? Send me a light. Why are you without [a] light? Pass me my hat. Lend me your knife. Bring her a chair. Fetch your father a glass. Pass me the mustard, please. Send [me] the house-maid. Do not send the cook. Lend him your watch. Give me your stick [as a present]. Cut me a stick.

|                                    |                  |
|------------------------------------|------------------|
| please bitte                       | to rain regnen   |
| a sheet of paper ein Bogen Papier  | beer das Bier    |
| a cup of coffee eine Tasse Kaffee  | salt das Salz    |
| a bottle of wine eine Flasche Wein | knife das Messer |

a pound of sugar ein Pfund Zucker  
a piece of bread ein Stück Brot  
a pen eine Feder  
the umbrella der Regenschirm  
the parasol der Sonnenschirm  
the mustard der Senf

cheese der Käse  
meat das Fleisch  
hat der Hut  
glass das Glas  
stick der Stod  
watch die Uhr

cook (fem.) die Köchin.

### Exercise 22.

She has no cup, bring her a cup. You have no meat, take some (etwas). Lend me your pen. Take a glass of water. Keep [for] me my watch. Why do you not drink a glass of wine? When do you buy me a stick? Why do you not take any mustard? Fetch me a needle. Give the boy your stick. Give it him as a present. Give the poor [man, woman] a piece of bread. Keep [for] my aunt this book. Show me your ring. Sell it me. Do not sell your ring. Why do you not buy an umbrella? I do not drink any coffee, give me some milk or tea. Why do you not sell him your watch? Send me your boy. Which boy? Bring me a cup of coffee and some sugar and milk. Keep [for] me this glass. A bottle of water.

some (sing.) etwas  
not any keine  
to take nehmen  
(du nimmst, er nimmt)

tea der Thee  
milk die Milch  
some (pl.) einige.

### 12<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Participle past of regular verbs. Perfect tense.

**Rule 1.** The past participle of regular verbs is formed by adding t or et to the root (et, when the root ends in t) and putting the prefix ge before it.

**Rule 2.** Verbs that have an unaccented prefix, as *ver-* kaufen, beneiden, widerrufen, erinnern etc. do not take ge.

**Ex.** kaufen gekauft, warten gewartet, verführen verführt, beneiden beneidet.

**Rule 3.** The past participle follows the object and adverb and goes to the end of the phrase.

**Ex.** ich habe ein Buch gekauft. Ich habe eine Stunde gewartet.

Perfect tense.

ich habe gekauft  
du hast gekauft  
er, sie, es hat gekauft

wir haben gekauft  
ihr habt gekauft  
sie (Sie) haben gekauft.

**Exercise 23.**

Write down the participles of the following verbs:

haben, wachsen, wagen, jagen, sagen, schicken, wünschen, freuen, verstellen, verführen, antworten, fürchten, erinnern, glauben, hassen, lieben, regnen, schämen, irren, verkaufen, holen, zeigen, schenken, reichen.

I have watched, thou hast ventured, he has hunted, she has said, it has rained. We have (finb) followed, you have sent, they have wished. I have enjoyed myself, thou hast disguised thyself, he has been ashamed, she has been mistaken. We have remembered, you have been afraid, they have believed. I have hated, he has loved, she has waited. We have envied, you have bought, have they sold? Has it not rained? I have had it. Have you not had it? Has he not had it? He has not had anything. What has he? It has rained, he has not had an umbrella.

**Exercise 24.**

My mother has sat up (watched) with (bei) the sick (sing.). How long? One (a) night. He has not ventured to come. Why not? He has been afraid. The hunters have hunted, and brought nothing home, no hare, no fox, no lion. Who (has) told you so (was)? Why have you not told (it) me? She has always loved what is (the) good and hated the bad. The tailor has not yet send me my coat, he has not yet made it. The wicked [one] has often misled the good [one]. Why has the poor [man] envied the rich? What have you answered him? I have not answered (him) anything. What has my father said? It has not rained much. It has not rained [for] long. She has disguised herself. Have you rejoiced yourself? The boy has been ashamed. Your uncle has been mistaken. Of whom has the boy been afraid? We have had no rain. Have you had no sunshine?

hour die Stunde  
brought gebracht  
tailor der Schneider  
not yet noch nicht  
hare der Hase

to make machen (reg.)  
coat der Rod  
rain der Regen  
sunshine der Sonnenſchein  
not anything nichts.

### Exercise 25.

How long have you waited? I have been waiting [for] an hour. What has the tailor made [for] you? He has made me a coat. Has he sent it? He has not yet sent it. My uncle has sold his house. Why has he sold it? The servant has not yet brought my coffee. Why has he not followed my advice? The bad has misled the good. Which book have you bought? I have bought no book. Which parasol has my sister bought? She has bought no parasol, she has bought an umbrella. The woman is poor, she has sold her watch. Did he remember you? He did not remember me. Has he been ashamed of his conduct? Did he remember his promise? He did not remember it (better)? Whom did you love and whom did you hate? I have always loved my friend and not hated my enemy, a christian does not hate his enemy.

hour die Stunde  
advice der Rat  
sister die Schwester

conduct das Betragen  
promise das Versprechen  
watch die Uhr.

### 13<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Past participle of irregular verbs.

Irreg. verbs form their past participle by adding en to the root and frequently changing the vowel of the root.

| Infinitive.     | Past part.    | Infinitive. | Past part. |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------|------------|
| finden 1        | gefunden      | geben 2     | gegeben    |
| sehen 2         | gesehen       | kennen 3    | gesehen    |
| wachsen 3       | gewachsen *   | essen 2     | gegessen   |
| schreiben 4     | geschrieben   | sprechen 5  | gesprochen |
| bleiben 4       | geblieben *   | helfen 5    | geholfen   |
| gehen 3         | gegangen *    | schlafen 3  | geschlafen |
| bringen 3       | gebracht      | tragen 3    | getragen   |
| trinken 1       | getrunken     | lassen 3    | gelassen   |
| binden 1        | gebunden      | stehen 3    | gestanden  |
| unterscheiden 4 | unterschieden | raten 3     | geraten    |
| gefallen 3      | gefallen      | nehmen 5    | genommen   |
| leihen 4        | geliehen      | sein 2      | gewesen *  |
| schneiden 4     | geschnitten   | werfen 5    | geworfen.  |
| kommen 5        | gekommen *    |             |            |

Those with an \* take the auxiliary sein to form the perfect, those with equal numbers take equal vowels in their participles.

**Exercise 26.**

What have you found? I have found a ring. Where have you found it? Whom have you seen? I have seen a sailor. When have you seen him? This morning. What has the boy written? He has written his exercise, a letter. Has the tailor brought my coat? He has not yet brought it. Has the joiner brought the chair, the table? You have not drunk your wine, your coffee, your tea. The child has not drunk (eaten) his soup. They have brought a prisoner, they have bound him. You have not tied your tie. What did (has) you like (pleased) best, the concert or the theatre? Which picture did you like best? Which piece did you like best? Coblenz (has) pleased me more than Heidelberg, England more than America. I have lent him my knife and he has cut himself. Have you cut me a piece of bread, a piece of meat? To whom have you lent your umbrella? To my friend.

|                                        |                      |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------|
| exercise die Aufgabe                   | picture das Bild     |
| soup die Suppe                         | piece das Stück      |
| prisoner der Gefangene                 | joiner der Schreiner |
| tie die Halsbinde                      | best am besten       |
| to please gefallen (person in dative). |                      |

**Exercise 27.**

To whom have you given a piece of bread? To a poor (man) woman. What have you given to the child? A picture-book. Have you known my cousin, my uncle, my niece, my nephew? Where did you sit? On a stone, upon a chair, in my room. To (mit) whom did you speak? I spoke (perf.) to my cousin, to a sailor. When did you speak to him? This morning. Have you seen the king, the queen? Did you speak to him, to her? Did you often speak to the philosopher? Has your brother helped you (dat.)? He did not help me. I have helped him. How long did you sleep? Where did my uncle sleep? He slept on the sofa. The child (has) slept on (in) my arm. Where have you left your umbrella? I have left it in your room on the table. Who has taken my pen? Nobody has taken your pen. Nobody has taken it, there is it. I did not know anybody. Advise me, help me.



picture-book das Bilderbuch  
on, in auf, in (dat.)  
king der König  
queen die Königin

nobody  
not anybody } niemand  
some body jemand  
arm der Arm.

### 14<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Verbs which take the auxiliary sein.

|                                                 |                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| I have been ich bin gewesen                     | we have been wir sind gewesen               |
| thou hast been du bist gewesen                  | you have been ihr seid gewesen              |
| he, she, it has been er, sie, es<br>ist gewesen | they have been sie sind gewesen             |
| I have gone ich bin gegangen                    | I have remained ich bin geblieben           |
| I have come ich bin gekommen                    | I have run ich bin gelaufen                 |
| to run laufen                                   | to go by railway mit der Eisenbahn fahren   |
| to go on horse-back reiten                      | to go by steamer mit dem Dampfschiff fahren |
| to go in a carriage fahren                      | I have grown ich bin gewachsen              |
| to go on foot zu Fuß gehen                      | I have become ich bin geworden.             |

### Exercise 28.

We have been, he has been; has she not been, have you not been? He has gone on foot, in a carriage, on horse-back. Did you go by steamer or by railway? I went (perf.) on foot, in a carriage, on horse-back. Where did you stay so long? At home, in the garden, in (auf) the yard. He has grown. Has she not grown much? You have grown much (sehr). She has not grown much. He has become rich. Why has he become poor? When have you become ill? My mother fell (became) ill. Where have you been? At the bookseller's. When have you been there? This morning, this evening. I have been at home. I have been at (bei) the tailor's. Have you been to (bei) the physician? He has been on the bridge. He has been on the railway bridge. He has been on the bridge of boats. My cousin has been in London, at (in) Berlin, at Köln, at Frankfurt, in the Cathedral.

|                         |                                |                       |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------|
| foot der Fuß            | railway-bridge Eisenbahnbrücke | cathedral der Dom     |
| yard der Hof            | bridge of boats Schiffsbrücke  | physician der Arzt    |
| railway die Eisenbahn   | bookseller der Buchhändler     | there da, dort        |
| steamer das Dampfschiff |                                | reiten p. p. geritten |
| steam der Dampf         |                                | fahren p. p. gefahren |
| bridge die Brücke       |                                | to become werden.     |

**Exercise 29.**

My nephew has turned (become) soldier. Why has he not become [a] sailor? It has grown (become) dark. He has become a philosopher. Many a jew has become [a] christian. Why has the jew become a christian? Many a heathen has become a christian. My brother has become a doctor of theology, of medicine. It has become late. The woman has become lame. When has she become lame? Who has become deaf? Why has he become deaf? How has he become so rich? How has he become poor? Her father has grown old. Your sister has grown tall. Where did you remain so long? I have staid on the railway bridge. Did you remain in the hotel? I (have) remained in England, in Germany, in Prussia, in London, at Cöln. Where did you run? You have run very fast. I ran (perf.) home. My sister ran to her mother. The child ran to his father. When did you come? When did my aunt come here? Why did they not come to us? The child has become blind.

many a *mancher, e es*  
theology *die Theologie*  
medicine *die Medizin*  
dark *dunkel*  
late *spät*  
Germany *Deutschland*

Prussia *Preußen*  
deaf *taub*  
blind *blind*  
lame *lahm*  
here *hier, her*  
very fast *sehr schnell.*

**15<sup>th</sup> Lesson.**

Prepositions that govern the dative and accusative.

|        |        |       |                |          |          |
|--------|--------|-------|----------------|----------|----------|
| an     | at, to | in    | in, into       | unter    | under    |
| auf    | on, to | neben | by the side of | vor      | before   |
| hinter | behind | über  | over           | zwischen | between. |

**Rest.**

er steht an dem Fenster,  
das Buch liegt auf dem Tisch,  
der Hund liegt hinter dem Ofen,  
ich bin in dem Zimmer,  
der Stuhl steht neben dem Ofen,  
das Bild hängt über dem Sofa,  
der Brief liegt unter dem Buch,  
die Blumen stehen vor dem Fenster,  
er sitzt zwischen mir und meinem  
Bruder,  
haben Sie Zucker in Ihrem Thee?

**Motion.**

er geht an das Fenster.  
ich lege das Buch auf den Tisch.  
er legt sich hinter den Ofen.  
ich gehe in das Zimmer.  
ich stelle ihn neben den Ofen.  
ich hänge es über das Sofa.  
ich lege ihn unter das Buch.  
ich stelle sie vor das Fenster.  
setze dich zwischen mich und meinen  
Bruder.  
thun Sie Zucker in Ihrem Thee.

stehen to stand, gestanden; stellen (sich) to put, to step (r.)  
 liegen to lie, to be, gelegen; legen (sich) to lay down, to put (r.)  
 hängen to be hanging, gehangen; hängen (sich) to hang up (r.)  
 sitzen to be seated; sich legen to sit down (r.)  
 to be stehen, liegen, sein (irr.)  
 to put stellen, legen, thun; gethan.

When referring to a place those nine prepositions govern the *dative*, when *rest* is expressed, on the question where, wo?

They govern the *accusative*, when *motion* is expressed, on the question where to, wohin?

(r.) with a verb means regular, (irr.) an irregular verb. A verb without (irr.) behind it is regular.

### Exercise 80.

Who stands at the door? My friend stands at the door. He waits at the door. Go to the window, and see who comes. They sit at the table and play. Come to the table, come to the stove. The letter is (lies) on the table. Put it on the table. The coffee is (stands) on the stove. Put it on the stove, it is not warm. What have you on your head? Where is the dog? It is (lies) on the sofa. Lie down on the sofa. Why are (lie) you on the sofa, are you unwell? Who is behind the curtain? A mouse is behind the sofa, behind the chest of drawers, behind the bed. It has run behind the sofa, behind the chest of drawers, behind the bed. Where are you? In the room, in the kitchen, in the cellar, in my bedroom, in bed. Go into the room, into the kitchen, into the cellar, into your bedroom, to bed. My sister stood (perf.) by my side (beside me), by the side of my mother, by the side of my father. Come by my side, by the side of my mother, of my father. Place yourself (step) by her side, by his side.

|                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| room das Zimmer              | mouse die Maus             |
| bedroom das Schlafzimmer     | to wait warten             |
| cellar der Keller            | to play spielen            |
| kitchen die Küche            | unwell unwohl              |
| curtain der Vorhang          | head der Kopf              |
| chest of drawers die Kommode | an dem = am, an das = ans  |
|                              | in dem = im, in das = ins. |

### Exercise 81.

Where hangs the looking-glass? Over the sofa, over the wash-stand, over the chest of drawers. Hang it over

the sofa, over the wash-stand, over the chest of drawers. The cellar is under the house. Where have you found my letter? Under a book, under the table-cloth. A lieutenant is (stands) under his captain, a captain under his major, a major under his colonel, a colonel under his general, the army under the emperor. Put (lay) the letter under the book, in the drawer, on the table. Step before me, not behind me. He stood before me, not behind me. Why do you stand before the looking-glass? Put the flower before the window. Have you sugar enough in your coffee, in your tea? Put some more sugar in your coffee, in your tea, on your cake. Put some more salt in your soup. Nobody must stand between myself (me) and my friend, between a husband and his wife, between us.

looking-glass der Spiegel  
wash-stand der Waschtisch  
table cloth der Tischteppich  
carpet der Fußteppich  
cake der Kuchen  
soup die Suppe  
flower die Blume  
enough genug  
must muß

lieutenant der Lieutenant  
captain der Hauptmann  
major der Major  
colonel der Oberst  
general der General  
emperor der Kaiser  
army die Armee  
some more noch etwas  
drawer die Schublade.

### Exercise 32.

I have stood, I have been lying, I have been hanging, I have sat, I have been. Has he not been standing? Have you not been lying? Has it been hanging, has it hung long enough? Has she been sitting? Have you not been?

I have placed, I have laid, I have hung, I have sat down, I have gone, I have done. Have you placed, has he not laid, has the dog not laid down, have we not hung up, have you not sat down? Where have you stood? Where has he been lying? Where has my coat been hanging? Where has she been sitting? Where have we been? Where have you placed it, where have you laid it? Where has the dog laid down? Where have they gone? Where have you put (done) it?

Who stood at the door? My friend stood at the door, he has waited at the door. Why did you not go to the window? They have been sitting at the table (and) playing.

Why have you not come to the table? Why did she not come to the stove? The letter has been (lying) on the table, have you put it on the table? The coffee is not cold, it has been (standing) on the stove. Have you put it on the stove? Where has the dog been, has it been lying on the sofa? Has she laid down on the sofa? Why have you been lying on the sofa, are you unwell? Who has been behind the curtain? A mouse has been behind the sofa, behind the chest of drawers, behind the bed. Where have you been? I have been in the kitchen, in the cellar, in my bedroom. Has he gone into the room, into the kitchen? My sister stood by the side of my mother. Has she placed herself by the side of her cousin? Have you put sugar in your tea?

Repeat carefully the words of the last five Lessons.

Repeat the exercises belonging to them to fluency.

### 16<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

The prepositions at and to.

|                                                                  |                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| at in, an, auf, bei                                              | to in, an, auf, zu                       |
| to be at the concert                                             | in dem Konzert sein                      |
| to go to the concert                                             | in das Konzert gehen                     |
| to be at the window                                              | an dem Fenster sein                      |
| to go to the window                                              | an das Fenster gehen                     |
| to be at the market                                              | auf dem Markte sein                      |
| to go to the market                                              | auf den Markt gehen                      |
| to be at (with) my friend's                                      | bei meinem Freunde sein                  |
| to go to my friend                                               | zu meinem Freunde gehen.                 |
| at and to are translated by in when referring to a closed place, |                                          |
|                                                                  | by an when expressing proximity,         |
|                                                                  | by auf when referring to an open place,  |
|                                                                  | by zu and bei when referring to persons. |

zu and bei always take the dative.

Remember:

- in das Konzert, in das Theater, in die Schule, in die Kirche,  
in das Schloß, in den Laden, in das Magazin, in den Hof,  
in den Garten, in den Wald gehen (accusative);
- in dem Konzert, in dem Theater, in der Schule, in der Kirche,  
in dem Schloß, in dem Laden, in dem Hof, in dem Garten,  
in dem Wald sein (dative);
- an den Tisch, an den Ofen, an das Fenster, an die Thür, an  
den Fluß, an das Meer gehen (accusative);

an dem Tisch, dem Ofen &c. sitzen, stehen, an dem Meer &c. sein (dative);

auf das Land, auf den Markt, auf das Feld, auf die Straße, auf den Platz, auf den Spielplatz, auf die Parade, auf die Messe, auf die Jagd gehen; (and speaking of higher schools) auf die Universität, auf die Akademie, auf die Malerschule, auf die Musikschule, auf die Kriegsschule gehen (accusative); auf dem Land &c. sein (dative).

### Exercise 33.

Where have you been so long? I have been at church, at school, in the country, at the market, at the fair, at the door, at the window. Where do you go to? I go to the concert, into the forest, to the parade, to the play ground, to the seaside, to the table. Coblenz is (lies) on the Rhine, Brighton on the sea. Send this parcel to the palace. The student goes to the university, the ensign to the military academy. His daughter is at a music-school. He lives now in the country, no more in (the) town. His house is (lies) on the seaside, on a river, on a hill, in a valley. Come to the table, to the stove, to the window. Why are (stand) you at the door, by the stove, at the window? To which shop, to which magazine has she gone? Why do you sit by the fire place? I was (perf.) at my friend's, at the tailor's. Go to my friend, to the tailor's. Come to me, go to him. I was at my friend's. He was with us (at our house).

shop der Laden  
magazine das Magazin  
palace das Schloß  
country das Land  
field das Feld  
street die Straße  
market der Markt  
place (square) der Platz  
seaside das Meer, die See  
play-ground der Spielplatz  
fireplace das Kamin  
fair die Messe

parade die Parade  
university die Universität  
academy die Akademie  
music-school die Musikschule  
painting-school die Malerschule  
military academy die Kriegsschule  
river der Fluß  
parcel das Paket  
hill der Hügel, Berg  
valley das Thal  
ensign der Fähnrich  
to live wohnen

now jetzt.

# 17<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

## The auxiliaries of mood.

to be willing *wollen*  
 to be able (possibility) *können*  
 to be allowed *dürfen*, *mögen* (*dürfen* expressing allowance)  
 to dislike (negatively) *nicht mögen* (*mögen* expressing liking or dislike)  
 to be obliged (necessity) *müssen*.  
 to be obliged (command) *sollen*.

*Observe:* They are complete verbs, used in all tenses.

### Present tense.

| I will     | I can      | I may (am allowed) | I will not (dislike) |
|------------|------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| Ich will   | ich kann   | ich darf           | ich mag nicht        |
| du willst  | du kannst  | du darfst          | du magst nicht       |
| er will    | er kann    | er darf (mag)      | er mag nicht         |
| wir wollen | wir können | wir dürfen         | wir mögen nicht      |
| ihr wollt  | ihr könnt  | ihr dürft          | ihr möget nicht      |
| sie wollen | sie können | sie dürfen (mögen) | sie mögen nicht      |
| I must     | I shall    | Past participles.  |                      |
| ich muß    | ich soll   | gewollt            |                      |
| du mußt    | du sollst  | gekonnt            |                      |
| er muß     | er soll    | gedurft            |                      |
| wir müssen | wir sollen | gemocht            |                      |
| ihr müßet  | ihr sollt  | gemußt             |                      |
| sie müssen | sie sollen | gesollt.           |                      |

**Rule.** The *infinitive*, like the past participle, goes to the *end* of the sentence.

### Exercise 34.

The patient can not eat any meat, it is <sup>2</sup>not <sup>3</sup>good [for] <sup>1</sup>him (dat). He may (darf) eat [some] meat, his physician has allowed it. He shall drink [some] wine, his physician has ordered it. He must drink wine, it is necessary. He will [have] no milk. He will (mag) [have] no milk, he has a dislike to it. The boy can not go to school, he is not well. The girl will not go to school, she is lazy. She shall not go to church, she is not quite well. Why must a boy go to school? He must go to school, (in order) to learn something. May he stay at home? Has his father allowed it? He does not like (the) school, he will not go to school. He can not go to church, he is not well enough. Thou shalt not steal. Thou shalt do no murder. Thou shalt honour thy father and mother. The child can not walk,

it is too weak. Why will the child not go with us? It will play. Why is the boy not allowed to go with us? He has not yet done his task (work). He shall stay at home. He must do his work. Why does he not like to go with us? He will rather stay at home.

|                          |                                 |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|
| the girl das Mädchen     | to learn lernen                 |
| to allow erlauben        | to steal stehlen (gestohlen)    |
| to order verordnen       | to do murder töten              |
| necessary notwendig      | to honour ehren                 |
| dislike der Widerwille   | to play spielen                 |
| to it dagegen            | the work die Arbeit             |
| lazy faul                | to do a work eine Arbeit machen |
| in order to um zu        | not yet noch nicht              |
| to like gern haben       | rather lieber                   |
| to like to go gern gehen | task die Aufgabe                |
| quite well ganz wohl     | enough genug.                   |

### 18<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Their perfect.

Ich habe gewollt. Du hast gemußt, aber nicht gewollt. Er hat geburft, aber nicht gekonnt. Wir haben nicht gemocht. Haben Sie Ihre Lektion gekonnt (known)? Haben Sie Ihr Deutsch gekonnt? Sie haben nicht geburft.

*Observation:* These auxiliaries are rarely used by themselves. When connected with an infinitive, instead of their *participles* their *infinitives* are taken to form the perfect tense.

### Exercise 85.

Ich habe arbeiten wollen. Du hast ausgehen müssen. Er hat nicht zu Hause bleiben mögen. Wir haben spielen dürfen. Ihr habt arbeiten müssen. Sie hat Arznei einnehmen sollen, aber sie hat nicht gewollt. Wir haben unsere Aufgabe nicht machen können, wir haben wirklich nicht gekonnt.

Why would (perf.) you not work? I was tired and sleepy. Why have you been obliged to go out? I have been obliged to go out, in order to buy a book. Why did he not like to stay at home? I have been allowed to play. How long have you been allowed to play? You have been obliged to work. She should (was wanted, perf.) take [some] medicine, but she would not. Why have you not been able to do your task? We have not been attentive. The tailor



has not been able to make my coat. The boy would not go to school. The patient has not been able to sleep. My brother could (perf.) not help me (dat). He would help me, but he could not. He would cut a stick. He has been allowed to cut it. Have you been allowed to go out? Nobody has been allowed to go in.

|                               |                      |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|
| to work arbeiten              | tired müde           |
| to go out ausgehen            | sleepy schläfrig     |
| medicine die Medizin          | lazy faul            |
| to take medicine R. einnehmen | attentive aufmerksam |
| to go in hinein gehen         | indeed wirklich      |
| but aber.                     |                      |

### 19<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Irregularity in the perfect tense.

The same irregularity in the formation of the perfect tense takes place with the verbs:

|                        |               |                 |
|------------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| lassen to let, to get, | to cause      | heißen to bid   |
| sehen to see           | hören to hear | helfen to help. |

#### Exercise 36.

Ich habe ihn kommen lassen. Ich habe ihn gehen sehen. Ich habe ihn spielen hören. Ich habe ihm arbeiten helfen. Ich habe ihn gehen heißen.

He will order a coat. He has ordered a coat. Who has seen him come? Nobody has seen him go. Has anybody heard her sing? Have you heard her sing? Where did you hear her sing, at a concert or at home? The work was too hard, I have helped him [to] work. Why did you bid him go? Did you hear my brother play the violin? Have you got your shirt washed? Will you have (get) a shirt washed? I have had (got) my coat mended. I will have my coat mended. Let him go. Do not let him go. Will you let him go? Why have you let him go? Let the man come. Will you <sup>2</sup>not let <sup>1</sup>him come? Why have you told (let) him to come? I will get my book bound (inf.). I have had a book bound. Where have you got your book bound? The soldier had his wound dressed. I have had my hair (mit die Haare) cut. I have my hair cut. I have cut my hair.

to order machen lassen  
to sing singen  
to bind binden  
to dress a wound eine Wunde verbinden  
to mend ausbessern

shirt das Hemd  
violin die Violine  
my hair mit das Haar  
too hard zu schwer  
or oder.

## 20<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

### Plural of nouns.

**Rule 1.** Most masculine and some neuter monosyllabic nouns form their plural by adding: *e*, and generally soften the vowel.

**Ex.** der Tisch, die Tische; der Stuhl, die Stühle; der Markt, die Märkte.

**Rule 2.** Some masculine and many neuter monosyllabic nouns form their plural by adding: *er*, and soften the vowel.

**Ex.** das Buch, die Bücher; das Land, die Länder; der Wald, die Wälder.

**Rule 3.** Masculine and neuter nouns terminating in *el*, *en*, *er*, *igen* and *lein* add *nothing* in the plural, but soften the vowel.

**Ex.** der Mantel, die Mäntel; der Ofen, die Öfen; das Messer, die Messer.

**Rule 4.** Masculine nouns terminating in: *e* in singular, and the *feminine* nouns take: *en* or *n* in the plural, and do *not* soften the vowel.

**Ex.** der Knabe, die Knaben; die Nadel, die Nadeln; die Blume, die Blumen.

There are about 250 nouns in the preceding lessons. 68 of them go by the 1<sup>st</sup> rule, 16 by the 2<sup>d</sup>, 29 by the 3<sup>d</sup>, and 86 by the 4<sup>th</sup> rule.

Irregular or doubtful formations of the plural are marked by the number of the rule. With no number behind them, they go by the rules.

*Observe:* Some feminine monosyllabic form their plural like the masculine by Rule 1.

**Ex.** die Nacht, die Nächte; die Luft, die Lüfte; die Faust, die Fäuste.

Plural of the article.

|      |            |            |            |            |
|------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| N.   | die Tische | die Bächer | die Mäntel | die Radeln |
| G.   | der — e    | der — er   | der —      | der — n    |
| D.   | den — en   | den — ern  | den — n    | den — n    |
| Acc. | die — e    | die — er   | die —      | die — n.   |

*Observ. 1.* The dative plural *always* takes: *n*.

*Observ. 2.* The plural of the article for the three genders is alike.

**Rule 5.** Like the definite article are declined:

|         | Plural. |       | Plural. |
|---------|---------|-------|---------|
| these   | diese   | my    | meine   |
| those   | jene    | thy   | deine   |
| which   | welche  | his   | seine   |
| some    | einige  | her   | ihre    |
| a few   | wenige  | our   | unsre   |
| several | mehrere | your  | euer    |
| many    | vieler  | their | ihre    |
| all     | alle    | no    | keine.  |

Numerals:

|          |             |                   |                           |
|----------|-------------|-------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 eins   | 11 elf      | 21 einundzwanzig  | 100 hundert               |
| 2 zwei   | 12 zwölf    | 22 zweiundzwanzig | 112 hundertundzwoßf       |
| 3 drei   | 13 dreizehn | 23 dreiundzwanzig | 125 hundertfünfundzwanzig |
| 4 vier   | 14 vierzehn | 30 dreißig        | 200 zweihundert           |
| 5 fünf   | 15 fünfzehn | 40 vierzig        | 201 zweihunderteins       |
| 6 sechs  | 16 sechzehn | 50 fünfzig        | 1000 tausend              |
| 7 sieben | 17 siebzehn | 60 sechzig        | times mal.                |
| 8 acht   | 18 achtzehn | 70 siebenzig      |                           |
| 9 neun   | 19 neunzehn | 80 achtzig        |                           |
| 10 zehn  | 20 zwanzig  | 90 neunzig        |                           |

Repeat the multiplication table in German.

Decline in plural:

Der Stuhl, welcher Tisch, dieser Stuhl, jener Tisch, dieser Fuß, welcher Fluß, der Stod, jener Fuchß, kein Brief, mein Freund, Ihr Rod, unser Feind, das Pferd, welches Schiff, mein Schaf, die Nacht.

**Exercise 87.**

Nouns with the plural terminating in: *e*.

A week has seven days. A hand has five fingers. A month has four weeks, has thirty days. My friends know me. Winter-hats are not so light as summer-hats. Cut me some sticks. How many pieces of bread have you cut? I have written two letters this morning. I have cut three sticks for my three sons. I have given two pieces of

bread to the poor [man]. There (es) are mice in the kitchen. Have we no mouse-trap? There are (es giebt) six concerts here (in) this winter, but no balls. The rivers in England are small; why can they not be large? The places (squares) in this town are large. Schools must have play-grounds. My coats are not new. I wear no shoes. She is fond (ein Freund) of rings. The evenings are long. The army of the enemies. The ways before the town, the ways in the forest are not always clean. The table-clothes (Tisch) are not yet on the tables. The height of the mountains in this country. The snow on the mountains. Moss grows on (an) the trees. The palaces of the kings. The dogs of the hunter. Two stone bottles of beer. Two house-maids and a cook. The nights of the winter are long and often cold. The nights of the summer are short and warm. How old are you? I am 16 years old. He is 21 years old. She is 17 years old. The years pass away, (the) age comes.

|                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| horse das Pferd 1         | ball der Ball 1            |
| ship das Schiff 1         | town die Stadt 1           |
| sheep das Schaf 1         | to wear tragen             |
| day der Tag 1             | tree der Baum 1            |
| month der Monat 1         | king der König 1           |
| year das Jahr 1           | height die Höhe            |
| hand die Hand 1           | boot der Stiefel           |
| winter der Winter         | cook (fem.) die Köchin     |
| summer der Sommer         | age das Alter              |
| autumn der Herbst 1       | piece das Stück 1          |
| spring der Frühling 1     | to pass away vergehen      |
| season die Jahreszeit     | light leicht               |
| mouse die Maus 1          | clean rein                 |
| mouse-trap die Mausefalle | winter-hat der Winterhut 1 |
|                           | snow der Schnee.           |

Repeat carefully the words and exercises of the last 5 Lessons.

## 21<sup>st</sup> Lesson.

one more, no more.

one more, another noch ein, e (positively),  
 no more kein, e mehr, nicht mehr (negatively),  
 some more noch etwas (sing.), noch einige (plur.),  
 another glass, another bottle, another cup; noch ein Glas etc.,  
 no more wine kein Wein mehr (no before a noun),  
 no more good nicht mehr gut (with an adjective and verb),  
 no more write nicht mehr schreiben.

**Exercise 38.**

Bring another glass, another bottle of wine. Fetch another cup, take another cup of coffee. Stay another day, another week, another fortnight, another month. Two more (noch) days, two more years, three more days, three more months. Have you another cigar? Lend me one more Mark, one more Pound. Please take another piece of meat, another piece of cake. Send some more cheese, some more bread, some more coffee, some more tea. Some more people, some more friends may come. Do you expect any more letters to day? Do you want any more chairs? Yes, we want some more chairs. I have no more friend, no more friends in this town. Have you no more time? I drink no more wine, no more coffee, no more water. The beer is no more good. Grapes are no more rare. She is no more pretty, no more young, no more ill. We are no more rich. It is no more dark, it rains no more. I can no more wait. He will no more write. The child can no more sleep.

|             |             |        |            |
|-------------|-------------|--------|------------|
| a fortnight | 14 Tage     | to day | heute      |
| cigar       | die Cigarre | dark   | dunkel     |
| cake        | der Kuchen  | rare   | selten     |
| to expect   | erwarten    | grape  | die Traube |
| to want     | brauchen    | pretty | schön.     |

**22<sup>d</sup> Lesson.**

Nouns with the plural termination: **er**.

The fields, the woods, the countries, the books, the houses, the valleys, the child, the children, the roof, the roofs, the hen, the hens, the village, the villages, the pictures, the picturebooks, the lights, the castles, the word, the words, the egg, the eggs.

**Exercise 39.**

all the water alle Wasser; all the words alle Wörter (no article after all).

Some people, a few people, many people. Much milk with a little coffee. Some books, some picturebooks. All [the] towns of Germany. All the villages on the Rhine. The roofs of all the houses. All the words of this letter. The words of all these letters. Have you drunk all [the] wine, all the beer, all the water? Hens lay eggs. Hens

lay <sup>2</sup>no <sup>4</sup>more <sup>5</sup>eggs <sup>1</sup>now. How many eggs can you eat? For each one egg. How many books have you bought? With his books, without his books, for his books, in all these books. The countries of Europe. Clouds on the hills, fog in the valleys. All my children have been ill, two of them are <sup>2</sup>better <sup>1</sup>again. All my books are old. Have you read them all? Which of (von) your books are new? There is snow on the roofs. To whom do those forests belong, to the villages or to the government?

|                   |                             |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| valley das Thal   | village das Dorf            |
| word das Wort     | government die Regierung    |
| child das Kind    | Europe Europa               |
| roof das Dach     | much viel                   |
| hen das Huhn      | dress das Kleid             |
| egg das Ei        | to read lesen               |
| cloud die Wolke   | read, part. p., gelesen     |
| fog der Nebel     | to belong gehören (dat.) r. |
| each jeder, e, es | little wenig                |
| people Leute      | again wieder.               |

### 23<sup>d</sup> Lesson.

Masc. and neut. nouns terminating in: **el, en, er,**  
**chen und lein.**

|                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| der Hund, das Hündchen     | das Dorf, das Dörflein  |
| die Kage, das Käggchen     | das Buch, das Büchlein  |
| die Mutter, das Mütterchen | der Bach, das Bächlein. |

Diminutive nouns are formed by adding: **chen** and **lein**, the latter termination more in poetry. Diminutives soften the vowel and are always neuter.

### Exercise 40.

The fathers, the mothers, the brothers, the daughters. The gardens, the tailors, the birds, the cloaks, the pupils, the teachers. The stoves, the windows, the knives, the cakes, the looking-glasses. The joiners, the hills, the cellars, the rooms, the booksellers. The shoemakers. The bakers. The locksmiths, the butchers, the glaziers, the slaters, the turners. The angels in (im) heaven. The gardens round the town. Flower-gardens, vegetable-gardens, orchards. The gardens behind the houses. With gardens before the houses. The fathers with their sons, the mothers with their daughters,

without their daughters. The tailors make clothes, the joiners chairs and tables. The cellars are under the rooms. The windows in the villages are small. (The) hills are low, (the) mountains high. Knives must be made of steel. Children like cakes and fruit. Looking-glasses <sup>2</sup>often <sup>1</sup>hang between the windows. There (es) are no looking-glasses in the rooms. How many rooms have you taken? How many windows have your rooms? Birds are on the roofs and on the trees. How many teachers have you at your school? How many pupils has your tutor? We have a little dog and a kitten. The dog and the kitten are friends. The little village on the hill, the little brook in the valley. Put the little book in your pocket. Put the little table near the window.

|                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| heaven der Himmel                 | orchard der Obſtgarten      |
| kitten das Kätzchen               | low niedrig                 |
| brook der Bach                    | high hoch                   |
| daughter die Tochter 3            | to like (to eat) gern eſſen |
| mother die Mutter 3               | to put ſetzen               |
| looking-glass der Spiegel         | pocket die Taſche           |
| clothes, dresses die Kleider      | shoemaker der Schuhmacher   |
| the dress das Kleid               | glazier der Glazier         |
| fruit das Obſt                    | baker der Bäcker            |
| vegetable das Gemüſe              | slater der Dachbeder        |
| hill der Hügel                    | locksmith der Schloſſer     |
| flower-garden der Blumengarten    | turner der Drechſler        |
| vegetable-garden der Gemüſegarten | butcher der Metzger.        |

## 24<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

. Plural of feminine nouns.

### Exercise 41.

The needles, the pins, the breastpins, the forks, the dishes, the potatoes, the beans, the peas, the asparagus, the cucumbers, the flowers. The women, the weeks, the hours, the minutes, the seconds, the seasons. The waves, the schools, the exercises, the nieces, the cousins, the wounds, the kitchens, the cats.

The needles are of steel. Pins have a head. (The) plates and dishes are round. (The) bottles are of glass, breastpins are of gold. Do you like beans? Who does not like potatoes? All of us (we all) like peas. Who does not

like asparagus? Do you like cucumbers? Have you [any] grapes in your garden? These pears are very good. Not all pears are good. We have many flowers in our garden. Which flowers do you like best? (The) roses are red, white and yellow. Flowers stand before the windows. (The) lilies are white. (The) lilies are the symbol of (the) innocence. (The) roses are the symbol of love. (The) women are prettier than (the) men. A year has 52 weeks, 365 days; a day has 24 hours, an hour 60 minutes, a minute 60 seconds. The waves of the sea. The hours of the night. The schools in England. Many schools in Prussia. No school, no schools. Are your nieces pretty? Are your cousins amiable? To dress the wounds of a soldier. Cats and dogs are rarely friends.

|                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| fork die Gabel              | year das Jahr 1            |
| plate der Teller            | hour die Stunde            |
| potatoe die Kartoffel       | minute die Minute          |
| bean die Bohne              | second die Sekunde         |
| pea die Erbse               | head der Kopf 1            |
| asparagus die Spargel       | pin die Stednadel          |
| pear die Birne              | breastpin die Vorstednadel |
| cucumber die Gurke          | gold das Gold              |
| rose die Rose               | love die Liebe             |
| lily die Lilie              | man der Mann 2             |
| symbol das Sinnbild, Symbol | white weiß                 |
| innocence die Unschuld      | red rot                    |
| to like (to eat) gern essen | yellow gelb                |
| like best am liebsten haben | pretty schön, hübsch.      |
| amiable liebenswürdig       | round rund                 |
| the dish die Schüssel.      |                            |

*Observe:* When by a plural the whole species is expressed, in English the article is omitted, in German it must be used.

**Ex.** Pins have a head die Stednadeln haben einen Kopf.

## 25<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Masculine nouns terminating in *e* take *n* in plural.

### Exercise 42.

The sailors, the servants, the ambassadors, the clergymen, the nephews, the boys, the lions, the oxen, the monkeys. The Frenchmen, the Prussians, the Germans, the



Turks, the Greeks. The heathen, the jews, the christians, the Protestants, the (Roman) Catholics, the men. The philosophers, the poets, the princes, the counts, the soldiers, the heroes, the masters, the slaves, the gentlemen, the herdsmen. The blind, the lame, the poor, the rich, the bad, the wicked, the good, the pious, the deaf. From our sailors. With his servants. Many Protestants, few Catholics, no Catholics. To the heathen (plur.). No more slaves. Which gentlemen? All [the] Prussians must serve in the army. The lions in the desert. The oxen in (auf) the meadow. The cows in the stable. The jews in Europe. The Germans against the French. For the Russians, against the Turks. Among the philosophers. By (von) the poets, through the poets. How many cows have you in your stable?

|                    |                     |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| count der Graf 4   | slave der Sklave    |
| stable der Stall 1 | desert die Wüste    |
| meadow die Wiese   | pious fromm         |
| cow die Kuh 1      | serve dienen (reg.) |

For the other words see Lesson 9.

#### Exercise 48.

Tell him (dat.), what you (ihr) see. The blind see, the lame walk, the deaf hear. The rich support (help) the poor (dat.). Follow (dat.) the example of the good. The lazy [people] do not like to work. Do not follow the example of the bad. Obey (dat.) your teachers. Do not contradict your parents. The bad <sup>2</sup>often <sup>1</sup>mislead the good. The poor often envy the rich. The rich [people] are not always happy. The poor are not always unhappy. Soldiers must be brave. Not all soldiers can be heroes. All heroes are brave. There are (es giebt) many jews in Poland and Russia. There are more Protestants than Catholics in Germany. There are very few Catholics in Sweden. Are there [any] Protestants in Spain? Not many. There are not many Protestants in Italy and France. Are there any more (noch) heathen in Europe? (The) lions live in Africa. Which monkeys are bigger, the monkeys in Asia and Africa, or in America? (The) lions live in (the) deserts. The ambassadors of England, France, Russia, Austria and Germany.

|                              |                      |
|------------------------------|----------------------|
| to walk gehen                | brave tapfer         |
| to hear hören (reg.)         | France Frankreich    |
| to work arbeiten (reg.)      | Italy Italien        |
| to obey gehorchen (reg.)     | Poland Polen         |
| parents die Eltern           | Russia Rußland       |
| happy glücklich              | Asia Asien           |
| unhappy unglücklich          | Europe Europa        |
| to live leben, wohnen (reg.) | Africa Afrika        |
| Austria Österreich           | Sweden Schweden      |
| Germany Deutschland          | Spain Spanien        |
| example das Beispiel         | Greece Griechenland. |

Repeat carefully the words of the last five lessons, repeat the exercises belonging to them to fluency.

## 26<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

### Irregular declensions.

1. There are some feminine nouns that take *e* in the plural like the masculine and soften the vowel.

#### Exercise 44.

The mice, the hands, the fists, the powers, the housemaids, the nights, the towns, the cows, the breezes (air), the guilds, the sausages, the arts, the powers (forces).

Are there any mice in your kitchen? Have the apes four hands or four feet? A fist in the pocket (proverb). Which are the six great-powers of Europe? The nights in (the) summer are short. The nights in winter are long and dark. Which five towns on the Rhine have cathedrals? The cows are no more in stables, they are in the meadow now. The powers (strength) of the patient are in decrease. His powers can soon increase again. Pure air(s) on the mountains, cold fogs in the valleys. (The) guilds are an institution of the middle ages (sing.). Why are there no more guilds now? Daughters <sup>2</sup>often <sup>1</sup>resemble their father (dat.), sons often resemble their mother. Arts and sciences flourish in Germany. In which country of Europe do arts and sciences flourish most? (The) arts are neglected in time of war.

hand die Hand  
cow die Kuh  
air die Luft  
guild die Zunft

art die Kunst  
science die Wissenschaft  
to flourish blühen  
most am meisten

|                           |                             |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| sausage die Wurst         | to neglect vernachlässigen  |
| power die Macht           | wolf der Wolf               |
| strength, force die Kraft | institution die Einrichtung |
| great-power Großmacht     | resemble (dat.) gleichen    |
| pocket die Tasche         | in decrease im Abnehmen     |
| fast die Faust            | to increase zunehmen        |
| dark dunkel               | pure rein                   |
| fog der Nebel             | middle-ages das Mittelalter |

cheap wohlfeil.

2. There are some masculine and neuter nouns, that take **s** in the genitive case sing., but **n** or **en** in the plural.

#### Exercise 45.

Of the neighbour, the neighbours; of the cousin, the cousins; of the bed, the beds; of the shirt, the shirts; of the eye, the eyes; of the ear, the ears; of the heart, the hearts; of the pain, the pains; of the peasant, the peasant.

|                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| neighbour der Nachbar | slipper der Pantoffel |
| shirt das Hemd        | pain der Schmerz      |
| ear das Ohr           | peasant der Bauer     |

cousin der Vetter.

3. Some masculine have dropped the **n** in the nominative sing., and are declined like masc. nouns ending in **n**.

|                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| faith der Glaube    | name der Name             |
| thought der Gedanke | rock der Fels (gen. ens)  |
| sparkle der Funke   | heart das Herz (gen. ens) |

peace der Friede.

Of his faith; of this thought, these thoughts; a sparkle, sparkles; of my name, my names. Decline: der Funke, der Name, der Gedanke.

The house of my neighbour is old. The houses of my neighbours are old. What do you think of the behaviour of my cousin? All my cousins are younger than myself (I). Are the beds made? Are the shirts washed? Are the shirts back from the washer-woman? Birds have sharp eyes. The ears of (the) asses are long. You (bu) have two eyes and one mouth. You shall see much and say little. You have two ears and one mouth. Hear much and say little. An ear-ache (plur.) is very painful, often more painful than an eye-ache or soar throat. The peasants in Germany are very often wealthy, they are land-owners. The faith of Abraham. The heathen (have) persecuted the christians on account of their faith. The power of thought. Thoughts are free,

words and actions not always. The blessings of peace. Do not abuse (take in vain) the name of God.

|                               |                             |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| land-owner der Landeigentümer | washer-woman die Waschfrau  |
| behaviour das Betragen        | painful schmerzlich         |
| back zurück                   | more painful schmerzlicher  |
| ass der Esel                  | wealthy wohlhabend          |
| mouth der Mund                | to persecute verfolgen      |
| to hear hören (reg.)          | on account of wegen (gen.)  |
| an ear-ache Ohrenschmerzen    | free frei                   |
| an eye-ache Augenschmerzen    | action die Handlung         |
| soar-throat Halschmerzen      | the blessings die Segnungen |
|                               | to abuse mißbrauchen.       |

*Observe:* 1. words (connected) **Worte**, (not connected) **Wörter**, dictionary das **Wörterbuch**.

2. Nouns, used in their universal sense, have no article in English, but take the definite article in German (see exerc. 40. 41 etc.).

*Remark.* The numbers behind the nouns henceforth denote the declensions to which they belong, and especially refer to the formation of their plural, according to the preceding rules. Those with Nr. 1 form the genitive sing. by adding **s** or **es**, and the plural by adding **e**. Nr. 2 gen. **s**, plur. **en**. Nr. 3 gen. **s**, plur. **no** termination. Nr. 4 gen. **n** or **en**, or when feminine no termination in sing., plur. **n** or **en**. Nr. 5 gen. **s**, plur. **n**. Nouns that decline regularly, as all of Nr. 3, and almost all of Nr. 4 have no figures behind them.

## 27<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

### Adjectives. Adverbs.

**Rule 1.** Adjectives, predicatively used, remain unaltered for masculine, feminine and neuter, for singular and plural.

**Rule 2.** Adjectives, used as adverbs, do not differ in form from them.

|                              |                    |
|------------------------------|--------------------|
| wise, wisely weise           | clean sauber, rein |
| diligent, diligently fleißig | naughty unartig    |
| careful, -ly sorgfältig      | gentle artig       |
| good, well gut               | cool kühl          |
| prudent, -ly klug            | brave tapfer       |
| nice, -ly schön              | delightful lustig. |

### Exercise 46.

The brother is young, the sister is young, the brother and sister are young. Which man is always wise? Which man <sup>1</sup>always <sup>1</sup>acts wisely? What is more, to act wisely or

to act prudently? The work is carefully done. The writing is good. The exercise is well written. His behaviour has been cool. He behaves coolly. The girl is diligent. She has diligently worked. The child is quiet and has quietly slept. The letter is nice and nicely written. Your copy-book must be clean and your exercises must be cleanly written. Keep your hands clean. The boy has been very naughty, he often behaves naughtily. Why are girls more gentle than boys, and behave more gently than boys? Roses are nice flowers and smell delightfully. His reception has been cool. Why did they receive him coolly? Soldiers must be brave and fight bravely.

to act handeln (r.)  
to behave sich betragen  
to work arbeiten (reg.)  
quiet ruhig  
copybook das Heft  
to keep halten (irr.)  
to smell riechen (irr.)

girl das Mädchen  
writing die Schrift  
rose die Rose  
reception der Empfang  
to receive empfangen (irr.)  
received empfangen (p. p.)  
to fight kämpfen (reg.)

**Rule.** Some adverbs as: often, always, never etc. are in English placed between subject and the verb in the present and imperfect, in German adverbs always *follow* the verb.

## 28<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Declension of the adjectives, attributively used.  
Singular.

|      |       |       |        |       |       |        |       |       |        |
|------|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|--------|
| N.   | der   | gut-e | Vater  | die   | gut-e | Mutter | das   | gut-e | Kind   |
|      | ein   | — er  |        | eine  |       |        | ein   | — es  |        |
| G.   | des   | — en  | Vaters | der   | — en  | Mutter | des   | — en  | Kindes |
|      | eines |       |        | einer |       |        | eines |       |        |
| D.   | dem   | — en  | Vater  | der   | — en  | Mutter | dem   | — en  | Kind   |
|      | einem |       |        | einer |       |        | einem |       |        |
| Acc. | den   | — en  | Vater  | die   | — e   | Mutter | das   | gut-e | Kind.  |
|      | einen |       |        | eine  |       |        | ein   | — es  |        |

*Observ. 1.* Adjectives preceded by the definite and indefinite article differ only in the nominative case singular, masc. and neuter.

*Observ. 2.* Accusative feminine and neuter are *always* like their nominatives.

*Observ. 3.* Like the definite article are declined: dieser,

jener, welcher and the indefinite numerals: jeder, mancher, vieler, aller.

*Observ.* 4. Like the indefinite art. are declined: sein and the possessive pronouns: mein, dein, sein, unser, euer, ihr (Ihr).

Decline: The good boy, this good boy, that good boy, which good boy. A good boy, no good boy, my good boy, your good son. The little child, this little child, a little child, no little child. The gold watch, a gold watch, my gold watch, every new week. Every new year, many a good book, many a fine day.

|                        |                |
|------------------------|----------------|
| every jeder, er, es    | watch die Uhr  |
| many a mancher, er, es | golden golden. |

#### Exercise 47.

The old dog, an old dog; the old house, an old house. The long day, a long day; the good book, a good book. The little boy, a little boy; the little girl, a little girl. The big ox, a big ox; the big horse, a big horse. The new chair, a new chair; the new sofa, a new sofa. The round table, a round table; the flat roof, a flat roof. The large kitchen, a large kitchen; a pretty rose, this pretty rose. A white lily, a red rose, a good smell, a sharp knife. A young dog, a young horse, a big cow. With an old dog, in an old house, with a little boy, from a little girl. After a long day, after a cold night. On a new chair, on our round table, in our large kitchen. On a flat roof, with a red rose, with a sharp knife. From the old house, from a high tree, from this high house. The large window, at a large window. Round a round table, at a warm stove, the iron stove, an iron stove. The cheerful fire of a chimney. The bright flame of the fire. The bright light. A short night. (A) good news. No good news. Without a warm stove. A clean shirt, a long exercise. A silver fork, a silver spoon.

|                    |                                |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| flame die Flamme   | flat flach                     |
| iron eisen         | cheerful freundlich            |
| silver silbern     | bright hell                    |
| fork die Gabel     | smell der Geruch 1             |
| spoon der Löffel   | high hoch                      |
| plate der Teller   | the high tower der hohe Turm 1 |
| kitchen die Küche  | roof das Dach 2                |
| news die Nachricht | shirt das Hemd 5               |
| fire das Feuer.    |                                |

**Exercise 48.**

Landladies like a large kitchen better than a small [one]. She has a small kitchen in her new lodgings (sing.). I bring you a pretty rose. How do you like this pretty rose? The white lily is the symbol of innocence. The red rose is the symbol of love. All roses have a delightful smell, the wild rose too. Have you a sharp knife (in order) to cut that pretty stick? A young dog likes to play. You have bought a young horse. Of what age is your young horse? Is not that a very big cow? Do you live in that old house? A new house is generally more comfortable than an old house. Every thing is so very comfortable in this old house. He is here with his little boy. How much did the little girl give to the poor woman? A short night follows a long day (dat.). The pond must be frozen after this cold night.

Landlady die Hausfrau  
lodgings die Wohnung  
to like gern haben  
smell der Geruch  
wild wild  
too auch

generally gewöhnlich  
comfortable bequem  
every thing alles  
pond der Teich  
to freeze frieren  
frozen gefroren.

**Exercise 49.**

Do not stand on that new chair. They sit round our round table and play. What cloth (carpet) is on our round table? Put the green cloth on it. The iron stove in our room is burst. An iron stove easily gets red hot. A bright chimney fire is more cheerful than a warm stove, but does not warm the room so well. The electric light is a very bright light. Will you not put on a clean shirt? Have you had (erhalten) [a] good news? He has had no good news. The boy fell from the high tree and broke (perf.) his left arm. Bring another silver fork and another silver spoon. What do you find prettier, a flat roof or a high roof? (The) Spanish wine is sweet and strong. German steel is as good as English steel. England is a rich country. French wine is generally red, German wine is white. Unripe fruit is unhealthy. Most cotton comes from America. Who has made your new coat? Dutch cheese comes from Holland. A fertile year is a cheap year. (26<sup>th</sup> Lesson, Observ. 2.)

to stand sich stellen  
table-cloth der Tischteppich  
to put thun (irr.)  
green grün  
on it darauf  
to burst springen (gesprungen)  
fire das Feuer  
warm warm  
to warm wärmen  
easily leicht  
red hot glühend  
sweet süß  
unripe unreif  
unhealthy ungesund  
chimney das Kamin 1.

cheap wohlfeil  
electric elektrisch  
to put on anziehen (irr.)  
to fall fallen (irr.)  
fallen gefallen  
to break brechen (irr.)  
broken gebrochen  
left links  
Spanish spanisch  
Dutch holländisch  
fruit das Obst  
cheese der Käse  
cotton die Baumwolle  
most meist  
fertile fruchtbar.

### Exercise 50.

This high tree is very old. This large and thick lime-tree is very beautiful. Not every high tree is old. Not every thick tree is fine. We have a very fine pear-tree in our garden, and not one old apple-tree. A high tree is not always old. A small tree is not always young. A good son obeys his father and mother. A good child is the joy of his parents. A diligent boy always does his work for school. A pious man fears God and resists (dat.) sin. The first month of the year is (der) January, the last month of the year is December. The first page of this book is as difficult as the last [one]. A thick fog, a heavy rain are not pleasant. How do you like this thick fog, this heavy rain? We live in a large house? Will you buy this large looking-glass? Please, lend me your sharp knife. I have cut myself with my sharp knife. A large looking-glass is an ornament in a room. A fine picture is expensive. Have you bought this fine picture? A good stove makes a room soon warm. Have you a good book? Will you lend it me? This gold ring was very expensive.

thick dick  
lime-tree die Linde  
pear-tree der Birnbaum  
apple-tree der Apfelbaum  
to obey (dat.) gehorchen (r.)  
joy die Freude  
parents die Eltern  
pious fromm  
to fear fürchten (r.)  
to resist widerstehen (dat.) irr.

first erst  
last letzt  
fog der Nebel  
heavy stark  
ornament die Zierde  
expensive teuer  
was war  
I like it es gefällt mir  
pleasant angenehm



**Exercise 51.**

A silver watch sometimes goes better than a gold one. Is this not a fine horse? What a fine horse this is! Is this (das) not a pretty dog? What a pretty dog this is! What is the price of this fine book? Which is more difficult, ancient history or modern history? The English language is not so difficult as the French language. The German and the Russian language are very difficult. I have no clean pocket-handkerchief in my great coat. How many pocket-handkerchiefs have you washing? I have no good knife now. I will buy a good [one]. A good apple is as good as a good pear. A rich man is often not so happy as a poor man. The last day of the old year and the first day of the new year were very cold. The best coffee comes from Asia, the best tea from China, the best tobacco from America. The bible is the best book. This large garden belongs to my uncle. This silver watch goes better than this gold one. Beef is the best meat. Do you see that large bird on that high roof? Do you know it? We will take this short way. This good daughter is the comfort of her old mother.

|                                     |                            |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| sometimes manchmal                  | apple der Apfel            |
| difficult schwer                    | pear die Birne             |
| history die Geschichte              | were waren                 |
| modern neu                          | tobacco der Tabak          |
| English englisch                    | bible die Bibel            |
| French französisch                  | beef das Ochsenfleisch     |
| German deutsch                      | comfort der Trost          |
| Russian russisch                    | language die Sprache       |
| pocket-handkerchief das Taschentuch | knife das Messer           |
|                                     | great coat der Überzieher. |

**29<sup>th</sup> Lesson.**

The plural of adjectives.

|      |                  |                     |
|------|------------------|---------------------|
| N.   | die gut-en Väter | meine alt-en Bücher |
| G.   | der — en Väter   | meiner — en Bücher  |
| D.   | den — en Vätern  | meinen — en Büchern |
| Acc. | die — en Väter   | meine — en Bücher.  |

*Observation 1.* As there is one article for the three genders in plural, as the possessive and determinative pronouns have the same terminations with the article, the

plural termination of the adjectives preceded by them is always: *en*.

**Ex.** Diese, jene, welche, meine, ihre, unsere guten Kinder.

*Observation 2.* After the indefinite numerals: *alle, viele, keine, einige, mehrere* the *n* of the adjectives in *nom.* and *acc.* may be dropped.

**Ex.** Viele große (*n*) Städte.

### Exercise 52.

Which new books have you bought? Have you no old books to sell? The Spanish grapes are sweet. There are many large towns in England. Many people sell their old clothes instead of giving them to the poor. How much did you pay for your new boots? The best German wines come from the Rhine. There are many rich wine merchants living on the Rhine. I bought (*perf.*) him a new pair of boots (a pair of new boots). My worsted stockings keep my feet very warm. The German and French wines are not so sweet as the Spanish and Italian wines. (The) most French wines are red. I have read many good English books. Can you lend me some good German books? Not all rich people are charitable. What will you do with your old clothes? Some of his old books are very valuable. The long nights in winter are wearisome for a sick [man]. The hot days in (*im*) summer are not good for travelling. Many foreigners come to the numerous watering-places in Germany. I like to write with these new pens better than with my old [ones]. All my good friends are dead. Which old people do not praise the good old times? You must not neglect your old friends. All his many children are provided for. How much did you pay for your silver spoons and forks? All these new houses are to be let. There are many large rooms in this old house. Take my measure for a new pair of boots. Do not make my new boots too tight. Boots must be wide and comfortable.

to sell verkaufen (*r.*)  
instead of giving anstatt zu geben  
to pay bezahlen (*r.*)  
wine merchant der Weinhändler  
a pair of ein Paar

wearisome lästig  
hot heiß  
for travelling zum Reisen  
foreigner der Fremde  
numerous zahlreich

worsted wollen  
 stocking der Strumpf  
 to keep halten (irr.)  
 Italian italienisch  
 charitable wohlthätig  
 my measure mir das Maß  
 tight eng  
 wide weit  
 valuable wertvoll

watering-place der Badeort 2  
 like better to write lieber  
 schreiben  
 dead tot  
 pen die Feder  
 to praise loben (r.)  
 to neglect vernachlässigen (r.)  
 to provide for versorgen (r.)  
 to be let vermieten (r.).

### 30<sup>th</sup> Lesson.

Adverbs of time and place and their position.

where wo (rest)  
 where to wohin (motion)  
 where from woher  
 there da, dort, darin (rest)  
 there hin, hinein (motion)  
 here hier (rest)  
 here her (motion)  
 to night heute Abend  
 last night gestern Abend  
 this morning heute Morgen  
 to-morrow morning morgen früh  
 not yet noch nicht

directly gleich  
 to day heute  
 yesterday gestern  
 to-morrow morgen  
 in the morning morgens  
 in the evening abends  
 now jetzt  
 soon bald  
 presently } hernach  
 afterwards } nachher  
 lately kürzlich  
 often oft.

*Observation 1.* Wohin and woher may be separated.

**Ex.** Wohin gehen Sie or wo gehen Sie hin?

Woher kommen Sie or wo kommen Sie her?

*Observation 2.* Hin expresses motion to a place in general, hinein motion into the interior of a closed place. The same difference is between da und darin.

**Ex.** Gehen Sie in die Kirche? Ich gehe hinein.

Waren Sie in der Kirche? Ich war darin.

Gehen Sie nicht auf den Markt? Ich gehe nicht hin.

Waren Sie nicht auf der Parade? Ich war nicht da.

*Position of the adverbs:*

**Rule.** Time before place, the negative nicht after time and before place.

**Ex.** Gehen Sie auf den Markt? Ich gehe nicht hin, ich gehe heute nicht hin. Gehen Sie in die Kirche? Ich gehe nicht hinein, ich gehe heute Morgen nicht hinein.

I was. Ich war, du warst, er war, wir waren, ihr waret, sie waren.

**Exercise 53.**

Where will you send this bottle of wine? I will send it to a poor sick [man]. Were you at church this morning? I was not at church this morning, I will go there this evening. Do you often go to church? I go there every Sunday. Were you lately in the country? I was not there lately, but I will soon go there. Were the boys at school this morning? They were not there this morning, they were not quite well. Where do you come from? I come from the theatre. Were there many people? The theatre was quite full. Where is the cook gone to? She has gone to the market, to buy some vegetables. Where has she come from? She has come from the market, she has come from the garden. Come here. Bring your chair here. Are you going to the shoemaker? I am not going there, he will come here. When will he come here? He will soon come and bring your boots. Where were you yesterday? I was in the country. What did you do there? Do you go to the concert to night? I do not go there to night, I was there last night, I have no time to night. Will you go to the theatre to morrow night? I can not go there to morrow. I have too much to do. Where do you come from? I come from our garden and bring you some nice flowers. Do you not yet go to school? It is late enough. I will go there directly. Will you not go to the garden? I will go there presently.

quite full ganz voll

shoemaker der Schuhmacher

boot der Stiefel

flower die Blume.

**Aufgabe 54.**

How long were you at the university? I was there [for] three years. Is your friend at the painting-academy? He is not at the painting-academy, he is an officer and is at the military academy. How long will he stay there? Perhaps a year or two. Where do you come from, from the steamer, or from the railway? From the railway. Where have you been? I was in the Black-forest for some weeks, I was there for my health. Were you at school? I was not there this morning. Were you at the concert last night? I was not there last night, but I hope to go

there to night or to morrow night. Will you go with me (the) next time? Do you often go to the concert? I do not often go there. I like the theatre better. Have you carried my boots to the shoemaker? I have carried them there, he will mend (make) them directly and bring them to night. Where is my letter? I have taken (carried) it to the post office. Where does (the) cotton come from? It comes from America. Where does coffee come from? The best coffee comes from Asia. Where does tea come from? (The) most tea comes from China.

perhaps vielleicht  
steamer das Dampfschiff  
railway die Eisenbahn  
Black-forest der Schwarzwald  
to hope hoffen (r.)

health die Gesundheit  
next time das nächste Mal  
to like better lieber haben  
post office die Post  
to carry tragen (irr.).

### 31<sup>st</sup> Lesson.

#### Adverbs of rest and motion.

##### motion.

up herauf, hinauf  
down herunter, hinunter  
in herein, hinein  
out heraus, hinaus  
over herüber hinüber  
on the top of oben auf (r. u. m.)

##### rest.

above, upstairs oben  
below, down stairs unten  
inside drin  
outside draußen  
on the other side drüben  
at the foot of unten an (r. u. m.).

*Observ.* When *here* is understood, the adverb is compounded with *her*, when *there* is understood, the adverb is compounded with *hin*.

to go up hinaufgehen  
(*there* is understood)

to take up hinauftragen  
to send up hinaufschicken

to jump over *her*-, hinüberspringen (over a ditch, a brook)

to climb up *her*-, hinaufklettern (up a rock, a mast, a tree)

to climb over *her*-, hinüberklettern (over a wall, a fence)

to come over herüberkommen (over a brook, a plank)

to go over hinübergehen (over the street)

to go down hinuntergehen, to come down herunterkommen.

to run laufen, to fall fallen, to step into a carriage in einen

Wagen steigen, to step up a ladder eine Leiter hinaufsteigen,

to step in (a carriage) einsteigen, to step out aussteigen,

to mount aufsteigen (on a horse), to alight absteigen.

to come up heraufkommen  
(*here* is understood)

to bring up heraufbringen  
to fetch up heraufholen.

|                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| the ditch der Graben            | fence der Zaun 1             |
| the brook der Bach 1            | bridge die Brücke            |
| the rock der Fels (gen. ens)    | wooden bridge der Steg 1     |
| mast der Mast 1                 | in the street auf der Straße |
| wall die Mauer                  | passage, corridor der Gang   |
| down stairs die Treppe hinunter | up the tree den Baum hinauf. |

### Aufgabe 55.

A (on the top of a rock to B): Come up, climb up.

B (at the foot of the rock to A): I can not climb up, the rock is too steep. I find it dangerous. You may come down.

A. Wait, I will come down directly, I do not find it difficult to climb down. A (in the room to B): Come in, let us work, we have much to do for to-morrow. B (in the street): No, you had better come out to me, let us play now, and do our work afterwards. A: You are not right, first work and then play.

A (in the street to B): Come out, let us take a walk. A (in a railway carriage): Step in, the train goes off. Jump in or you are too late. The guard says: Step in, or: All get out here. Let us climb up that tree, to pluck some cherries. Mind that you do not fall down. A (on the tree to B): Climb up, the cherries are sweet. I will climb down again. I have [had] enough.

|                                          |                            |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| steep steil                              | to go off abgehen          |
| dangerous gefährlich                     | guard der Schaffner        |
| difficult schwer                         | to pluck pflücken          |
| room das Zimmer                          | that (conj.) daß           |
| you had better come komm lieber          | cherry die Pflaume         |
| to be right recht haben                  | again wieder               |
| work die Arbeit                          | enough genug               |
| play das Spiel 1                         | sweet süß                  |
| then dann                                | late spät                  |
| carriage der Wagen                       | mind gieß (geben Sie) acht |
| train der Zug 1                          | first erst                 |
| to take a walk einen Spaziergang machen. |                            |

### Aufgabe 56.

Who lives above? Who lives below? My family lives below, my parents live above. We have our parlour below, our bedrooms above. It is too cold outside in the street, come in. It is too warm inside in the room. A (in the

water to B): Jump in, the water is delicious. B: I will jump in presently, after you. A (on the other side of a brook, to B): Come over, quick. B: How can I come over? A: Well, go over that narrow plank. B: I can not, I am too giddy. A: Jump <sup>2</sup>over <sup>1</sup>then. B: How can I jump over, do you not see, the brook is too broad, I may fall in! A (on the other side of a ditch to B): Come here, I will show you something, jump over. B: How can I jump over, the ditch is wide and very deep, I may fall in and cannot come out again! Do not run up the hill, you get too tired, and will be (come) out of breath. But you may run down, that is fun. Run down to me. Come up to me. Go down directly. Get in, get out [of the carriage]. There is a high wall, can you climb over [it]? I am above now and will jump down in the garden. There is a high fence, let us climb over. Do not fall down the stairs. Has the boy fallen down from the tree? He has fallen down, but it was not high, he has not hurt himself. Come in! Please, go in! Let us alight [from our horses] and drink a glass of beer, I am very thirsty. I will alight, but only for [a] short time. Let us mount again, it is getting' late. Let us step out for a minute or two, we can directly be <sup>2</sup>here <sup>1</sup>again.

parlour das Wohnzimmer  
bedroom das Schlafzimmer  
delicious herrlich  
the other side die andere Seite  
quick schnell  
narrow schmal  
giddy schwindelig  
broad, wide breit  
deep tief  
well nun, ei

only nur  
family die Familie  
tired müde  
then dann  
to show zeigen (r.)  
is fun macht Spaß  
out of breath außer Atem  
you will be du wirst sein  
to hurt one's self sich wehe thun  
thirsty durstig

to get late spät werden.

Repeat the last six lessons carefully.

### 32<sup>d</sup> Lesson.

Comparison of adjectives and adverbs.

| Positive. | Comparative. | Superlative. |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|
| klein     | klein-er     | klein-ſt     |
| mächtig   | mächtiger    | mächtigſt    |
| alt       | älter        | älteſt.      |

**Rule.** The comparative is formed by adding: *er*, the superlative by adding: *st* to the root, or *est* when the root ends in: *f*, *sch*, *t*, *z*. The vowels *a*, *o*, *u* are mostly softened.

**Observation 1.** When a comparative or superlative are preceded by an article, a possessive or determinative pronoun, they take the same terminations as the positive preceded by them.

| Ex. | Positive.             | Comparative.           | Superlative.            |
|-----|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
|     | der, die, das kleine. | der, die das kleinere. | der, die, das kleinste. |
|     | mein guter Rod.       | mein besserer Rod.     | mein bester Rod.        |

**Decline:** der kleinere Knabe, das kleinste Buch, die schönste Stunde, die schönsten Stunden, mein jüngerer Bruder, mein jüngster Bruder.

**Observation 2.** The adverb is preceded in the superlative by *am* (contraction of *an dem*). The adjective, predicatively used, has the forms: *der, die, das kleinste* and *am kleinsten*.

**Ex.** Wer schreibt am besten?

Dieses Buch ist das kleinste oder am kleinsten.

Diese Blume ist die schönste oder am schönsten.

Adjectives that soften their vowel in comparative and superlative.

|      |      |         |      |         |       |      |
|------|------|---------|------|---------|-------|------|
| alt  | groß | nahe    | kalt | rot     | hart  | flug |
| jung | kurz | stark   | warm | schwarz | krant | hoch |
| arm  | lang | schwach | bang | zart    | naß   | oft. |

Which are their comparatives and superlatives?

Irregular comparatives and superlatives:

|                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------|
| groß, größt           | gut, besser, best |
| hoch, höher, höchst   | balb, eher, ehest |
| nahe, näher, nächst   | viel, mehr, meist |
| gern, lieber, liebst. |                   |

|                       | pos.             | comp.              | sup.                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Observ.</i> I like | ich habe gern,   | ich habe lieber,   | ich habe am liebsten, |
| I like to eat         | ich esse gern,   | ich esse lieber,   | ich esse am liebsten, |
| a dear child          | ein liebes Kind, | ein lieberes Kind, | mein liebstes Spiel.  |

### Aufgabe 57.

greater than größer als      as great as so groß als  
not so great as nicht so groß als.

A rat is larger than a mouse. A mouse is not so large as a rat. The Danube is greater than the Rhine. All [the]



other rivers of Germany are smaller than the Rhine. The Alps are the highest mountains in Europe. (The) Mont Blanc is the highest mountain in the Alps. The Caucasus on the frontiers of Asia is a little higher than the Alps. London is the largest city in the world, Paris the largest in France, Berlin the largest in the German empire. Paris is by far not so large as London. Which (welches) are the richest countries in Europe? England and France are the richest countries in Europe, but not the largest. Spain is now one of the poorest countries in Europe. The Chinese are the most numerous nation on (the) earth. The three smallest kingdoms in Europe are Greece, Denmark and Servia. Which is the most fertile country in Europe, which is the most powerful? (The) Himalaya is the highest range of mountains in the world. Which is the highest mountain in the Himalaya? Which are the highest trees on earth? Many people must die in the best years of their life. A news of the greatest importance. Which is the most precious metal? Gold is more precious than silver. A father with his youngest child. An elder brother of his (him). A younger sister of hers (her). His elder brother died (perf.) before him. The coldest night in this year. This (das) is the wettest summer that I remember (gen.).

|                          |                               |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------|
| near nahe                | Servia Serbien                |
| black schwarz            | Chinese der Chinese           |
| tender zart              | numerous zahlreich            |
| wet naß                  | earth die Erde                |
| prudent klug             | kingdom das Königreich 1      |
| high hoch                | Denmark Dänemark              |
| rat die Ratte            | die sterben                   |
| Danube die Donau         | died gestorben                |
| Rhine der Rhein          | importance die Wichtigkeit    |
| other ander              | precious kostbar              |
| Caucasus der Kaukasus    | metal das Metall 1            |
| frontier die Grenze      | nation die Nation             |
| empire das Kaiserreich 1 | that dessen (gen.)            |
| by far bei weitem        | to remember sich erinnern     |
| world die Welt           | range of mountains das Gebirg |

I am afraid es ist mir bang.

#### Aufgabe 58.

The first lesson, (the) last time, for the (zum) first time, for the last time. His last letter was from the 1<sup>st</sup> [of]

December. The first of January is the first day of the year. By (mit) first opportunity. Several times (sing.). Three times two are (is) six. How many times?  $5 \times 5 = 25$ ,  $6 \times 12 = 72$ ,  $8 \times 8 = 64$ ,  $7 \times 7 = 49$ . When did you see him for the first time? When did you speak to him for the last time? Which dogs run the quickest? Which birds fly faster, pigeons or swallows? Which boy is the most diligent? Which brother is the oldest? Which girl is the most attentive? Which book is the most interesting? The older brother, the younger sister. To which brother did you speak, to the older or to the younger? Which boy do you like best, the youngest or the oldest? Which sister do you like best, the oldest or the youngest? He (has) sent me the book on the 1<sup>st</sup> of August. The days are the longest in June, the shortest in December. Who has done his work best? Which work is the best? Your last letter was from the last of December. I am as tall as my brother. This winter is as cold as last winter. This paper is as white as snow. He works as carefully as his sister. She writes as well as he. I will tell (it) you, as soon [as] he writes.

|                |                 |             |                    |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------|--------------------|
| the first time | das erste Mal   | swallow     | die Schwalbe       |
| times          | mal             | diligent    | fleißig            |
| opportunity    | die Gelegenheit | interesting | interessant        |
| to fly         | fliegen         | June        | der Juni           |
| pigeon         | die Taube       | as — as     | so — als, so — wie |
| attentive      | aufmerksam      | snow        | der Schnee         |

lesson die Lektion.

### 33<sup>rd</sup> Section.

The adjective not preceded by an article  
or a pronoun.

**Rule.** The adjective, not preceded by an article or pronoun, takes the terminations of the *definite* article, in singular and plural. The genitive singular masculine and neuter often has *en* instead of *es*.

|      |               | Singular.  |             | Plural.       |
|------|---------------|------------|-------------|---------------|
| N.   | Guter Kaffee  | gute Milch | gutes Brot  | gute Menschen |
| G.   | guten Kaffees | — er Milch | — en Brotes | — er Menschen |
| D.   | gutem Kaffee  | — er Milch | — em Brote  | — en Menschen |
| Acc. | guten Kaffee  | — e Milch  | — es Brot   | — e Menschen. |

Decline: Green tea, sweet milk, good beer, white bread, old shoes, useful books.

### Aufgabe 59.

Good books are the best company. When (the) distress [is] greatest, God's help is next. Black tea is better for health than green tea. Strong coffee is not good for health. Old wine is healthier than young wine. They (man) drink more red wine in France, than white wine. I like (to drink) cold water better than warm water. The Turks drink black coffee without milk and sugar. What is sweeter than honey, what is stronger than a lion? No animal roars as tremendously as a (the) lion. His latest hour to go to bed is 10 o'clock. Yellow roses are scarce. Red roses are more frequent than white roses. New (fresh) bread is not healthy, but people like it better than stale (dry) bread. Which flower smells best? Good old pictures are more valuable than good new pictures. At the (zu) end of last week. In the (zu) beginning of next year. Before last Sunday. Since last week. Old wine. New wine. Fresh eggs. In old times. The tales of old times. [A] pure air (plur.) on the mountains, [a] cold fog in the valleys. (The) most people like sweet fruit. What do you like better, juicy pears or sweet grapes? Do not bathe in too cold water. Do not bathe in too warm water. With [a] heavy heart. Be of good courage. With [a] light heart. The behaviour of good children to their parents. Good children are the comfort of old parents. The intercourse of (mit) cheerful people. The cares of poor people. We are all mortal men. The lot of mortal men. The advice of good friends. The company of good men. With good friends.

company die Gesellschaft  
distress die Not  
health die Gesundheit  
healthy gesund  
sugar der Zucker  
honey der Honig  
animal das Tier 1  
to roar brüllen  
tremendously fürchterlich  
scarce selten

frequent häufig  
fresh frisch  
mortal sterblich  
lot das Los 1  
end das Ende 5  
dry, stale trocken  
be (imper.) seien Sie (sei)  
to smell riechen  
valuable wertvoll  
picture das Bild 2

|                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| tale die Sage       | intercourse der Umgang |
| fog der Nebel       | cheerful heiter        |
| pear die Birne      | care die Sorge         |
| fruit das Obst      | advice der Rat         |
| juicy saftig        | beginning der Anfang 1 |
| to bathe baden (r.) | useful nützlich        |
| to, towards gegen   | since seit (dat.)      |
| courage der Mut.    |                        |

### 34. Section.

Adjective-substantives with the definite and indefinite article.

**Rule.** Adjective-substantives are declined like adjectives.

**Ex.** Der Fremde, ein Fremder; Fremde, die Fremden.

Der Deutsche, ein Deutscher; Deutsche, die Deutschen.

Decline these two words. (See Lesson 9.)

Such adjective-substantives are:

|                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| sent gesandt (adj.)         | wise weise (adj.)             |
| an ambassador ein Gesandter | a sage ein Weiser, der — e    |
| the — der — e               | the philosopher der Weltweise |
| ambassadors Gesandte        | black schwarz                 |
| the — die — en              | a black ein Schwarzer         |
| spiritual geistlich         | der — e                       |
| a clergyman ein Geistlicher | white weiß                    |
| accused angeklagt           | a white man ein Weißer        |
| a defendant ein Angeklagter | der — e                       |
| wicked gottlos              | innocent unschuldig           |
| ein Gottloser, der — e      | ein Unschuldiger, der — e     |
| deaf and dumb taubstumm     | Unschuldige, die — en         |
| ein Taubstummer, der — e    | guilty schuldig               |
| served bedient              | ein Schuldiger, der — e       |
| a foot man ein Bedienter    | Schuldige, die — en           |
| a superior ein Vorgesetzter | an inferior ein Untergebener  |
| the — der — e               | the — der — e                 |
| a traveller ein Reisender   | travellers Reisende           |
| the — der — e               | the — die — en.               |

### Aufgabe 60.

The German, a German loves his native country, Germans, the Germans love their native country. Many Germans (Lesson 29, Observ. 2) emigrate every year. Most of these Germans go to North-America. Many foreigners come to the Rhine every year. This stranger asks you for (nach) the way to the railway station. Tell (dat.) this stranger the

way to the bridge. Are these foreigners Englishmen or Frenchmen? The hotels are full of travellers. Many a foreigner speaks German very well. Many foreigners can not speak German. (The) Old Greece had seven sages. One of the seven sages of Greece was Solon, the legislator of Athens. A fool often talks, where a wise [man] keeps silent. Who is more to be pitied, a blind or a deaf [man], the blind or the deaf [man], the blind or the deaf [men]? God allows his sun to shine over the good and over the bad, over good and wicked [people], and lets rain fall over the just and over the unjust. There are many learned [men] in Germany. Why does a deaf, the deaf [man], why do deaf [people], the deaf not learn [to] speak? Why are deaf [men], the deaf generally dumb? The blacks in America have come from Africa, the white [men] are of European origin. Who is your superior? Who is your inferior? The haughty are proud to their inferiors and cringing to their superiors. Be (be) charitable to the poor. The criminal sits on the bench of the defendants. The defendant comes before the assizes.

native country das Vaterland  
emigrant der Auswanderer  
North America Nordamerika  
to ask for fragen nach (r.)  
railway station der Bahnhof  
hotel das Hotel  
had hatte  
the sage der Weise  
legislator der Gesetzgeber  
bench die Bank  
criminal der Verbrecher  
was war  
Athens Athen  
deaf taub  
blind blind  
fool der Narr 4  
to allow lassen (irr.)

to shine scheinen (irr.)  
to rain regnen (r.)  
just gerecht  
wicked gottlos  
assizes die Assisen  
to keep silent schweigen (irr.)  
to be pitied zu beklagen (r.)  
learned man der Gelehrte  
dumb stumm  
origin die Herkunft  
superior der Vorgesetzte  
inferior der Untergebene  
haughty hochmütig  
proud to stolz gegen  
cringing to kriechend gegen  
charitable wohlthätig  
defendant der Angeklagte.

#### Aufgabe 61.

The innocent (sing. and plur.) must often suffer with the guilty. Which clergyman preaches on Sunday? Which do you like better to hear, an old or a young clergyman? There are in no town in the world more clergymen than

in Rome. The pope is a clergyman and his cardinals are clergymen, and all the monks are clergymen. A Roman Catholic clergyman is not allowed to marry. Protestant clergymen are generally married. Frederic the Great died in 1786. Prussia was powerful under the reign of Frederic the Great. Prussia was more powerful under Frederic the Great than under his successor. Why does history call him Frederic the Great? All must die, the rich and the poor (sing. and plur.), the great and the little, the old and the young. Rich [people], the rich support poor [people], the poor. A rich and a poor [man], the rich and the poor [man] sometimes live in the same house. A dead [man] is not to be pitied, he is relieved from distress and pain. The brave [man] is respected, the coward is despised. The brave are respected, cowards are despised. Rich [people], the rich are not always to be envied, poor [people], the poor are not always to be pitied. The pious suffers, the wicked thrives.

|                                      |                                 |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| innocent unschuldig                  | to die sterben (irr.)           |
| guilty schuldig                      | died starb (imperf.)            |
| to suffer dulden (r.), leiden (irr.) | powerful mächtig                |
| to preach predigen (r.)              | reign die Regierung             |
| Sunday der Sonntag                   | successor der Nachfolger        |
| like better to hear lieber hören     | to call nennen (irr.)           |
| to count by zählen zu (r.)           | to support unterstützen         |
| pope der Papst                       | the same ders., dies., dasselbe |
| cardinal der Cardinal                | to relieve erlösen (r.)         |
| monk der Mönch                       | distress die Not                |
| to belong to gehören zu (r.)         | to respect achten (r.)          |
| Roman römisch                        | to despise verachten (r.)       |
| to marry heiraten                    | coward der Feige                |
| to be married verheiratet sein       | to thrive gedeihen (r.)         |

Frederic Friedrich.

### 35. Section.

The prepositions: an, in, vor, nach, seit, um, zu  
with reference to time.

**Rule 1.** The prepositions: an, in, vor require the dative when referring to time.

**Rule 2.** Time with no preposition, replying to the questions: wann? wie lange? is expressed by the accusative.

|                                                                   |                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| on Monday am Montag                                               | from 3 to 4 von 3 bis 4        |
| on the 1 <sup>st</sup> am ersten                                  | at Easter zu Ostern            |
| on New years day am Neujahrstag                                   | at Christmas zu Weihnachten    |
| a month ago vor einem Monat                                       | at New year zu Neujahr         |
| since half a year seit einem halben Jahr                          | at Whitsuntide zu Pfingsten    |
| after half an hour nach einer halben Stunde                       | at Shrovetide zu Fastnacht     |
| what o'clock wie viel Uhr                                         | at Midsummer zu Johanni        |
| at what o'clock um wie viel Uhr                                   | in winter im Winter            |
| at three o'clock um 3 Uhr                                         | till now bis jetzt             |
| at $\frac{1}{4}$ past three um ein Viertel über 3                 | hitherto bisher                |
| a quarter to three ein Viertel vor 3                              | from the beginning von Anfang  |
| half past three halb vier                                         | to the end bis zu Ende         |
| get my coat done by Saturday machen Sie mir den Rock bis Samstag. | from sunrise von Sonnenaufgang |
|                                                                   | to sunset bis Sonnenuntergang  |
|                                                                   | in dem, an dem = im, am        |

### Aufgabe 62.

Do you go to church on Sunday morning? There is half a holiday on Wednesday and Saturday afternoon. Can I have my boots by Thursday night? We take a long walk on Tuesday from sunrise to sunset. Were you at school on Monday and Tuesday? What day of the week is to-morrow? To-morrow is Friday. We are not at home on Christmas eve. There are Christmas trees in all German houses on Christmas eve. What is the meaning of a Christmas tree? He has his birthday on New years day. German schools have holidays from Christmas to New year, at Easter, at Whitsuntide and in autumn. How long do German holidays last? There are 10 days holidays at Christmas, 3 weeks at Easter, 4 days at Whitsuntide, 1 month in autumn at German schools. The holidays in spring and autumn are longer than in summer and winter. Where have you been hitherto? I was at home half a year ago. I was at home till now. I saw (perf.) her 3 weeks ago, an hour ago, a month ago. I have not seen him again after his first visit. What o'clock is it? It is a quarter to eleven. It is only half past ten. It is a quarter past four. The steamer leaves at a quarter past five. I come home at half past eight. Can you come at eleven? German dinner is at noon between twelve and one. German supper at night between seven and eight. Come this morning, this afternoon, this evening. He was here last night. Come again to-morrow

morning, after (the) supper, after tea, after dinner, before breakfast, before sunset, before sunrise. How long will he stay? A month, a day, <sup>2</sup>half <sup>1</sup>a month, half a day, half an hour. He has been at school hitherto. Can I have my new clothes by Saturday night?

|                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Tuesday Dienstag                   | Christmas tree der Weihnachts- |
| Wednesday Mittwoch                 | baum, Christbaum               |
| Thursday Donnerstag                | meaning die Bedeutung          |
| Friday Freitag                     | birthday der Geburtstag        |
| Saturday Samstag                   | to last dauern (r.)            |
| holidays Ferien                    | spring der Frühling            |
| at night abends                    | only erst, nur                 |
| a half holiday ein halber Tag frei | dinner das Mittagessen         |
| night die Nacht, der Abend         | supper das Abendessen          |
| noon der Mittag                    | visit der Besuch               |
| at noon mittags                    | last night gestern Abend       |
| afternoon der Nachmittag           | to morrow morning morgen früh  |
| Christmas eve der Weihnachts-      | breakfast das Frühstück        |
| abend                              | to leave abfahren              |
|                                    | leaves fährt ab.               |

### 36. Section.

Position of the personal pronouns and the nouns  
as objects without and with a preposition.

1. Ich habe **ihn** heute nicht gesehen.
2. Ich habe es ihm heute nicht geben können.
3. Ich konnte heute nicht **zu ihm** gehen.
4. Ich habe heute nicht **im Theater mit ihm** gesprochen.
5. Ich will **meinem** Vater den Brief morgen bringen.
6. Ich will den Brief morgen **zu meinem** Vater schicken.

*Observation:* Position of time, place and the negative  
see Lesson 30. Compare the examples 1—6.

**Rule 1.** Nouns and pronouns *without* a preposition precede nouns and pronouns that have a preposition. Pronouns (ihm, es, Ihnen) before the nouns and immediately after the auxiliary.

**Rule 2.** A definite expression before an indefinite expression.

- Ex.** 7. Ich kann ihm das Buch heute nicht geben.  
8. Ich kann ihm heute kein Buch geben.



9. Ich habe meinem Bruder heute ein Buch gebracht (aber: das Buch heute).
10. Ich habe ihm heute eins (seins) gebracht (aber: es ihm heute).
11. Haben Sie meinen Brief heute oder gestern erhalten?
12. Ich habe heute und gestern keinen Brief erhalten.

### Aufgabe 63.

Have you bought [any] cherries? There were no good cherries at the market to day, but I will buy some to morrow. Have you any letters for me? I have no letters for you to day. Have you given him a knife? I have not yet given him one, but I will give it him on his birth-day. When did you see him last? I saw (perf.) him last week, but did not yet speak to him about your affair. Can you make my clothes by Saturday night? You will (werden) have them before eight o'clock at night. I have not seen him before noon. I have not been able to speak to (mit) my uncle this afternoon, I have not yet been able to speak to him, but I will speak to him to morrow. Will you go with me to my cousin? I do not yet know him, but I will go with you to night. Do you know my friend, Mr. N.? I have often seen him, but never spoken to him. The weather is fine, we will take a walk this afternoon. I have not been out these (seit) three days. I often see him, but I rarely visit him. Are you afraid of this boy? I am not afraid of him. Will you not eat anything yet? Will you not eat anything more? Have I not also been there? I can not take a walk to day, I will go to the theatre to night. I must go into the country to morrow. Has the tailor not yet brought my new clothes? He has not yet brought them, but he will (wird) surely bring them to morrow morning.

|                          |                                   |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| affair die Angelegenheit | to visit besuchen                 |
| never nie                | surely gewiß                      |
| weather das Wetter       | to be afraid of sich fürchten vor |
| last time zuletzt,       | zum letzten Mal.                  |

### 37. Lektion.

#### Adverbien in Superlativform.

|                          |                                    |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------|
| meistens mostly          | gütigst most kindly                |
| bestens best             | nächstens in the next time         |
| freundlichst most kindly | frühestens soonest                 |
| herzlichst most heartily | spätestens latest                  |
| gefälligst please        | baldigst soonest                   |
| höchstens at most        | eiligst hastily                    |
| wenigstens at least      | schleunigst most speedily          |
| mindestens at least      | möglichst bald as soon as possible |
| ergebenst truly, most —  | das nächste Mal the next time.     |

#### Aufgabe 64.

Übersetze die folgenden Sätze ins Englische und zurück ins Deutsche:

Ein Freundschaftsbrief schließt mit Grüßen: Grüße mir Deine Eltern freundlichst, bestens, herzlich. Besten Gruß an meine Cousine, freundliche Grüße an alle, herzliche Grüße an meine Eltern. Meine Schwester läßt Dich bestens (herzlichst) grüßen. Sie schreiben mir gütigst. Hochachtungsvoll (achtungsvoll) Ihr ergebenster N. N. Zobelpelz ist sehr teuer. Eine Garnitur von diesem Pelz, Muff, Boa und Manschetten, kostet mindestens 500 Mark. Ostwind bringt meistens freundlichen Sonnenschein, klaren Himmel und im Sommer heißes, im Winter oft recht kaltes Wetter. Westwind bringt bewölkten Himmel und veränderliches, oft regnerisches Wetter. Dieses Buch ist schön illustriert und kostet höchstens 20 Mark. Dieser Diamant hat einen Wert von mindestens 1000 Mark. Das Theater dauert höchstens drei Stunden und ist spätestens um zehn Uhr aus. Das Konzert dauert mindestens zwei Stunden und ist frühestens um neun Uhr aus. Die Hilfe kommt zu spät, wenn sie nicht schnelligst kommt. Das Mädchen kam eiligst und brachte uns Regenschirme in den Garten. Reichen Sie mir gefälligst die Wasserflasche. Kommen Sie schnelligst oder Sie kommen zu spät. Schreiben Sie mir baldigst, gleich nach Ihrer Ankunft. Schreiben Sie diesen Brief möglichst bald. Das Paket kann frühestens, kann ehestens in drei Tagen hier sein. Wollen Sie mir gütigst einen Regenschirm leihen.

|                              |                                        |
|------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Übersetzen (r.) to translate | die Freundschaft friendship            |
| folgenb following            | der Freundschaftsbrief familiar letter |
| der Satz the sentence        | schließen (irr.) to end                |
| zurück back                  | die Grüße regards                      |

|                                      |                         |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| grüßen (r.) to salute, remember      | der Diamant 1 diamond   |
| achtungsvoll respectfully            | bauern (r.) to last     |
| der Sabel sable                      | der Ostwind east wind   |
| der Pelz 1 fur                       | aus sein to be over     |
| bis to                               | die Hilfe help          |
| wiederholen to repeat                | das Mädchen girl        |
| regnerisch rainy                     | brachte brought         |
| gleich directly                      | kam came                |
| bewölkt cloudy                       | das Paket 1 parcel      |
| schrieben (imperf.) wrote            | klar clear              |
| illustrieren (r.) to illustrate      | der Himmel sky          |
| die Garnitur set                     | recht very              |
| die Manschette cuff                  | veränderlich changeable |
| der Wert value                       | die Ankunft arrival.    |
| Repeat the last 6 lessons carefully. |                         |

### 38. Section.

The present tense in German, the perfect in English.

How long have you been ill, wie lange sind Sie schon krank?  
 I have been ill these three weeks { ich bin schon drei Wochen krank.  
 How long have you lived here, wie lange wohnen Sie schon hier?  
 I have lived here this year { ich wohne schon ein Jahr hier.  
                                           { ich wohne seit einem Jahr hier.

*Observation.* When part of an action that is still going on has passed, in English the perfect is used, in German the present with the adverb schon and an accusative, or seit with the dative.

Mind: Time before place.

### Aufgabe 65.

How long has he been ill? He has been ill this month.  
 How long have you been waiting? This hour, since an hour.  
 How long [is it since] you have been writing? I have been writing these two hours. How long have you had my book?  
 I have had it this fortnight. How long has the patient been sleeping? He has been sleeping these two hours. How long has this servant been in your service? I have had her these six months. How long [is it since] you have been travelling in Germany. I have been travelling in this country these four months. How long have you staid (been) here? I have been staying (living) here these four years. How

long have you been reading (in) this book? I have been reading (in) it these three days. How long have you lived in this house? I have lived here these five years. How long have you had this coat? I have had it these six months (this half year). How long has he been waiting for this letter? He has been waiting for it this week. How long is it since this boy has been learning German? He has been learning it these six months (since half a year). Is it possible! and he speaks it so well. How long is it since you have learned [to] swim? I have learned it this month. How long has your son had his gold watch? He has had it these 8 months. How long is it since this physician has attended your father? He has attended him since my brother's last illness. How long is it since you have been ill? I have been ill and in bed these three days and have not yet seen any (keinen) of my friends.

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| service der Dienst 1      | gold (adj.) golden       |
| a fortnight vierzehn Tage | to attend behandeln (r.) |
| to learn lernen (r.)      | illness die Krankheit    |
| to swim schwimmen (irr.)  |                          |

*Observe.* Words that have been used in any of the preceding lessons are no more repeated, but can be found in the vocabulary.

### 39. Section.

#### Inversion.

Whenever a sentence does *not* begin with the *subject*, but with an adverbial expression, or an object in dative or accusative, the position of the subject is inverted. The subject is then preceded by the auxiliary, or by the verb when it is in the present or imperfect, such as is the case in interrogative sentences.

This inversion very frequently takes place in German, an expression that has a particular stress is thus placed at the head of the sentence.

#### Aufgabe 66.

Übersetze die folgenden Sätze ins Englische und zurück ins Deutsche:

Gestern kam er, heute bleibt er, morgen geht er wieder.  
Welches Buch kaufen Sie? Das eine kaufe ich, das andere nicht.

Wem geben Sie ein Almosen? Dem Krüppel gebe ich ein Almosen, aber nicht dem Faulenzer. Hier ruhe ich eine Viertelftunde, und dann gehen wir weiter. Erst gingen wir durch eine schattenlose Ebene, nach zwei heißen Stunden kamen wir endlich in einen schattigen kühlen Wald. Eine Stunde hatten wir zu steigen, dann erreichten wir den Gipfel des Berges. Oben hatten wir eine prachtvolle Aussicht. Vor uns lag eine reizende Landschaft. Zur Linken war ein weites Thal meilenlang, zur Rechten dehnte sich eine endlose Ebene. Durch Thal und Ebene floss der schöne Rhein. Seine Ufer belebten zahlreiche Dörfer und Städtchen. In der Nähe lag eine ansehnliche Stadt. Weiterhin erhob sich der stolze Dom der Hauptstadt der Provinz über den nicht mehr erkennbaren Häusern derselben. Auch waren einige Burgruinen in der Ferne sichtbar. Hinter uns lagen die waldigen Berge und Thäler des Siebengebirgs. Vor uns zu unsern Füßen umfloss der Rhein zwei hübsche Inseln. Auf einer derselben waren die Gebäude eines ehemaligen Klosters. So ungefähr ist die Aussicht vom Drachensfels im Siebengebirg.

Oft wollte er gehen, immer blieb er wieder, noch ist er nicht fort. Hin geht die Zeit, her kommt der Tod; so ist das menschliche Leben, von kurzer Dauer ist es. Grün ist die Farbe der Hoffnung, blau ist die Farbe der Treue. An den Wochentagen arbeitet man, am Sonntag gehen Christen in ihre Kirche. Wann kommen Sie nach Hause? Um 12 Uhr komme ich nach Hause, um 1 Uhr essen wir. Nach Tisch ruhe ich ein wenig, dann arbeite ich und nachher mache ich einen Spaziergang. Abends nach dem Essen machen wir ein Spielchen, um 10 Uhr gehen wir in der Regel zu Bett. Vor einem halben Jahr war ich zuletzt zu Hause. Gern helfe ich dir, aber du mußt gut acht geben, sonst ist meine Hilfe nutzlos. Nach unsern Gesezen wird ein Mann mit 21 Jahren volljährig. Der Selbstmüchtige sagt: Erst komme ich, dann komme ich noch einmal und drittens kommt mein bester Freund, und der bin ich.

das Almosen alms  
der Krüppel cripple  
der Faulenzer idle fellow  
ruhen (r.) to repose, rest  
die Viertelftunde quarter of an hour  
weiter further on  
gingen went

schattenlos shadeless  
die Ebene plain  
endlich at last  
schattig shady  
steigen (irr.) to ascend  
erreichen (r.) to reach, to come to  
der Gipfel summit

|                                    |                                  |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| prachtvoll splendid                | die Burgruine ruins of a castle  |
| die Aussicht view                  | die Ferne distance               |
| lag (liegen) lay, was              | sichtbar visible                 |
| reizend charming                   | waldig woody                     |
| die Landschaft landscape           | das Siebengebirg seven mountains |
| meilenlang for miles and miles     | blieb (bleiben) remained         |
| zur Rechten to the right hand      | fort gone                        |
| sich dehnen (r.) to extend         | der Tod death                    |
| endlos endless                     | menshlich human                  |
| floß (fließen) flowed              | die Dauer duration               |
| das Ufer the bank                  | grün green                       |
| beleben (r.) to animate            | die Farbe colour                 |
| sonst or else                      | blau blue                        |
| nutzlos useless                    | die Treue faith                  |
| das Gesetz 1 the law               | der Wochentag week day           |
| das Kloster monastery, nunnery     | nach Tisch after dinner          |
| das Gebäude the building           | die Regel the rule               |
| ehemalig former                    | gern willingly                   |
| ansehnlich considerable            | acht geben to pay attention      |
| weiterhin further on               | volljährig of age                |
| erhob sich rose                    | selbstsüchtig selfish            |
| der Dom cathedral                  | noch einmal once more            |
| die Hauptstadt capital             | die Insel the island             |
| erkennbar distinguishable, visible | ungefähr about.                  |

#### 40. Section.

##### The ordinal numerals.

They are derived from the cardinal numbers by adding: *t* from 1 to 19, and: *st* up from twenty. They are declined like adjectives: *der, die, das erste, der zweite, der dritte, der vierte, der fünfte, der neunzehnte, der zwanzigste, der einundzwanzigste, der 30<sup>te</sup>, der 100<sup>te</sup>, der tausendste.*

The date is expressed by the accusative (35. Section).

**Ex.** London den 15<sup>ten</sup> Mai, den 20<sup>ten</sup> Juni 1880.

**Observe.** What day of the months is it? *den wie vielsten haben wir heute?*

**Rule 1.** The adverbs firstly, secondly etc. are formed in German by adding: *ens*.

**Ex.** *Erstens, zweitens, drittens.*

**Rule 2.** The denominators of fractions are formed by adding: *el*.

**Ex.** ( $\frac{2}{3}$ ) *zwei Drittel*, ( $\frac{3}{4}$ ) *drei Viertel*, ( $\frac{5}{12}$ ) *fünf Zwölftel*, *sieben Zwanzigstel*, *acht Einundzwanzigstel* ( $\frac{8}{21}$ ) *ıc.*

**Aufgabe 67.**

The great migration of the nations was in the 4<sup>th</sup>, 5<sup>th</sup>, and 6<sup>th</sup> century. It began in 375, and ended in 568. The crusades began at the (zu) end of the 11<sup>th</sup> century, in 1096, and ended in the 13<sup>th</sup>; the last position of the christians in Palestine was given up in 1291. America was discovered towards the end of the 15<sup>th</sup> century. Columbus reached the first American island on the 12<sup>th</sup> [of] October [in] 1492. Frederic II., king of Prussia, lived in the 18<sup>th</sup> century, he died on the 17<sup>th</sup> of August 1786 in his 75<sup>th</sup> year. Louis XVI. was executed on the 21<sup>st</sup> of January 1793 by (burd) the Jacobins. Few men come to (bis zu) their 80<sup>th</sup> year. Many die in their first youth. The 2<sup>d</sup> volume of this novel is not so interesting as the first. Which volume of Macaulay's history of England do you read, the 7<sup>th</sup> or 8<sup>th</sup>? Neither the 7<sup>th</sup> nor the 8<sup>th</sup>, the 3<sup>d</sup>. What day of the month is it, have we the 12<sup>th</sup> or 13<sup>th</sup> to day? To day is the 12<sup>th</sup>, yesterday was the 11<sup>th</sup>, to morrow is the 13<sup>th</sup>, to day week is the 19<sup>th</sup>, in a fortnight is the 26<sup>th</sup>, a fortnight ago was the 29<sup>th</sup> [of] October, a week ago the 5<sup>th</sup> of November. Remember, remember the 5<sup>th</sup> of November. Spring begins on the 21<sup>st</sup> [of] March, Summer on the 21<sup>st</sup> of June, Autumn on the 21<sup>st</sup> of Septbr., Winter on the 21<sup>st</sup> of December. The 31<sup>st</sup> of December is the last day of the year. The 30 years war was in the 17<sup>th</sup> century, it lasted from 1618 to 1648. Napoleon I. died on the 5<sup>th</sup> of May 1821 on the island of St. Helena.

migration die Wanderung  
 nation die Nation  
 m. of nations die Völkerverwanderung  
 century das Jahrhundert 1  
 began fing an (anfangen) irr.  
 in — im Jahre —  
 crusade der Kreuzzug 1  
 position die Stellung, Befizung  
 Palestine Palästina  
 was given up wurde aufgegeben  
 to discover entdecken (r.)  
 executed hingerichtet  
 Jacobins die Jakobiner  
 died starb

youth die Jugend  
 volume der Band 1  
 novel der Roman 1  
 history die Geschichte  
 neither — nor weder — noch  
 yesterday gestern  
 to day week heute in 8 Tagen  
 a week ago heute vor 8 Tagen  
 remember gedenket (imp.) gen.  
 summer der Sommer  
 30 years war der 30jährige Krieg 1  
 island die Insel  
 begins fängt an  
 come bringen es.

### Aufgabe 68.

Arithmetic lesson in German fractions; reduction, addition, subtraction, multiplication, division in easy fractions:  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{3}{4}$ ,  $\frac{4}{5}$ ,  $\frac{9}{10}$ ,  $\frac{2}{5}$  of a pound how many shillings?  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{2}{3}$ ,  $\frac{3}{4}$ ,  $\frac{5}{6}$  of a year how many months?  $\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{2}{3}$ ,  $\frac{3}{4}$ ,  $\frac{5}{6}$ ,  $\frac{11}{12}$ ,  $\frac{1}{6}$ ,  $\frac{7}{8}$ ,  $\frac{3}{8}$  how many 24<sup>th</sup>, 12<sup>th</sup>?  $\frac{32}{36}$  how many 9<sup>th</sup>, 18<sup>th</sup>?  $\frac{24}{36}$  how many 18<sup>th</sup>, 12<sup>th</sup>, 9<sup>th</sup>, 6<sup>th</sup>, 3<sup>d</sup>?  $\frac{2}{3} + \frac{5}{6}$ ,  $\frac{3}{4} + \frac{5}{6}$ ,  $\frac{3}{5} + \frac{1}{4}$ ,  $\frac{7}{8} + \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\frac{2}{3} + \frac{3}{8}$ ,  $\frac{2}{3} + \frac{11}{12} = ?$   
The same fractions in subtraction and multiplication.

|                      |                                     |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| whole ganz           | addition die Addition               |
| a whole ein Ganzes   | subtraction die Subtraktion         |
| fraction der Bruch 1 | Arithmetic lesson die Rechenstunde. |

### 41. Section.

Coordinate conjunctions that require an inversion of the subject (Lesson 39).

doch, dennoch, gleichwohl yet, however; neither — nor weder — noch;  
beffenungeachtet notwithstanding, never the less; nor auch nicht;  
außerdem besides; darum, deshalb, deswegen therefore; also, too auch.

Observe. Put the words with number 1 before them at the head of the sentence.

### Aufgabe 69.

Yesterday I was ill, to day I am well again. I will call you <sup>1</sup>willingly, yet you must (also) get up. Has the patient slept well? He (has) slept very little <sup>1</sup>in the night, yet he seems to sleep now. Life is <sup>1</sup>in England more expensive than in Germany. The distress was <sup>1</sup>great, help was little. Neither can he read nor write. At 11 o'clock we must go the railway. A little before sunrise temperature is lowest. In winter the days are short, in summer they are long. In June the days are longest, in December we have the shortest days. It is time to go <sup>1</sup>now. I will <sup>1</sup>rather stay behind, than overhurry myself. I will <sup>1</sup>rather not go out, than catch a cold. Make haste, else we shall (werden) be too late. He is lazy, besides he is slow. She is no more <sup>1</sup>young, nor is she pretty. He is poor, also he is old. She is rich, she is amiable <sup>1</sup>too. A teacher likes a <sup>1</sup>diligent pupil, a lazy [one] he does not like. Young and



strong as he is, yet he must die. It is <sup>1</sup>cold, it is very windy <sup>1</sup>too. I will <sup>1</sup>write, but I do not yet know when. He knows <sup>1</sup>my brother, but he does not know <sup>1</sup>me. I have seen <sup>1</sup>his father, but I do not know his mother. We (man) must support <sup>1</sup>old indigent people, but not such young fellows. I like <sup>1</sup>the sister, but not the brother. The trees lose their leaves in <sup>1</sup>October and <sup>1</sup>November. I will rest a little <sup>1</sup>here, I am too tired. The boy is <sup>1</sup>tall, yet he is not strong. Nowhere he was to be found (active voice). All see <sup>1</sup>the sun, yet he sees nobody. The lady is no more young, but never the less she is pretty. The way is long (weit), but never the less it is not fatiguing. It is cold, therefore you must make a fire in the stove. You will eat, therefore you must work. The boy is diligent, therefore he knows much. The boy is lazy, therefore he knows little. My hands are dirty, therefore I will wash them. It is late, we must therefore go home.

|                                                           |                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| to call rufen (r.)                                        | indigent dürftig     |
| to get up aufstehen (irr.)                                | fellow (der Mensch 4 |
| to seem scheinen (irr.)                                   | (der Burleske        |
| temperature die Temperatur                                | to lose verlieren    |
| rather lieber                                             | leaf das Blatt 2     |
| to stay behind zurückbleiben                              | tired müde           |
| to overhurry sich übereilen (r.)                          | tall groß            |
| to catch a cold sich erkälten (r.)                        | nowhere nirgends     |
| to make haste sich eilen (r.)                             | lady die Dame        |
| slow langsam                                              | still noch           |
| windy windig                                              | fatiguing ermüdend   |
| I know ich weiß                                           | dirty schmutzig      |
| such a ein solcher, eine solche, ein solches, pl. solche. |                      |

#### 42. Section.

##### Impersonal verbs.

|                          |                                           |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| to rain regnen (r.)      | it is windy es ist windig                 |
| to snow schneien (r.)    | it is rainy es ist regnerisch             |
| to lighten blitzen (r.)  | it is dry es ist trocken                  |
| to freeze frieren (irr.) | it is foggy es ist nebelig                |
| frozen gefroren          | it is stormy es ist stürmisch             |
| to thunder donnern (r.)  | it is sultry es ist schwül                |
| to hail hageln (r.)      | it is hot es ist heiß                     |
| to thaw tauen (r.)       | it is wet es ist naß                      |
| the cold die Kälte       | a heavy thunderstorm ein starkes Gewitter |
| the frost der Frost      | the flash of lightning der Blitzstrahl.   |
| the heat die Hitze       |                                           |

**Aufgabe 70.**

Der Regen, der Schnee, der Blitz, der Donner, der Hagel, der Wind, der Sturm, der Tau. Es regnet stark, es taut, es friert, es schneit, es donnert, es blizt heftig. Die Sonne scheint heiß. Heller Sonnenschein, heller Mondschein. Vollmond, Neumond, erstes Viertel, letztes Viertel.

It rains, it snows, it lightens, it thunders, it hails, it freezes, it thaws. It has rained, it has snowed, it has lightened, it has thundered, it has hailed, it has frozen, it has thawed. It will (wird) rain, it will snow, it will lighten, it will soon thunder, it will hail, it will freeze, it will thaw to morrow. Let us walk home quick, it will soon rain. Do you not see, how it rains? See, how it rains! See, how it lightens! Did you hear it thunder? Did you see it lightening? Did you see that flash of lightening? What a heavy thunderstorm that is! It lightens and thunders continually. Do you think, it will soon rain? Do you think, it will snow? We have not yet had any snow this year. This is the first snow of (in) this winter. I hope this will be the last frost, the last snow for this winter. We have not had any rain for [a] long time. We have had much rain this winter. (The) November is a foggy month. January is generally the coldest month in this country. There is sometimes [a] severe frost still in February. March is the first month of spring. April and May are the months of blossoms. July and August are the hottest months in the year. Christmas is on the 25<sup>th</sup> of December. Do you think, it will soon be full moon? The night will not be quite dark, it is moonlight. The moon shines the whole night, we have full moon. You do not see the moon, it is new moon. At new moon the moon is (steht) between earth and sun. At full moon the sun is (steht) between earth and moon. The first quarter of the moon is between new moon and full moon, the last quarter between full moon and new moon.

heavy heftig, stark  
continually beständig  
to think denken (irr.)  
to hope hoffen (r.)  
severe streng, stark

month of spring Frühlingsmonat  
blossom die Blüte  
month of blossoms Blütenmonat  
to rain fast stark regnen  
to melt schmelzen (irr.)

to skate Schlittschuh laufen  
the skate der Schlittschuh 1  
the bath das Bad 2

hard stark, heftig  
piercing schneidend, scharf  
ice das Eis.

### Aufgabe 71.

We can not go out, it will soon rain fast. One [flash of] lightning after (auf) the other. Snow on all roofs, snow in the street, snow on the hills and on the fields, snow every where, and to day is the first of March. A snowball. The snow is not good for making snowballs, it is frozen. Boys like to throw (mit) snowballs. The snow melts. It thaws. It will soon thaw. What do you think, (bei) 5 degrees [of] cold. How many degrees of cold had we last winter? Do you like skating? We had (find) much skating this winter. I am afraid, we can not skate this winter, we shall (werden) have no good ice, it is not cold enough. When will skating begin? The ice is not yet strong enough, it does not yet bear. I like bathing in (bei) hot weather. A bath in the river is much more pleasant, than a warm bath in the house. How many degrees of heat (warmth), do you think, we have had to day? It rains heavily, therefore I will stay at home to day. Why will you not go out? I will stay at home, because it thunders and lightens; it will soon begin to rain. Did you see that flash of lightning? It rains a little, and it will not rain heavily; therefore I will not stay at home. It thunders and lightens hard, never the less I must go. The air is so sultry, I think, we shall have (bekommen) a storm. The wind is cold and piercing, [you had] better stay at home, you can not go on the ice. You can not go skating. How can you take a walk now, it will (wird) soon rain. The air is cold and piercing, you have a (den) cough, stay at home. It did not freeze last night, it will soon thaw. The air is quite mild and warm now.

degree der Grad  
to bear tragen  
because weil  
every where überall

cough der Husten  
to begin anfangen  
all night die ganze Nacht  
mild mild.

Weil is a subordinate conjunction, which removes the verb to the end.

### 43. Section.

Absolute possessive pronouns.

| mine                   | thine                  | his                    |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| der, die, das meinige; | der, die, das deinige; | der, die, das seinige; |
| ours                   | yours                  | theirs (hers, yours)   |
| der, die, das unsrige; | der, die, das euerige; | der die, das ihrige.   |

They are declined like the adjective preceded by the definite article.

Decline them in singular and plural!

### Aufgabe 72.

My knife was sharp, but yours was better yet and his was the best. In your library are more books, than in ours. Which dress was more expensive, hers or that (das) of her mother? Which watch goes better, mine or yours? Which garden is larger, yours or ours? To which garden shall we go, to yours or to ours? My stick is finer than yours. I like mine better than yours. I have no money in my purse, how much have you in yours? What have you done with your boots? look at mine, mine are quite clean, yours are quite dirty. What o'clock is it by (nach) your watch, by mine it is only 5 o'clock. Every one's duty is to provide for his own; his own means his own family. I have eaten my apples, what has she done with hers? She has put hers in her bag, she will give some of (von) hers to a friend. What have you done with your books? mine are here, but where are yours? two of mine are heavy, but all [of] yours are light. How many rooms are in your house? in ours are ten. There are seven in ours, but your rooms are smaller than ours. My bonnet is older than hers, but mine is quite as good as hers; there are nice flowers on hers and on mine. Her watch goes as well as mine, in mine are eight stones, in hers four. I had no fruit in my garden this year, had he any in his?

library die Bibliothek  
money das Geld 2  
purse der Geldbeutel 3  
look at sehen (irr.), betrachten (r.)  
every one jebermann  
duty die Pflicht  
to provide for sorgen für

his own die Seinigen  
to mean meinen (r.)  
own eigen  
family die Familie  
to put thun  
bag die Tasche  
bonnet der Hut 1.

#### 44. Section.

The imperfect of the auxiliaries of time and mood.

| I had                           | I was    | I became                        | I could | I would |
|---------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------|---------|---------|
| ich hätte                       | ich war  | warde                           | konnte  | wollte  |
| du — est                        | du — st  | — est                           | — est   | — est   |
| er — e                          | er —     | — e                             | — e     | — e     |
| wir — en                        | wir — en | — en                            | — en    | — en    |
| ihr — et                        | ihr — et | — et                            | — et    | — et    |
| sie — en                        | sie — en | — en                            | — en    | — en    |
| I was allowed ich durfte        |          | I should ich sollte             |         |         |
| I did not like ich mochte nicht |          | I must (was obliged) ich mußte. |         |         |

*Observ. 1.* The 3<sup>d</sup> person singular of the imperfect is *always* like the first.

*Observ. 2.* The German imperfect is used when one past action refers to another, expressed or understood. It is chiefly the historical tense, whilst the perfect is more used as past tense in conversation.

#### Aufgabe 73.

I was thirsty, and would drink a glass of beer, but had no money about me and must quench my thirst with water. I would write my exercise, but I could not, it was too difficult, and I had not properly paid attention in the lesson. The boy would cut a stick, but had no sharp knife, his was too blunt. My father had sold his horse and would buy another, but could not find a good one. The boy would learn [to] swim, but had not the courage to jump into the water, and yet he was bound to a pole and could not sink. We were too tired after our long walk and were obliged to lay down on the grass to rest a little. The boys were not allowed to bathe, they had run too much and were too hot to jump into the water directly. She sings very well, but she did not like to sing before so many strange people. He should do it and could do it, but would not, did not like it. What weather had we yesterday? It was very stormy and rainy and we had no sunshine at all. Had you much skating in England last year? Last year the canals and ponds were frozen over and we had a good deal of skating. How many degrees [of] cold had you? On some cold days we had some degrees [of] Fahrenheit below

zero, that is 15 or 16 degrees of Réaumur below zero. The poor patient had a bad fever and was obliged to keep his (bad) bed for a fortnight, he must still keep his chamber (room).

|                                 |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| about me bei mir                | to lay down sich niederlegen s. (r.) |
| to quench löschen               | grass das Gras 2                     |
| thirst der Durst                | not at all gar nicht                 |
| properly gehörig                | no — at all gar kein                 |
| to pay attention acht geben     | canal der Kanal 1                    |
| lesson die Stunde               | pond der Teich 1                     |
| blunt stumpf                    | frozen over zugefroren s. (irr.)     |
| to swim schwimmen (irr.)        | a good deal viel                     |
| bound gebunden                  | a bad fever ein schlimmes Fieber     |
| pole die Stange                 | zero Null                            |
| to sink sinken (irr.)           | degree der Grad 1                    |
| to sing singen (irr.)           | strange fremd                        |
| to keep his bed das Bett hüten. |                                      |

#### 45. Section.

The absolute possessive pronouns used without an article.

|               |               |               |                             |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| instead of:}  | der meinige,  | die meinige,  | das meinige,                |
| may be used:} | meiner,       | meine,        | meins,                      |
| instead of:}  | dem meinigen, | der meinigen, | den meinigen, die meinigen, |
| use:}         | meinem,       | meiner,       | meinem, meine,              |
| instead of:}  | der Ihrige,   | das Ihrige,   | das unfrige,                |
| use:}         | Ihrer,        | Ihres,        | unseres &c.                 |

*Observ. 1.* These pronouns, when used without an article, have the terminations of the definite article.

*Observ. 2.* One (without a noun) einer, e, eins, none keiner, e, keins, neither keiner, e, & von beiden are declined in the same way.

#### Aufgabe 74.

The sentences of exercise 69 are to be translated, the absolute possessive pronouns without an article.

One of you has done it, none pretends (will) have done it. I have given my knife to one of them, but I do not remember to which (whom). One of you shall (wird) betray me in this night. One [thing] is needful. All have seen it, none will have seen it. Which of the two books will you buy? I will buy neither. Neither of the boys speaks the

truth. In which of these two houses do you live? I live in neither, I live further down. I will go with none of them. One of these letters is for you. Is one of the letters for me? There is none for you.

to betray verraten (irr.) further down weiter hinunter  
 needful not truth die Wahrheit  
 neither (masc.) keiner von beiden.

#### 46. Section.

The imperfect of regular verbs.

**Rule.** The imperfect of regular verbs is formed by adding: *t* to the root, or *et*, when the root ends in *b* or *t*.

The personal terminations are as in the present tense, except the 3<sup>d</sup> person singular, which is like the 1<sup>st</sup>.

| Ex.         | scheiden         | warten               | lernen             |
|-------------|------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| ich         | schied- <i>e</i> | ich wartet- <i>e</i> | ich lern- <i>e</i> |
| du          | — <i>est</i>     | du — <i>est</i>      | du — <i>est</i>    |
| er          | — <i>e</i>       | er — <i>e</i>        | er — <i>e</i>      |
| wir         | — <i>en</i>      | wir — <i>en</i>      | wir — <i>en</i>    |
| ihr         | — <i>et</i>      | ihr — <i>et</i>      | ihr — <i>et</i>    |
| sie         | — <i>en</i>      | sie — <i>en</i>      | sie — <i>en</i> .  |
| Infinitive. | Imperfect.       | Past participle.     |                    |
| legen       | legte            | gelegt               |                    |
| holen       | holte            | geholt               |                    |
| betrachten  | betrachtete      | betrachtet &c.       |                    |

Write down in this way the imperfect and past participle of: *laufen*, *machen*, *sagen*, *folgen*, *verkaufen*, *erinnern*, *sehen*, *stellen*, *legen*, *wünschen*, *erlauben*, *töten*, *arbeiten*, *kosten*, *sich freuen*.

Remember: Lesson 12, Rule 2.

#### Aufgabe 75.

The children did not work all the afternoon, but played, they had a half holiday. I learned what my brother learned. I did (made) the same exercises, that he did. The soldiers fought bravely and killed many enemies, they served (dat.) faithfully their king and country. We lived in a fine house and lived together with friends and enjoyed our lives (gen. sing.). They loved their new friends and did not neglect the old [ones]. The little boy fetched his new picture-book and showed it me. It thundered, it lightened, it rained hard and hailed a little. The girl obeyed her mother, sat [down]

to the table and worked diligently. What did she work? She did her tasks for school, afterwards she sewed and knitted and played with her little sister. I heard him come, but I did not hear him go. I asked him, but he did not answer me, nor did he obey me. We sold the old books and bought new ones; but the new books cost more than we expected, yet we wanted them and must buy them. The nurse sat up by the sick the whole night, she dared not (to) sleep. The bookseller sent me the books, which I wanted. It rained and we stood under a tree, until it <sup>2</sup>left <sup>1</sup>off raining. He wished me good morning and sat down to his work. The poor man was too old to work, he sold of his things, what he could spare, to buy bread. What did you do at school to day? Our teacher questioned us and we answered, as well [as] we could. The children loved their parents and obeyed them (dat.), and gave (made) them no vexation.

not — but nicht — sondern  
to serve dienen (dat.) r.  
faithfully treu  
together zusammen  
to enjoy sich freuen (r.)  
the task die Aufgabe, Arbeit  
to sew nähen (r.)  
to knit stricken (r.)  
to question fragen

nurse Krankenwärterin  
to sit up with wachen bei (r.)  
to dare wagen (r.)  
to stand sich stellen (r.)  
to leave off aufhören (r.)  
things die Sachen  
to spare entbehren  
vexation der Verdruß  
until bis (subord. conj.).

Repeat carefully the last nine lessons.

#### 47. Section.

The imperfect of irregular verbs I.

| Infinitive.             | Imperfect. | Past participle. |
|-------------------------|------------|------------------|
| to come kommen          | kam        | gekommen (sein)  |
| to grow wachsen         | wuchs      | gewachsen (sein) |
| to wash waschen         | wusch      | gewaschen        |
| to carry tragen         | trug       | getragen         |
| to drive fahren         | fuhr       | gefahren (sein)  |
| to beat schlagen        | schlug     | geschlagen       |
| to sleep schlafen       | schlief    | geschlafen       |
| to let, to leave lassen | ließ       | gelassen         |
| to fall fallen          | fiel       | gefallen (sein)  |
| to run laufen           | lief       | gelaufen (sein)  |
| to hang hängen          | hing       | gehungen         |



| Infinitive.     | Imperfect. | Past participle. |
|-----------------|------------|------------------|
| to hold halten  | hielt      | gehalten         |
| to catch fangen | fieng      | gefangen         |
| to advise raten | riet       | geraten          |
| to sit sitzen   | saß        | gesessen         |
| to give geben   | gab        | gegeben          |
| to eat essen    | aß         | gegessen         |
| to see sehen    | sah        | gesehen          |
| to read lesen   | las        | gelesen.         |

*Observe.*— Those verbs with the vowel *a* in the root modify *a* in the 2<sup>d</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> person sing. of the present tense: *du schläfst, er schläft; du läufst, er läuft; du hältst, er hält; du rätst, er rät.* Those of the verbs above with *e* in the root change it into *i* (*ie*) in the 2<sup>d</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> person sing. of the present and in the familiar imperative: *du giebst, er giebt, gib; du issest, er ißt, iß; du siehst, er sieht, sieh; du liegest, er ließt, ließ; raten, ich rate, du rätst, er rät; halten, ich halte, du hältst, er hält.*

#### Aufgabe 76.

My friend came to me last night before supper, we sat and ate together and played at chess till ten o'clock. Another night we read Schiller's Tell. The boy ran down the hill and fell and washed his dirty hands in a brook. I gave the beggar some money and saw him going to a baker to buy [some] bread, for he was very hungry, he had not eaten anything yet that day. I slept very well after my long walk. We sat at the window and looked at the people in the street. The picture hung over the sofa and fell down without breaking (*inf.*). I left my umbrella at my friend's. I lately saw the king, he was in a carriage and passed us. The man held a letter in his hand, he carried it to the post-office. Why did you beat the dog? It barked and would bite me. The cat caught a mouse and played with it (*banit*) for a while, the mouse ran away, the cat ran <sup>2</sup>after <sup>1</sup>it and killed it at last. The vegetables grew much after a warm rain. Why did you not come to dinner? we waited for you. I could not come, I ate at home, I hope you will excuse me. Caesar, after the battle of Zela, informed the senate of his victory by (*mit*) the words: I came, I saw, I conquered. The book pleased me much (*sehr*), I will read it a second time. The letters are signed,

they may go to the post-office. Ephialtes betrayed the Greeks to the Persians at Thermopylae. The dog did not obey his master, therefore he beat the dog. He did not betray me, but advised me well.

|                              |                    |                 |                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|----------------------|
| to play at chess             | Schach spielen     | away            | weg                  |
| down the hill                | den Hügel hinunter | to wait for     | warten auf           |
| beggar                       | der Bettler        | to excuse       | entschuldigen (r.)   |
| baker                        | der Bäcker         | for             | denn                 |
| hungry                       | hungrig            | battle of       | die Schlacht bei     |
| to look at                   | sehen nach         | to inform       | benachrichtigen (r.) |
| to break                     | zerbrechen (irr.)  | senate          | der Senat            |
| much (connected with a verb) | sehr               | victory         | der Sieg             |
| to pass                      | vorbeifahren an    | to conquer      | siegen (r.)          |
| to bark                      | bellern (r.)       | to sign         | unterschreiben       |
| to bite                      | beißen (irr.)      | to betray       | verraten             |
| for a while                  | eine Zeit lang     | to the Persians | an die Perser.       |

#### 48. Section.

##### Irregular verbs II.

| Infinitive.        | Imperfect. | Past participle.   |
|--------------------|------------|--------------------|
| to write           | schrieb    | geschrieben        |
| to separate        | schied     | geschieden         |
| to resemble        | glich      | geglichen          |
| to lend            | lieh       | geliehen           |
| to cut             | schnitt    | geschnitten        |
| to ride            | ritt       | geritten (sein)    |
| to bite            | biß        | gebissen           |
| to ascend          | flog       | gestiegen (sein)   |
| to remain          | blieb      | geblieben (sein)   |
| to do              | that       | gethan             |
| to bring           | brachte    | gebracht           |
| to know (a matter) | wußte      | gewußt             |
| to know (a person) | kannte     | gekannt            |
| to burn            | brannte    | gebrannt           |
| to name            | nannte     | genannt            |
| to send            | sandte     | gesandt            |
| to think           | dachte     | gedacht            |
| to stand           | stand      | gestanden          |
| to draw            | zog        | gezogen            |
| to fly             | flog       | geflogen (sein)    |
| to flee            | floh       | geflohen (sein)    |
| to freeze          | fror       | gefroren           |
| to lose            | verlor     | verloren           |
| to melt            | schmolz    | geschmolzen (sein) |
| to lie (falshood)  | log        | gelogen            |
| to fight           | focht      | gefochten          |
| to finish          | schloß     | geschlossen.       |

*Observ. 1.* I know ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wissen.

*Observ. 2.* To be burning brennen, to destroy or injure by burning verbrennen.

### Aufgabe 77.

The young man wrote every week to his parents, and received an answer every week, he frequently wrote to his friends, and the postman brought letters for him nearly every day. What did you do after your lessons? After my lessons I generally did my work and then I took a little walk before dinner, once a week I went to the parade to hear the military band play, between half past eleven and half past twelve. What did you do, when you <sup>2</sup>got <sup>1</sup>up? I dressed and washed myself, and then I breakfasted. At what o'clock did you get up? In winter I got up at 7 or a quarter past 7, in summer at 6 or half past 6. When did you breakfast? We breakfasted in winter at eight, in summer at half past 7. Sometimes I took a cold bath before breakfast, but I generally bathed in the afternoon. How long did you stay in the bath? In (bei) very hot weather I remained in the water [for] more than a quarter of an hour. Did not many English young Gentlemen live in your town? I only knew some young Germans, whom I often saw, they lent me sometimes good German books, which I <sup>2</sup>read <sup>1</sup>by myself (für mich). When it froze and the river was frozen over, <sup>2</sup>we <sup>1</sup>skated. Did you burn your letters or did you keep them? I did not burn them, I kept them.

|                                                                                 |                                |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| to receive erhalten, bekommen (irr.)                                            | I took ich nahm                |
| postman der Briefträger                                                         | gentleman der Herr 4           |
| nearly beinahe                                                                  | when wenn, als, wann           |
| I went ich ging                                                                 | frozen over zugefroren         |
| to dress anziehen (r.)                                                          | military band die Militärmusik |
| I dressed ich kleidete mich an                                                  | to get up aufstehen.           |
| <b>Wenn</b> is interrogative pronoun, <b>als</b> (conj.) refers to a past fact, |                                |
| <b>wenn</b> (conj.) to a present or future action.                              |                                |

### Aufgabe 78.

The cage was open and the bird flew away. My sister resembled me <sup>2</sup>by (nach) <sup>1</sup>face, but not by figure. We resembled each other (uns) in every other respect. I took a

walk with my friend yesterday, he once stayed behind and I lost sight of him (ihn aus). You say, little children can not discern bad from good, truth from untruth. That (das) may be often the case, but I say: that little girl discerned very well truth from untruth, for she blushed, when she <sup>2</sup>said a <sup>1</sup>falsehood. We stood by the window and looked down in the street; he talked much, which (was) I did not understand. Did you not understand, what he <sup>2</sup>read to <sup>1</sup>you? You have cut yourself severely. I would cut a piece of bread and cut my (mich in die) hand so severely, that I was obliged to go to a surgeon to have it bound up. Two lamps burnt in the room, but it was not light there, a bright fire burnt in the chimney, but it was not warm in the room. What have you done with the letter? I hope, you have not burnt it. The child came too near the hot stove and burnt his hand severely. He mounted his horse and rode off. He was not sincere, he thought otherwise, than he spoke. He rose [got up] to speak, but kept silent. The snow had (war) melted in the valley, but still covered the heights. He often intended to go, but always remained, where he was. He finished his letter with the usual kind regards. He finished his patriotic speech with good wishes for his country.

cage der Käfig 1  
open offen  
face das Gesicht  
figure die Gestalt  
respect die Hinficht  
sight das Gesicht 2  
to discern unterscheiden  
case der Fall 1  
to blush erröthen (r.)  
when als  
falsehood die Unwahrheit  
to talk sprechen (irr.)  
to understand verstehen (irr.)  
to read to one einem vorlesen  
severely arg  
surgeon der Chirurg 4

to have it bound up sie verbinden  
zu lassen  
light hell  
chimney das Ramin 1  
silent schweigend  
to mount besteigen (irr.)  
to ride off wegreiten (irr.)  
sincere aufrichtig  
otherwise anders  
to keep sich verhalten (irr.)  
to cover bedecken (r.)  
to intend gedenken (irr.)  
to finish schließen (irr.)  
usual gewöhnlich  
patriotic patriotisch  
speech die Rede.

# 49. Section.

## Irregular verbs III.

| Infinitive.                                                      | Imperfect. | Past participle.   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|--------------------|
| to drink trinken                                                 | trank      | getrunken          |
| to find finden                                                   | fand       | gefunden           |
| to bind binden                                                   | band       | gebunden           |
| to speak sprechen                                                | sprach     | gesprochen         |
| to break brechen                                                 | brach      | gebrochen          |
| — — into pieces zerbrechen                                       | zerbrach   | zerbrochen         |
| to throw werfen                                                  | warf       | geworfen           |
| to steal stehlen                                                 | stahl      | gestohlen          |
| to take nehmen                                                   | nahm       | genommen           |
| to die sterben                                                   | starb      | gestorben (sein)   |
| to sing singen                                                   | sang       | gesungen           |
| to sink sinken                                                   | sank       | gesunken (sein)    |
| to swim schwimmen                                                | schwamm    | geschwommen (sein) |
| to lie liegen                                                    | lag        | gelegen            |
| to sit sitzen                                                    | saß        | gesessen           |
| to go gehen                                                      | ging       | gegangen (sein)    |
| to become werden                                                 | wurde      | geworden (sein).   |
| I steal ich stehle, du stiehst, er stiehlt; stiehl (imperative). |            |                    |
| I speak ich spreche, du sprichst, er spricht; sprich.            |            |                    |
| I break { ich breche, du brichst, er bricht; brich.              |            |                    |
| { ich zerbreche, du zerbrichst, er zerbricht; zerbrich.          |            |                    |
| I throw ich werfe, du wirfst, er wirft; wirf.                    |            |                    |
| I take ich nehme, du nimmst, er nimmt; nimm.                     |            |                    |
| I become ich werde, du wirst, er wird; werde.                    |            |                    |
| I die ich sterbe, du stirbst, er stirbt; stirb.                  |            |                    |

## Aufgabe 79.

We sat together, we talked together, we read together and found the time not long, it passed quickly. He lay on the sofa and slept, for he was too tired to talk or to play. I awaked him at last, he drank a glass of wine and ate a piece of bread and felt quite refreshed. Whilst our friend slept, <sup>2</sup>they (man) <sup>1</sup>stole his watch and purse. The robbers completely plundered the poor fellow, they took every thing [from] him and bound him fast to (an) a tree. The boy would break [off some] fruit, but fell from the tree and broke his arm. How did he fall down? A bough broke, he did not hold himself with his hands and so of course he fell down. The servant brought the lamp, but she knocked it against the door and it broke. She must be very awkward or careless, yesterday she broke a bottle

and glass. She breaks every thing, glasses and cups, plates and dishes and teapots. Two chairs are broken, send them to the joiner. What have you done with your pretty stick? I lent it to a friend of mine (mir) and he broke it. I can not lend you my umbrella, it is broken. She liked singing better than playing, and sang very well indeed. The ship sank and all were drowned in the sea. Byron was a good swimmer, he once swam over the Hellespont.

to awake wecken  
to feel sich fühlen  
refreshed erfrischt  
robber der Räuber  
to plunder plündern  
completely vollständig  
fellow der Mensch 4, Burſche  
fast feſt  
the bough der Ast 1  
of course natürlich  
to pass vergehen

to knock ſtoßen (ie, o)  
awkward ungeſchickt  
careless nachläſſig  
plate der Teller  
dish die Schüſſel  
teapot der Theetopf 1  
joiner der Schreiner  
to be drowned ertrinken  
swimmer der Schwimmer  
sea das Meer 1  
during (prepos.) während (gen.).

#### Aufgabe 80.

Napoleon I. died on St. Helena in exile. When did he die there? He died there in 1821 on the 5<sup>th</sup> of May. At Waterloo, June 18<sup>th</sup> 1815, he lost battle and throne, and surrendered afterwards to (an) the English. They took [brought] him to (auf) this island, and he remained there, well guarded, till he died. Do you know, of (an) what disease he died? They (man) say, he died of a stomach-cancer. Why did they take him to this remote island? The year before the battle of Waterloo, they had dethroned him for the first time and had given him the island of Elba, on the coast of Italy, as [his] property, but he escaped from there, came back to France; and his old soldiers did not fight against him, but received him with shouts. So he returned to Paris and became emperor of France again, but he was a too dangerous and ambitious man to leave him on the throne of France. We saw an old man, when (als) we went out, he was so fragile, his hair was white, he supported himself on his stick and could only walk with difficulty. We knew him before as a strong and vigorous man, and now he had become so fragile. His

years had increased, his strength had decreased. The boy threw a snow-ball at me (~~mit~~ mit), but I gave it him back amply. You promised me to come, why did you not keep your promise? He was poor and became a very rich man afterwards. He fell seriously ill, but recovered after some time. The son of Napoleon III. did not become emperor of France after his father's death. What became of (aus) Napoleon's I. son? He died as a (als) youth. Herder would be (become) a physician, but afterwards he became a clergyman and was one of our best poets.

|                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| exile die Verbannung             | to return zurückkehren (r.),       |
| throne der Thron 1               | —kommen (irr.)                     |
| to surrender sich ergeben (irr.) | dangerous gefährlich               |
| afterwards nachher, später       | ambitious ehrgeizig                |
| to guard bewachen (r.)           | fragile gebrechlich                |
| disease die Krankheit            | to support one's self sich stützen |
| stomach-cancer der Magenkrebs    | difficulty die Schwierigkeit       |
| remote entfernt                  | vigorous kräftig                   |
| dethrone entthronen (r.)         | increased zugenommen               |
| coast die Küste                  | strength die Kraft 1               |
| property das Eigentum            | to decrease abnehmen (irr.)        |
| as als, zum                      | amply reichlich                    |
| to escape entfliehen (irr.)      | to keep halten (irr.)              |
| to receive empfangen (irr.)      | seriously ernstlich                |
| shouts der Jubel                 | to fall ill krank werden           |
| youth Jüngling                   | to recover sich erholen            |

poet der Dichter.

Repeat the last three lessons carefully.

## 50. Section.

Derivative verbs with inseparable prefixes.

Such inseparable prefixes are: *be, emp, ent, er, ge, miß, ver, wider, zer*, and some others, which may be used separable or inseparable according to their meaning.

**Rule 1.** Inseparable prefixes are always unaccented.

**Rule 2.** Inseparable verbs do not take the prefix *ge* in the past participle.

**Rule 3.** Derivative verbs are conjugated like their primitive verbs.

|            |                                |                                 |
|------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Ex.</b> | bezahlen (r.) to pay           | mißlingen (sein) to fail        |
|            | bekommen to receive, get       | mißverstehen to misunderstand   |
|            | empfangen to receive           | verkaufen (r.) to sell          |
|            | empfehlen to recommend         | verlieren to lose               |
|            | empfinden to feel              | versprechen to promise          |
|            | entlaufen (sein) to run away   | verstehen to understand         |
|            | entfliehen (sein) to escape    | verbieten to forbid             |
|            | entkommen (sein) to escape     | verbrennen to burn              |
|            | enthalten to contain           | vermieten (r.) to let           |
|            | erlauben (r.) to permit, allow | vernachlässigen (r.) to neglect |
|            | erhalten to receive            | zerreißen to tear               |
|            | gewinnen to win                | zerbrechen to break             |
|            | gehören (r.) to belong         | zerstören (r.) to destroy       |
|            | gefallen to please             | widersprechen to contradict     |
|            | gelingen (sein) to succeed     | widerstehen to resist           |
|            | mißbrauchen (r.) to abuse      | übersetzen (r.) to translate    |
|            | wiederholen (r.) to repeat.    |                                 |

Infinit. gewinnen, gelingen, verbieten, zerreißen, empfehlen,  
 Imperf. gewann, gelang, verbot, zerriß, empfahl,  
 P. partic. gewonnen, gelungen, verboten, zerrißen, empfohlen.

*Observe.* Gelingen, mißlingen und gefallen (to like) are not personal verbs, they are only used in the 3<sup>d</sup> person. (Lesson 52.)

Write down the infinitive, the present, the imperfect and the perfect of the preceding separable verbs. Thus:

bekommen, ich bekomme, ich bekam, ich habe bekommen,  
 entlaufen, ich entlaufe, ich entließ, ich bin entlaufen,  
 gelingen, es gelingt, es gelang, es ist gelungen &c.

### Aufgabe 81.

I will pay [for] the boots at once, how much do they cost? Twenty marks for a pair of boots I find very dear. Have I paid my account? Is my account paid? You have not yet paid it, but that does not matter, the shoemaker may wait yet. I paid for my shoes and left the shop. I paid the man (acc.) and he thanked me. I paid the jeweller (dat.) for the ring, and had no money left, to make any other purchases. I would pay the jeweller (acc.), but found I had not money enough about (bei) me to pay him. Have you got a newspaper to day? The postman was here and brought some letters, but he had no newspaper for me. I sold my old watch, but got very little for it (dafür). Take care or



you will catch (get) a cold. I got a cold in my head, I do not know where. He got a fever and had (was obliged) to keep the bed for a week. Where did you buy that nice stick? I did not buy it, I got it as a (zum) present from a friend. Napoleon I. escaped from Elba and landed safely in France. The criminal has escaped from (the) prison. Another ran away [from] his guard this morning. They brought him here yesterday, and the next day he escaped. My new dog has run away, and is probably now with his old master again. My friend has escaped from a great danger. Allow me to carry your umbrella. Will you allow me, to go to the theatre to night? I had allowed him to go there, but he did not like [to go]. To whom do these fine horses belong? They formerly belonged to a prince in the neighbourhood, but he sold them and they belong now to an officer of our garrison. You bought a garden outside the town, to whom did it belong before? To whom does this pen belong? It has belonged to me, but it does no more belong to me.

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| at once gleich                 | the account die Rechnung        |
| dear teuer                     | criminal der Verbrecher         |
| does not matter macht nichts   | from prison aus dem Gefängnis   |
| to leave verlassen (irr.)      | guard die Wache                 |
| to thank danken (dat.) r.      | probably wahrscheinlich         |
| jeweller der Juwelier 1        | danger die Gefahr               |
| no money left kein Geld übrig  | to escape from entkommen, ent-  |
| purchase der Einkauf 1         | gehen (dat.)                    |
| newspaper die Zeitung          | formerly früher, ehemals        |
| take care acht geben           | neighbourhood die Nachbarschaft |
| a cold eine Erkältung          | officer der Offizier 1          |
| cold in the head der Schnupfen | garrison die Garnison           |
| to land landen                 | outside vor, außerhalb (gen.)   |

before früher, vorher.

### Aufgabe 82.

Gefallen, to like, is not used personally in German; the English object is subject in German and the person put in the dative.

**Ex.** I do not like this book, dieses Buch gefällt mir nicht. How do you like this place? Wie gefällt Ihnen dieser Ort? London gefällt mir sehr gut, es gefällt mir gut in London.

How do you like this book? I like it very much. How did you like Frankfurt? I liked that place very much. The English generally like the (am) Rhine very much. How did she like our new lodgings? She liked the house, but not the situation of the house. How did your brother like his new gold watch? He liked it much better than his old silver watch. How do you like the picture, which she is painting? It is very well painted, she is quite an artist. I got a new coat made, how do you like the colour of the cloth? I think it is well made, but I do not like the colour. A proverb says: He who (wer) risks, wins. Many risk and do not win. What will the proverb say? Take (habe) courage, no winning (inf.) without risking. He who plays, loses or wins. Many lose and few win. Gambling banks are therefore no more allowed in Germany, they are forbidden since 1872. Many lost, and some lost all (was) they had, and many a one committed suicide in despair. What you buy and receive, <sup>2</sup>you <sup>1</sup>must pay for. Do not abuse the confidence of others. You did not pay attention, you did not understand me, you misunderstood, what I said. Shall I tear this letter, or burn it? Tear it or burn it, as you like (wollen), but destroy it. In war much property, many a village is (wird) destroyed. He often contradicts himself in what he says, without knowing it. He often contradicted himself in what he said, and he knew it not. He did not know himself. People often know others, but do not know themselves well (recht). The Romans destroyed Carthage and Corinth in the same year, 146 before Christ (Christus).

|                                        |                                |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| lodgings die Wohnung                   | despair die Verzweiflung       |
| quite an artist eine ganze Künstlerin  | confidence das Vertrauen       |
| proverb das Sprichwort 2               | war der Krieg 1                |
| he who wer                             | property das Eigentum          |
| a gambling bank eine Spielbank         | what (that which) das was      |
| all that alles was                     | colour die Farbe               |
| commit suicide (sich das Leben nehmen) | cloth das Tuch 2               |
| (sich umbringen (s.))                  | situation die Lage             |
| Carthage Carthago                      | Roman der Römer                |
| to destroy (a letter) vernichten       | to destroy (a town) zerstören. |

### Aufgabe 83.

Did you never contradict your parents? Did you always resist temptation [dat.]? You knew, it was true,

what he said, and yet you contradicted. You knew, it was wrong, what you did, and yet you did not resist temptation. Your son is ill, I hear; you received a letter, did it contain good news? Take care, do not break the glass. The bottle is broken. The looking-glass fell down from the wall and broke. He came to Germany and understood no <sup>3</sup>German <sup>1</sup>word, but learned it very soon. Few people understand Dutch. I wanted the book and he sold it me very cheap, he wanted it no more. I met my friend (dat.) in the street, but he did not recognize me, he is very shortsighted. I mean, his eyes are shortsighted, his mind is (it) not. Many Germans are shortsighted and must wear spectacles. Spectacles are like crutches, it is better walking without crutches, and good eyes see better without spectacles, than bad eyes with spectacles. He always knew (konnte) his lessons and repeated them carefully from time to time, not to forget what he <sup>2</sup>had <sup>1</sup>learned; he never neglected his duty. Please recommend me to your parents, remember me kindly to them. A. W. von Schlegel translated Shakespeare into German. His translation is a master-piece, he penetrated into the spirit of the great British dramatist like no other foreigner. Shakespeare's works are therefore read and known in Germany almost as much as in England. Many Germans know (können) English very well, but can not read Shakespeare in English. House to be let. Apartments to be let. Furnished apartments. Have you hired a house? How many rooms have you hired? How much do you pay for them monthly? Horses to be let. I hired this horse for the whole afternoon. Does the newspaper contain no news? The bottle is empty, what did it contain, what was in it? What did the parcel contain? It contained a nice present for you. Guess, what it contained.

wrong unrecht  
wall die Wand 1  
to meet begegnen (sein) dat.  
to recognize erkennen (a, a)  
shortsighted kurzsichtig  
mind der Geist 2  
to wear tragen (u, a)  
spectacles eine Brille  
like wie, gleich

translation die Übersetzung  
to forget vergessen (a, e)  
duty die Pflicht  
to remember grüßen (r.)  
to penetrate eindringen (a, u)  
penetrated drang ein  
master-piece das Meisterstück 1  
spirit der Geist 2  
British britisch

|                               |                        |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|
| crutch die Stütze             | dramatist Dramatiker   |
| almost fast, beinahe          | to hire mieten (r.)    |
| to be let zu vermieten        | whole ganz             |
| furnished mbbliert            | empty leer             |
| monthly monatlich             | present das Geschenk 1 |
| news die Nachricht, Neuigkeit | apartment das Zimmer.  |

### 51. Section.

Derivative verbs with separable prefixes.

The primitive verb is separated from its particle in the present, the imperfect, the imperative, the past participle and infinitive. In the *present*, *imperfect* and *imperative* the separable particle goes to the *end* of the sentence, in the *past participle* the prefix *ge*, in the *infinitive* *zu* stands *between* the particle and the primitive verb.

|                |               |               |           |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|-----------|
|                | present.      | imperf.       | imp.      |
| Ex. to go out: | ich gehe aus, | ich ging aus, | gehe aus, |
|                | past part.    | infinitive.   |           |
|                | ausgegangen,  | auszugehen.   |           |

Ich gehe heute nicht mehr aus, er ist vor einer Stunde ausgegangen und hat jetzt keine Lust wieder auszugehen. Gehen Sie jetzt nicht aus!

There is a great abundance of separable verbs in the German language and a great variety in their meaning, as every dictionary will show. They form a chief difficulty for foreigners, that will know German thoroughly, and therefore require much attention and study.

ausgehen (aux. sein) to go out  
 ausreiten (sein) to take a ride on horseback  
 ausfahren (sein) to take a drive in a carriage  
 ausziehen to take off (clothes)  
 anziehen to put on (clothes)

abnehmen to decrease      zurückkommen to come back  
 zunehmen to increase      vorziehen to prefer.

*Remark.* The letters behind the verbs denote the vowels they take in the imperfect and past participle of irregular verbs. Verbs without letters, or an (r.) behind them are regular. The letter (s.) signifies a separable verb.

### Aufgabe 84.

Write down the present, imperfect, past participle, the perfect and the infinitive with *zu* of the preceding separable verbs and of those of the next four exercises.

|                                                         |                               |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| to retire sich zurückziehen (s, s)                      | to put on aufsetzen (Put) r.  |
| to give up aufgeben (a, e)                              | to take off abnehmen " (a, o) |
| to spread sich ausbreiten (r.)                          | bringen, brang, gebrungen     |
| there is a draft here es zieht hier, Sie stehen im Zug. |                               |

Do you take a glass of wine? What do you prefer, white wine or red wine? I prefer Rhinewine to any (jedem) other wine. Has your friend set off? He has not yet started, he preferred to stay here another night. He will set off only to morrow. Do you smoke? Do you prefer a cigar to a pipe? Do you prefer Turkish tobacco, or do you like better American tobacco? What do you prefer, a game [at] billiards, or a game at chess, or shall we have a game [of] Whist? Put on your hat, or you will have a cold, there is a draught here. Put on your spectacles and you will see it better. He took off his hat, his spectacles. The first crusade began in 1096 and ended after three years with the conquest of Jerusalem. Chiefly Frenchmen, but also many Germans and Italians took part in it (daran). About four hundred thousand men had left Europe and only a few thousand returned to their native country. Most had perished on the way by diseases, fatigues, privations and in battles. The christians established a christian kingdom in Palestine, but after six other crusades they finally gave up the possession of the holy land. The knights of St. John retired to the isle of Rhodes in 1291. The ship was wrecked and all men in it perished in the sea, crew and passengers. The polar expedition was obliged to turn again and to return to their country, immense masses of polar ice made it impossible to penetrate to the pole. They arrived at last safely in a harbour, had suffered much, but only a few had perished by the cold. The 30 years war began in Bohemia in 1618, and ended in Bohemia, but it spread over all (ganß) Germany. Germans fought against Germans, Protestants against Catholics, Sweden and France took part in it, all against Austria. Never a war devastated a country more than this dreadful war did (es that).

only (time) erst  
to smoke rauchen (r.)  
pipe die Pfeife  
Turkish türkiß

a game at billiards eine Partie  
Billard  
to have a game eine Partie machen  
to have a cold sich erkälten (r.)

to end endigen (r.)  
conquest die Eroberung  
chiefly hauptsächlich  
about (adv.) ungefähr  
disease die Krankheit  
fatigue die Strapaze  
privation die Entbehrung  
to establish errichten (r.)  
finally schließlich  
possession der Besitz  
holy heilig  
knight der Ritter  
— of St. John Johanniter  
Ritter  
Rhodes Rhodus

to wreck scheitern (r.)  
crew die Schiffsmannschaft  
passenger der Passagier  
pole der Pol  
polar expedition die Polar-  
expedition  
immense ungeheuer  
mass die Masse  
impossible unmöglich  
safely glücklich  
harbour der Hafen  
to suffer erdulden (r.)  
Bohemia Böhmen  
to devastate verheeren (r.)  
dreadful schrecklich.

### Aufgabe 88.

|                                  |                         |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
| to get up aufstehen (sein) irr.  | to open aufmachen (r.)  |
| to dress sich anziehen (irr.)    | to shut zumachen (r.)   |
| to undress sich ausziehen (irr.) | to knock anknöpfen (r.) |
| to light anmachen                | to put out ausmachen.   |

Have you not yet got up? Get up at once, it is late. When did you get up to day? I got up to day a little earlier than usual, I had some work to do before breakfast. When do you generally get up? I generally get up at six o'clock in summer, and at seven in winter. I go early to bed and early I rise, that is my principle. I am afraid, I can not get up to day, I am not quite well. There is time enough to get up, to wash and to dress myself before breakfast. Light a lamp [for] me, it is dark yet. Have you put out your lamp? Never go to bed without putting out your lamp before (vorher). It is a bad custom to read in bed. Who knocks at [the door]? I can not open, I am undressed. Put out your light and then (dann) go to bed. Have you made [a] fire in my stove? Wash and dress yourself now, the room is warm enough. You are dressed now, open your windows. Do not open the door at the same time. How cold it is in this room, the fire must have been out for hours. Are you up at last? I have been up these two hours. We will open the window for a quarter of an hour, to let fresh air come in. It is necessary to air a room several times a (the) day. The fire is made, a good fire is in the stove, the room begins getting

warm, let us shut the window. Please shut the window and do not open it again. Open your umbrella or you will be (become) wet, do you not see, how it rains? Shut your umbrella, it does no more rain.

|                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| early früh                        | to make a fire Feuer anmachen     |
| some work to do etwas zu arbeiten | at the same time zu gleicher Zeit |
| principle der Grundsatz 1         | for hours Stundenlang             |
| to wash waschen (irr.)            | fresh frisch                      |
| custom die Gewohnheit             | air die Luft 1                    |
|                                   | to air lüften.                    |

### Aufgabe 89.

|                |                         |                              |
|----------------|-------------------------|------------------------------|
| to scratch out | } ausmachen             | to copy abschreiben          |
| to take out    |                         | to pickle einmachen          |
| to agree about |                         | to take (medicine) einnehmen |
|                | to pour out einpfütten. |                              |

I have made a blot on my letter, I think, I must copy it again. Have you tried to scratch it out with your India rubber? I have tried, but it will not do, the paper is too thin and the blot too thick and too large. Are you copying your letter? I have copied it nearly. Why do you copy your exercise? There (es) were too many mistakes in it (darin). My master was last time discontented with my exercise, there were so many mistakes in it. We agreed, we would take a walk together this afternoon, but my friend did not keep [his] word, he did not come to me, and I was obliged to go by myself (allein). What did you agree about? We did not agree about anything. I agreed with my cousin, we would [have a] row together this evening. My neighbour has agreed with a friend to go out shooting to-morrow. Can you take out this grease on my coat? Take it out yourself with naphtha or turpentine. It is not difficult to take out grease-spots on your clothes. Have you taken [your medicine]. Every (alle) two hours a spoonful. It is more than two hours and you have not yet taken [it], you are very forgetful. Take your medicine regularly. Pour out a glass of water [for] me, I am very thirsty. Your coffee is poured out, drink it, I am afraid, it is no more very warm. I have poured out a glass of wine [for] you, please take (drink) it, it will (wird) do you good. When did you pour out this tea? it is no more

warm. Sweet pickled cucumbers are delicious. Do you pickle nuts in Germany? The Germans pickle much fruit with sugar. They rarely pickle things with hot spices (*scharf*).

|                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| blot der Flecken             | terpentine der Terpentin      |
| to try versuchen (r.)        | forgetful vergeßlich          |
| India rubber der Gummi       | a spoon ful einen Löffel voll |
| it will not do es geht nicht | pickled eingemacht            |
| thin dünn                    | delicious süßlich             |
| mistake der Fehler           | nut die Nuß 1                 |
| master der Lehrer            | cucumber die Gurke            |
| discontented unzufrieden     | spice das Gewürz 1            |
| to row rudern                | regular regelmäßig            |
| grease der Fettsäcken        |                               |

to go out shooting auf die Jagd gehen.

*Remark.* The student may now begin with reading German prose and pieces of poetry (II. Part of the Practical Method), and learn the easier poems by heart.

## 52. Section.

Some verbs personally used in English,  
impersonally in German.

|                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| I am cold es ist mir kalt   | I succeed es gelingt mir |
| I am warm es ist mir warm   | I fail es mißlingt mir   |
| I am glad es ist mir lieb   | I like es gefällt mir    |
| I am sorry es ist mir leid. |                          |

Imperfect: es war mir kalt, warm, lieb, leid; es gelang, mißlang, gefiel mir.

Perfect: es ist mir kalt, warm, lieb, leid gewesen; es ist mir gelungen, mißlungen, es hat mir gefallen.

## Aufgabe 90.

Are you cold? I am not cold. I have been very cold, but I am no more cold now. I have been cold, but walking makes warm. You are cold and yet the room is very warm, you must not be quite well. Are you warm now? I am rather (etwas) too warm in this thick coat. Your brother has arrived, I am glad to hear it. You have read this book, how do you like it? How did you like your walk in the forest? How did you like your company? How did you like the concert? I liked the concert very much, but the room (Saal) was too hot. I was dreadfully hot and caught a cold on my way home, and must keep the room now for a day or two (einige Tage). You wanted to



(would) learn French. Have you succeeded in finding (inf.) a good master? I have succeeded in finding a very able master and I like him much (sehr). Do you succeed in learning [to] swim in 6 weeks? I succeed in learning it, I can nearly swim now. Do you succeed in learning German in a year? I think, I succeed in learning it in that time. You see, I can already speak and understand it a little and I have begun to read it. Has the man succeeded in getting rid of his old horse? He has at last succeeded in getting rid of it at (zu) an acceptable price. Have you succeeded in finding a pair of boots that (die) <sup>2</sup>fit <sup>1</sup>you? I have succeeded in finding a very good pair of boots that <sup>2</sup>fit <sup>1</sup>me <sup>2</sup>very well. How did you like Paris? I liked that place (sehr) very much (gut), every one likes it better than London. How do you like (das) country-life? I like country-life better than London life. Which church do you like better, the Cologne Cathedral or St. Peter's in Rome? Which town do you like better Frankfurt or Wiesbaden? Most travellers like both places. I am sorry, I can not go out now with you, you must go by yourself. Have you succeeded in getting rid of your house at the price, that you demanded? I have not yet succeeded in it. Have you at last succeeded in finding a good German master? There are some masters, but I did not like them. Have you succeeded in your enterprize? I am sorry, it entirely failed. I hope you have not failed in your plan. You have once failed in it, you succeed better another time. My plan did not fail this time.

the forest der Wald 2  
to catch a cold sich erkälten (r.)

acceptable annehmbar

to fit passen (r.)

country-life das Landleben

London life das Londoner Leben

Cologne Cathedral der Kölner Dom

traveller der Reisende

to demand fordern (r.)

enterprize die Unternehmung

entire ganz

entirely gänzlich

plan der Plan 1

St. Peter's die Peterskirche.

### 53. Section.

The indefinite pronouns: man, es, das.

1. Man one, people, they (we, you).

Man is used, when we do not exactly know the person or persons in question or will not mention them and therefore speak in general.

The possessive pronoun *sein*, and the reflective pronoun *sich* correspond to the indefinite man.

**Ex.** Man lieft Bücher um sich zu unterhalten. Man verliert oft seine Bücher, wenn man sie verleiht.

2. The indefinite pronouns: *es*, *das* are often used for: he, she, it, they; this, that, these, those, to substitute a noun in the nominative singular and plural, for the three genders.

Whose umbrella, whose pen, whose book is this? *Wessen Regenschirm, Feder, Buch ist das? Das ist mein Regenschirm, meine Feder, mein Buch. Wessen Federn sind das? Es sind meine Federn. Wessen Sohn ist er (das)? Wessen Tochter ist sie (das)? Es ist mein Sohn, es ist meine Tochter, das, es sind meine Kinder.*

3. It is I *ich bin es*; du bist *es*; er, sie ist *es*.  
wir sind *es*; ihr seid *es*; sie sind *es*.

4. In order to, *um zu*, expresses a purpose; in order is mostly not expressed in English, when it must be added in German; especially so when an infinitive is preceded by a verb or an adjective with *too*.

#### Aufgabe 91.

It was I, it was he, it was she, was it not we? was it not you? It has been I, it has been you, it has been she, it has been he. Has it not been we, has it not been I, has it not been he? It has been my cousin, has it not been my niece? Who knocks at [the door] so late? It is I, your brother, I have something to tell you. Who is that young lady? *She* is my cousin, she has just arrived from England and wishes to speak to you. Is it you indeed? be heartily welcome. Who is that young gentleman? *He* is my cousin, he wishes to make your acquaintance. Who are those children? *They* are the children of my brother. Whose books are *those*? *They* are my books, I will leave them here, if you allow. Whose watch is *that*? It is my watch. Whose horses are *those*? *They* are my father's horses, how do you like them? *They* are indeed very fine horses. Who told you so (*das*)? Whose carriage is *that*? It is the carriage of the commander in chief. Whose horses are *those*? *They* are the horses of a rich merchant of this

town, are *they* not splendid horses? Do you know that gentleman? Yes, *he* is our clergyman. Who is that lady? *She* is my aunt. Who are those gentlemen? *They* are Americans. Do you know that officer? To be sure, *he* is the commander in chief, a celebrated general. These gentlemen look like Englishmen, but *they* are Germans.

One must not believe every thing, (*was*) one hears. In Sheffield *they* manufacture the best cutlery, and in Stilton *they* make the best cheese. *People* go to a ball to dance. *We* go to a concert to hear good music. *We* drink to quench *our* thirst, and *we* eat to appease *our* hunger. One reads books, either to amuse one's self or to instruct one's self. *We* do not live in order to eat, but we eat in order to live. The ignorant excuse themselves by (*indem* *sie*) saying: One can not know every thing. *You* go to school to learn, yet you are lazy. Have *they* not yet brought my shoes? *Man* is guilty of a crime, that *he* promotes. Have you succeeded at last in finding a good drawing master? *They* proposed me some masters, but I did not like them.

|                                               |                                              |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| to knock at the door anknöpfen (r. s.)        | to quench löschen (r.)                       |
| welcome willkommen                            | to appease stillen (r.)                      |
| acquaintance die Bekanntschaft                | hunger der Hunger                            |
| carriage der Wagen                            | either — or entweder — oder                  |
| commander in chief der kommandierende General | to amuse one's self sich unterhalten (ie, a) |
| merchant der Kaufmann                         | to instruct belehren (r.)                    |
| splendid prächtig                             | the ignorant der Unwissende                  |
| celebrated berühmt                            | to excuse one's self sich entschuldigen (r.) |
| to look like aussehen wie (s.)                | guilty schuldig                              |
| to manufacture fabrizieren (r.)               | crime das Verbrechen                         |
| cutlery (blades) Rlingen                      | to promote befördern (r.)                    |
| drawing master der Zeichenlehrer              | to propose vorschlagen (u, a) s.             |

#### 54. Section.

There is, there are es ist, es sind, es giebt.

*Observation 1.* Es ist, es sind signify existence in a certain place, es giebt signifies existence in general.

*Observation 2.* Is there? ist, sind? In questions es is left out.

Ex. Es ist Wein in dieser Flasche. Ist noch etwas Wein darin? Es giebt Kinder, die nicht gern lernen.

### Aufgabe 92.

There are thirty boys in our class. Is there [any] wine in this bottle? There is no more in it (darin). Were there many people at church? There were many there. There were few there on account of the bad weather. Are there [any] good horses to be had (zu haben) in this town? There are some very good hackney-horses here. Is there any more coffee left for me? There is much left. Is there much fruit this year? There is scarcely any fruit this year, the frost in spring destroyed the blossoms. Was there much wine on the Rhine last year? There was very little last year and none at all this year. Is there [any] ink in your inkstand? There is some in it, but it is not very black. Are there any fortresses in Germany as strong as Gibraltar? Was there ever (je) a war as dreadful and devastating as the 30 years war? Was there ever (einen) as disastrous [a] campaign as Napoleon's campaign to Russia in 1812? Was there ever a more cruel king than Cambyzes? Is there any better religion than christianity? Are there many novels in your library? There are not many in it, but all are interesting enough. We would have a game at chess, but there was no chess-board in the house. Has there ever been a more important discovery than the discovery of America? Has there ever been a more important invention than the invention of book-printing?

class die Klasse  
on account of wegen (gen.)  
weather das Wetter  
hackney-horse das Mietpferd  
left übrig  
scarcely any fast gar kein  
ink die Tinte  
inkstand das Tintenfaß 2  
to destroy zerstören (r.)  
the blossom die Blüte  
fortress die Festung

disastrous unheilvoll, schrecklich  
campaign der Feldzug 1  
cruel grausam  
christianity das Christentum  
devastating verheerend  
chess-board das Schachbrett 2  
important wichtig  
discovery die Entdeckung  
invention die Erfindung  
to have a game ein Spiel machen  
library die Bibliothek

book-printing die Buchdruckerkunst.

### 55. Section.

1. Deviating position of the article.
2. Contraction of the pronouns it, them, what with a preposition.
3. What (what kind of).
 

|                                        |                                         |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. all the day den ganzen Tag          | too good a father ein zu guter Vater    |
| all the company die ganze Gesellschaft | quite another man ein ganz anderer Mann |
| so good a pen eine so gute Feder       | both the daughters die beiden Töchter   |
| such a good pen eine solche gute Feder |                                         |
| double the time die doppelte Zeit      | half an hour eine halbe Stunde.         |
2. in it, in them darin; in what worin?  
for it, for them dafür; for what wofür?  
damit, womit? dazu, wozu? davon, wovon? daraus, woraus?  
daran, woran? darüber, worüber?
3. what paper was für Papier? what flower was für eine Blume?  
what flowers was für Blumen?

### Aufgabe 98.

1. That is quite another affair. He is quite another man than his brother. The same verbs have often quite a different meaning. He is too charitable a man to be rich. How beautiful a sunset we had last night! Full grown walnut-trees are large trees, but I never saw such a large walnut-tree as this. So good a citizen, so clever a general, so warm a friend, so kind a father, so generous friend to (gegen) the poor, we do not often find. Such a character is rare. All the family were (war) unwell, both the children had the measles. We sat up by the sick all the night. I have been at home all the afternoon. He made all the company laugh.

2. You have written your exercise well, but there are too many mistakes in it, else I would (würde) be satisfied with it. What are you thinking of? you look so sad. You always think of the death of your friend, you must not think too much of it, it makes you sad. How much did you pay for this picture? I paid 500 M. for it. All your pictures are valuable, you must have paid much for them. Are you painting yourself (selbst)? No more now, I like painting, but I have no time for it (dazu) now. What do you say to this news? I say nothing to it, I only wonder

at it. Do you rejoice at it? I certainly do not rejoice at it. Of what are you speaking? We speak of the new American inventions, every one speaks of them, every one is astonished at them. Telephone, phonograph, electric light are the topic of the day, who does not speak of them? Who is in the room? Nobody is there. Were you at church? I was not there to day. What a fine piece of wood! what will you do with it? I will make a foot-stool of it. You are quite a joiner. Was the dog on the sofa or under it? I found him under it, certainly not on it, a dog must not lie on a sofa. I put a letter in my portfolio, but it is no more there, who took it out? Come in. Go in, please. With what to they cut glass? With what do people clean their bottles?

|                           |                                      |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| affair die Sache          | to make laugh zum Lachen bringen     |
| verb das Verb s           | else sonst                           |
| different verschieden     | satisfied zufrieden                  |
| meaning die Bedeutung     | to think of denken an (a, a)         |
| charitable mildthätig     | to look aussehen (a, e) s.           |
| full grown ausgewachsen   | sad traurig                          |
| citizen der Bürger        | to wonder at sich wundern über       |
| clever geschickt          | to rejoice at sich freuen über       |
| kind gütig                | certainly gewiß                      |
| character der Charakter   | to be astonished at erstaunt         |
| measles die Masern        | sein über                            |
| foot-stool der Fußsthemel | topic of the day das Tagesgespräch 1 |
| generous freigebig        | portfolio die Briefmappe             |
| to sit up wachen (r.)     | to clean reinigen (r.).              |

#### Aufgabe 94.

What were you thinking of? What do you think of it? What did you use this pen for? it is too [much] pointed to write with it. I used it for drawing. What do you use this paper for? it is very thick. I use it for drawing. And what do you use this rough paper for? I use it for painting. At what are you laughing? I almost forget of what we were speaking. What is this bread made of? of wheat or rye-flour? Of what do they make beer? They make it of hops and malt. Of what do they make malt? Malt is roasted barley. What is this penholder made of? of ivory or bone? In what did you amuse yourself in the country? I read much, I took long walks, and went often fishing (inf).

3. What [kind of] a hat will you buy? What a bad pen this is! What bad pens these are! What proof can you give me? Of what wood is this violin made? To what family of animals does a hare and a stag belong? What metals are generally used for jewelry? What memory you must have to learn such a piece of poetry by heart in a few minutes! What button have you lost? What sums rich people often squander in one night! What sugar do you prefer? What knife do you want? What ink do you like better, blue or black ink? What ink does your master use to correct your exercises? What trees are those? What a sad thing it is to be blind. What writing! with what have you written it? What are you satisfied with, if (wenn) not with such an answer? With what pen do you like better to write, with a steel-pen, or a quill? I prefer a quill. What are (werden) horses fed with? They are chiefly fed with oats and hay.

|                                                                         |                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| to use for gebrauchen zu (r.)                                           | metal das Metall 1              |
| pointed spit                                                            | jewelry die Schmuckfachen       |
| drawing das Zeichnen                                                    | memory das Gedächtnis           |
| rough rauß                                                              | piece of poetry das Gedicht 1   |
| to paint(ing) malen                                                     | button der Knopf 1              |
| to laugh at lachen über (r.)                                            | sum die Summe                   |
| almost fast, beinahe                                                    | to squander verschwenden (r.)   |
| to forget vergessen (irr.)                                              | to want brauchen, wünschen (r.) |
| wheat der Weizen                                                        | to correct corrigieren (r.)     |
| rye der Roggen                                                          | thing die Sache                 |
| barley die Gerste                                                       | writing die Schrift             |
| oats der Hafer                                                          | steel-pen die Stahlfeder        |
| flour das Mehl                                                          | goose die Gans 1                |
| hops der Hopfen                                                         | quill die Quillfeder            |
| malt das Malz                                                           | to feed füttern (r.)            |
| to roast rösten (r.)                                                    | hay das Heu                     |
| penholder der Federhalter                                               | animal das Tier 1               |
| ivory das Elfenbein                                                     | hare der Hase                   |
| bone der Knochen                                                        | stag der Hirsch 1               |
| to fish fischen                                                         | proof der Beweis 1              |
| by heart auswendig, to amuse one's self in sich unterhalten mit (irr.). |                                 |

### 56. Section.

The relative and determinative pronouns I.

|       |                   | Singular.                 | Plural. |
|-------|-------------------|---------------------------|---------|
| 1. N. | which, who, that  | welcher, welche, welches  | welche  |
| G.    | of which, whose   | dessen, deren, dessen     | deren   |
| D.    | to which, to whom | welchem, welcher, welchem | welchen |
| Acc.  | which, whom, that | welchen, welche, welches  | welche. |

**Rule 1.** The relative pronoun removes the verb to the *end* of the relative sentences, the auxiliary *behind* the participle and infinitive.

**Rule 2.** 1. The relative sentence is separated in German from the principal sentence by stops.

**Ex.** Ich kenne den Knaben nicht, welcher mir gestern den Brief brachte (gebracht hat). Ein Kind, dessen Eltern gestorben sind, ist eine Waise. Kinder, deren Eltern gestorben sind, sind Waisen. Ich kenne einen Knaben, welcher die Aufgabe sehr gut machen kann. Wo ist der Knabe, welchem ich den Brief gab (gegeben habe)? Hier sind die Kinder, welchen Sie Apfel versprochen haben. Hier ist der Brief, welchen Sie gestern Abend geschrieben haben. Ein Haus, dessen Fenster zerbrochen sind, sieht öde (desolate) aus.

2. A relative pronoun often corresponds with a determinative pronoun: that which, that (the one, he, she, they) who derjenige welcher, diejenige welche, dasjenige welches; diejenigen welche.

Derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige are declined like an adjective preceded by the definite article.

Decline them in singular and plural.

Instead of derjenige, diejenige, dasjenige the definite article, with a stress on it, is used as determinative pronoun.

Singular.

Plural.

|      |                       |      |       |                     |
|------|-----------------------|------|-------|---------------------|
| N.   | der, die, das         | that | die   | those               |
| G.   | dessen, deren, dessen |      | derer | (before a noun der) |
| D.   | dem, der, dem         |      | denen | (before a noun den) |
| Acc. | den, das, den         |      | die.  |                     |

**Ex.** Zeige mir denjenigen (den) Knaben, welcher das gethan hat. Gib den Apfel demjenigen (dem) Mädchen, welches am fleißigsten gewesen ist. Gedente derer stets in Liebe, welche dir Wohlthaten erzeigt haben. Leihen Sie diese Bücher denen (denjenigen), welche lesen können. Gedente dessen stets in Liebe, welcher dir Wohlthaten erzeigt hat.

stets always, ever; gedenten (gen.) remember;

Wohlthaten erzeigen to confer benefits upon.

**Observation 1.** The genitive plural of the relative *whose* is *deren*. The genitive plural of the determinative of *those* is *derer*.

**Observation 2.** Whose *weissen?* interrogative. *Weissen* Haus? whose *dessen*, relative. Ein Mann, *dessen* Haus.



*Observation 3.* The accusative of the relative is sometimes left out in English, in German never.

**Ex.** The letter I told you of, *der Brief, von welchem (dem) ich Ihnen sagte.*

### Aufgabe 95.

The master praises the boy, who is attentive and diligent, but he blames the boys, who are lazy and inattentive. Children, whose parents are poor, sometimes go begging. A boy, who will learn, can learn. Who were those ladies, with whom you took a walk this afternoon? Give these apples to those children, who have behaved well. A man, whose leg is cut off, is a cripple. The book, which I will lend you, is very interesting. This is an exercise, which I can do very well. These are books, which you can not yet understand. These are exercises, which you must do without mistakes. The arm-chair, which stands by the window, is a present from my aunt. She is the prettiest lady, I ever have seen. The sun, which we see daily in the blue bright sky, shines as well for the poor man, as for the most powerful king, who lives in a palace and whose will is a law for millions. Have you found again the key, you had lost? Virtue is a thing, which always pleases and which never displeases. He is one of the few men, whom I thoroughly dislike. How can you have confidence in (zu) a man, who does not keep his promise? The watch, I bought lately, does not go well. A watch, which you forget to wind up, can not go. The watch-maker sold me a watch, which was not worth anything. Do you know that gentleman, who was passing here just now? That lady, who spoke so little the whole evening, has more sense than her companion, who had so much to say. I will give you those gloves, the colour of which has faded a little, for half the price. Those regions, which are above the snow-line, have a perpetual winter and are desolate. To which children shall I give the apples? To those, that have been diligent. To which boys shall I give the pencils? To those, who will draw.

to praise loben (r.)  
to blame tadeln (r.)

to dislike missfallen (te, a)  
watch die Uhr

|                                        |                                      |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| to beg (alms) betteln (r.)             | watch-maker der Uhrmacher            |
| to behave sich betragen (u, a)         | to pass vorbeigehen (i, a) s.        |
| to cut off abschneiden (i, i) s.       | just now eben                        |
| the leg das Bein 1                     | sense der Verstand                   |
| arm-chair der Sessel                   | companion der Gefährte, die — in     |
| the will der Wille (n) 5               | to fade verschließen (o, o)          |
| the law das Gesetz 1                   | for half the price für (den) halben  |
| a million die Million                  | Preis                                |
| key der Schlüssel                      | region die Region                    |
| virtue die Tugend                      | snow-line die Schneelinie            |
| thoroughly durchaus                    | perpetual immerwährend               |
| pencil der Bleistift 1                 | to shoot schießen, schoß, geschossen |
| to wind up (watch) aufziehen (o, o) s. |                                      |

### Aufgabe 96.

Do you know the books, that we were speaking of? Do you know the lady, with whom he danced last night? *We* must give young children, who have just learned [to] read, such books, which they like and which they can easily understand. The lady, those people are talking of, is my cousin. What book was it, you bought yesterday? Not all knives, that are made in Sheffield, are good. I never speak of things, I do not know [for] certain. This is a poet, whose name I never heard before. The letter, I received this morning, conveyed me a good news. The bible is a book, of (von) which we should know much by heart. Klopstock is a poet, that every one admires, but nobody reads. Schiller is a poet, that is known by all Germans, and there are few, that have not read his plays and poems. We like to speak of times, that were happy for us, and do not like to speak of times, that were sad. What has become of (aus) the children, whose parents died so suddenly? Pork, that is not well boiled or roasted, can be very unwholesome. People often drink wine, that is adulterated, without knowing it. The conversation in a language, we do not thoroughly understand, can not be animated. *We* should never read books, which *we* do not fully understand. (The) travelling in countries, that are uncivilized, is troublesome. It was not he who wrote this letter, it was I. Was it she, who played and sang so well last night? It was we, who made the noise. It was they, who whistled, not we. Whose book

is that? *Those* are books, *you* must read a (zum) second time to understand them well.

|                                  |                                               |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| such solcher, e, es              | to adulterate verfälschen (r.)                |
| never before nie zuvor           | conversation die Unterhaltung                 |
| to convey bringen, über — (a, a) | thoroughly, fully völlig                      |
| by heart auswendig               | travelling das Reisen                         |
| to admire bewundern              | uncivilized uncivilisiert                     |
| play das Schauspiel 1            | troublesome beschwerlich                      |
| poem das Gedicht 1               | animated lebhaft, belebt                      |
| desk das Pult, der Schreibtisch  | unwholesome ungesund                          |
| suddenly plötzlich               | noise der Lärm                                |
| pork das Schweinefleisch         | to whistle pfeifen (i, i)                     |
| to boil kochen (r.)              | just eben                                     |
|                                  | to roast braten (briet or bratete, gebraten). |

### 57. Section.

The relative pronoun *der, die, das* (II).

It is frequently used instead of *welcher, e, es* and is declined like the definite article, except the genitive singular and gen. and dat. plural.

|      |                   | Singular.                    | Plural.      |
|------|-------------------|------------------------------|--------------|
| N.   | which, who, that  | <i>der, die, das</i>         | <i>die</i>   |
| G.   | of which, whose   | <i>dessen, deren, dessen</i> | <i>deren</i> |
| D.   | to which, to whom | <i>dem, der, dem</i>         | <i>denen</i> |
| Acc. | which, whom, that | <i>den, die, das</i>         | <i>die.</i>  |

#### Aufgabe 97.

Translate the sentences of exercise 95 using the relative pronoun: *der, die, das* instead of: *welcher, e, es*.

#### Aufgabe 98.

Do the same with exercise 96.

### 58. Section.

Relative pronouns III.

1. The relative pronouns: *wer, he who, was, that* which (what) are used substantively.

Ex. *Wer einmal lügt, dem glaubt man nicht, und wenn er auch die Wahrheit spricht. Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen. Was ich nicht weiß, macht mir nicht heiß. Was Hanschen nicht lernt, lernt Hans nimmermehr (Sprichwörter).*

2. All, nothing, much, something are followed in English by *that*, or used without any relative pronoun, in German they are always followed by: *was*.

3. Which, referring to the contents of a preceding sentence is in German given by: *was*.

**Ex.** Ich habe alles gehört, was Sie gesagt haben. Er hat vieles erzählt, was ich nicht glauben kann. Er ist zufrieden mit dem, was er hat (demonstr. in the dat., the relative in the acc.). Er soll arm sein, was ich nicht glauben kann.

|                    |                                          |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------|
| nimmermehr never   | er soll sein he is said to be            |
| erzählen to relate | lügen (o, n) to lie                      |
| wenn auch though   | hören to listen to, fühlen (r.) to feel. |

#### Aufgabe 99.

He who said so (*das*), does not know (*wissen*) the fact. He who speaks much, has often less sense, than he who speaks little. You understand, what I will say? Much of what he said, was not probable. I could understand all, he said. I have heard nothing of what he said. All is well, that ends well. Nothing is troublesome, that we do willingly. Never put off till to-morrow, what you can do to-day. He contradicted all that people said, which made him hated by (*bei*) the whole company. Do you still know, what we spoke of last night? Never promise, what you can not keep. We often can not obtain, what we wish, and should be contented with (*that*) what we have. This man is very suspicious, he believes nothing, but (*was er nicht*) what he has seen or heard. I understand what you mean. You can not believe all that people say. All he paid for his friend, was money thrown away. This poor man has lost all he had. He who told you so, did not know the fact. He said something, he was very sorry [*for*] afterwards. I heard something of you, that I can not believe. The horses, he sold, were old. He sold a watch, for which he got very little money. I thank you very [*much*] for the nice present, you sent me. He who cheats you, must be very sharp. He who will control others, must first control himself. Do you know him (*den*), who painted this picture? Do you know her (*die*), who sold you the ring? He had a horse, the tail of which (*whose tail*)

was cropped. How do you like a dog, the ears of which are cropped? A tree, the bark of which is much injured, will (wird) die. He had horses, the tails of which were cropped.

|                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| the fact die Thatfache           | to die absterben (a, o) s.       |
| troublesome lästig               | sharp, sly schlau                |
| to hate hassen (r.)              | to control beherrschen (r.)      |
| to make hated verhaßt machen     | tail der Schwanz, der Schweif 1  |
| to obtain erhalten (ie, a)       | to crop stutzen (r.)             |
| contented zufrieden              | bark die Rinde                   |
| to cheat betrügen (o, o)         | to injure beschädigen (r.)       |
| to put off aufschieben (o, o) s. | suspicious argwöhnisch           |
|                                  | to rule over herrschen über (r.) |

## 59. Section.

### The future tenses.

#### I. Future.

I shall have ich werde haben, we shall have wir werden haben,  
thou wilt have du wirst haben, you will have ihr werdet haben,  
he will have er wird haben, they will have sie werden haben.

#### II. Future.

I shall have had ich werde gehabt haben.

I shall have lost ich werde verloren haben.

1. There is only one auxiliary to form the future tense in German: werden. In the 2<sup>d</sup> future it is to be observed, which verbs take the auxiliary sein, and which take haben with their participle.

Ex. Ich werde geschrieben haben, ich werde gemacht haben.  
But: Er wird gekommen sein, er wird gegangen, gelaufen, gefallen, angekommen, fortgegangen, abgereist sein, er wird gewesen sein, er wird geworden sein.

2. In the 2<sup>d</sup> future participle and infinitive go to the end of the sentence.

Ex. Ich werde meinen Brief gleich geschrieben haben.

Er wird gestern Abend angekommen sein.

3. Idiomatical use of: soll and will.

He is said to be rich, er soll reich sein.

He pretends to have seen it, er will es gesehen haben.

### Aufgabe 100.

I shall be, he will be, shall you be? will they be?  
I shall answer, he will receive, shall you write? will he

pay? will they arrive? will he not come back? it will rain, it will freeze, it will snow, it will hail. It will have rained, it will have frozen, it will not have snowed, it will not have hailed, you will have promised, he will not have neglected. He will have been, they will have been, we shall have been, I shall have been. He will have come, he will have come back. We shall have gone, we shall have gone out, will he have gone out? He will have run, he will have run away. Will you have copied? you will have written, he will have answered. Will he have received? will they have cut? will they have cut off? Will he remain, will he have remained? he will not have remained. He will have become. Will you have become? I shall not have become. It will thunder, it will lighten, it will thaw. I shall be, you will be, will you be? will you have been? I shall not have been. They will have been, they will have done, will they have sent? He will have set out. He will have perished. They will have returned. He will have given. She will have taken a ride, she will have taken a walk. She will put, she will put on. She will take a drive. It will take place, I shall take part in it, he will take care, I shall get rid of. It will have taken place, I shall have taken part in it, she will have taken care, he will have got rid of.

#### **Aufgabe 101.**

Let us go home, I think it will soon begin to rain. Do you think we shall have (bekommen) a thunderstorm? The air is so close, the weather will change. Most probably we shall have a thunderstorm. A warm rain will be good for the gardens and fields. The plants will grow much after a warm rain, the ground is very dry. When shall you start from here? I shall leave to night, and I shall arrive in Paris to morrow morning. Be quick, or we shall be too late for the train. I hope, it will be time enough, my things are packed up. Your friends will be glad to see you. And I shall be glad to see them. How long, do you think, you will stay there? I shall stay perhaps a fortnight. I hope, you will amuse yourself there. Shall you go out now? I shall not go out this afternoon, I am

busy. But I hope, I shall have more time to morrow. What weather, do you think, [it] will be to morrow? I hope, it will be fine. The weather will be fine for some time now. It seems it has settled, and it will be constant now. What will you do to morrow? I shall not work much, I shall take a long walk. I shall do my work first, and then I will write a letter. When will you have written your letter? By (bis) ten, <sup>2</sup>I <sup>1</sup>hope. I am afraid, he will have lost time and money in this affair. Do you think, he will have been here? Certainly he will have come and will not have found you at home. Do you think he will have met his friend? I am sure, he will have met him and will have spoken to him. Will he have been at the concert? No doubt he will have been there, he is too fond of music. Will he have amused himself? I am sure he will have amused himself, for the music was very good. Stay here a little longer, or your friend will have come here and you will not have been at home. When shall you pay me? To morrow, I hope, I shall get the money, which I expect, and then I shall pay you. I suppose, I am too late, he will have written before me, he will have come before me.

He pretends to be wiser than other people. The king is said to be dead. The king is said to have been here. He pretends to be ill, which nobody believes. He pretends to be a good rider. He is said to be a good rider. He pretends to know English. He is said to know English well. He pretends to understand Shakespeare. He is said to be clever.

thunderstorm das Gewitter  
plant die Pflanze  
close, sultry brüdenb, schwül  
to change sich verändern  
to pack up packen  
to be glad sich freuen  
to amuse one's self sich gut  
unterhalten  
busy beschäftigt  
I am busy ich habe zu thun  
I am sure sicherlich, gewiß

to settle sich setzen (weather), sich  
niederlassen s. (in business)  
constant beständig  
affair die Sache, Angelegenheit  
to meet antreffen (traf, getroffen) s.  
no doubt ohne Zweifel  
to be fond of gern haben  
to suppose vermuten  
dead tot  
clever geschickt, gelehrt  
skilful geschickt

I hope hoffentlich.

### 60. Section.

1. The passive voice, present, imperfect, perfect.
2. The subordinate conjunctions: *wenn*, *als*, *weil*.

1. Every sentence in the active voice, with an accusative as object, can be turned into the passive voice. The accusative of the active is nominative in the passive; the subject of the active takes the preposition *von* (by) with the dative.

By *von* (with a person), *durch* (with an abstract noun).

Ex. Active: *Der Müller mahlt das Korn.*

The miller grinds the corn.

Pass.: *Das Korn wird von dem Müller gemahlen.*

The corn is ground by the miller.

Act.: *Man schlachtet die Ochsen, wenn sie fett sind.*

They kill the oxen, when they are fat.

Pass.: *Die Ochsen werden geschlachtet, wenn sie fett sind.*

Oxen are killed, when they are fat.

The auxiliary of the passive voice is *werden*, to be.

Infinitive: *Werden* to be. Past part. *worden*, *been*.

Present: *Ich werde*, *du wirst*, *er wird*, *wir werden*, *ihr werdet*, *sie werden*.

Imperf.: *Ich wurde*, *du wurdest*, *er wurde*, *wir wurden*, *ihr wurdet*, *sie wurden*.

Perf.: *Ich bin worden*, *du bist worden*, *er ist worden* &c.

2. The subordinate conjunctions remove the verb to the end of the subordinate sentence.

*When* connected with a present or future tense is in German: *wenn*;

*when* connected with a past tense is in German: *als*;  
*because*: *weil*.

Ex. *Die Ochsen werden geschlachtet (killed), wenn sie fett sind.*

*Die Ochsen wurden geschlachtet, als sie fett waren.*

*Die Ochsen sind geschlachtet worden, weil sie fett gewesen sind.*

The following sentences in the active voice are to be transposed into the passive voice:

*Der Schreiner macht die Tische. Der Schreiner machte die Tische. Der Schreiner hat die Tische gemacht. Man macht die Tische von Holz. Man macht auch Tische und Stühle von Eisen.*



Der Schneider macht den Rock. Der Schneider machte den Rock. Der Schneider hat den Rock gemacht. Man macht einen Winterrock von dickem Tuch.

Mein Bruder schreibt den Brief. Mein Bruder schrieb den Brief. Mein Bruder hat den Brief geschrieben. Man muß einen Brief rein und deutlich (distinctly) schreiben.

#### Aufgabe 102.

The gardener waters the flowers. The flowers are watered by the gardener. The gardener watered the flowers. The flowers were watered by the gardener. The gardener has watered the flowers. The flowers have been watered by the gardener. The butcher kills the calf, when it is old enough. The calf is killed by the butcher, when it is old enough. The calf was killed by the butcher, when it was old enough. The calf has been killed by the butcher, because it has been old enough. A diligent boy is praised by his master. The attentive boy was praised by his master. The diligent and attentive boys have been praised by their master. A naughty boy is punished by his father. The naughty boy was punished. The disobedient boys were punished. A lazy pupil is blamed. Pupils, that are lazy, are blamed. You are blamed, when you are lazy. We are punished, when we are disobedient. We were punished, when we were disobedient. We were praised, because we were diligent and attentive. The grass is mowed by the mowers, when it is high enough. It has been mowed. It was mowed, when it was high enough. The corn is cut, when it is ripe. The corn was cut, because it was ripe. It has been cut by the reapers. The plants are watered, when the ground is dry. The plants have been watered by the gardener. The plants were watered, because the ground was dry. Cherries are plucked, when they are red and sweet. The cherries were plucked yesterday. The cherries have been plucked by the boys. We must use our time well. Our time must be used well by us, when we are at school. Our time has been used well by us. Our time was used well by us, when we were at school. The sun lights and warms the earth. The earth is lit up and warmed by the sun.

|                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| gardener der Gärtner                | to punish bestrafen (r.)         |
| to water begießen (begoß, begossen) | disobedient ungehorsam           |
| butcher der Metzger                 | to mow mähen (r.)                |
| to kill schlachten                  | mower der Mäher                  |
| calf das Kalb 2                     | reaper der Schnitter             |
| attentive aufmerksam                | ground der Grund, der Boden      |
| to light up erleuchten              | to use gebrauchen, benutzen (r.) |
| naughty unartig                     | to warm erwärmen (r.)            |

diligent fleißig.

### Aufgabe 103.

America was discovered by Christopher Columbus. The northpole has not yet been reached by any ship. Will the northpole ever be reached? Many ships are destroyed by (the) storm in the course of a year. Many ships were destroyed in the course of this year by storm. Many ships have lately been destroyed by storms. Lisbon was destroyed by an earthquake in 1755. Carthage was founded by the Phoenicians and was destroyed by the Romans. Book-printing was invented by a German. Charles V. was born [in] 1500. Luther was born in 1483. The Cologne Cathedral was begun [building] in 1248 and was finished in 1880. St. Peter's in Rome was built by Michael Angelo. Nests are built by birds. This nest has been built by a swallow. How many glasses are broken, how many pins are lost every day! Many battles were won by Napoleon I. Two battles were lost by him, which cost him throne and liberty. Which were those two battles? Many a man has ruined himself and his family by (through) gambling. Many a man has been ruined by gambling. Will the store of coal in the mines ever be exhausted? Ceasar was assassinated by republicans, but the republic was not saved by (through) his death. Books, that are new, should be bound. Not all, that is dirty, can be washed. A young lady is admired, when she is pretty and amiable. He who is vicious, is despised. He who is virtuous, is respected. He was respected, because he was rich and liberal. She was highly esteemed by all who knew her. All our actions should be regulated by religion and reason. Good men are generally loved and esteemed by their fellowmen, but bad people are usually despised by the good and virtuous. A man may be deprived

of honour and riches against his will, but not of virtue without his consent. Have the letters been sealed? They have been sealed and sent to the post-office.

|                                    |                                 |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Christopher Christoph              | store of coal der Kohlenvorrat  |
| northpole der Nordpol              | mine das Bergwerk               |
| ever je                            | to exhaust erschöpfen (r.)      |
| to destroy vernichten, zerstören   | to assassinate ermorden (r.)    |
| course der Lauf                    | republic die Republik           |
| Lisbon Lissabon                    | republican der Republikaner     |
| earthquake das Erdbeben            | to seal siegeln (r.)            |
| Carthage Karthago                  | to save retten (r.)             |
| to found gründen (r.)              | to bind einbinden (ein Buch) s. |
| Roman der Römer                    | amiable liebenswürdig           |
| Phoenician der Phönizier           | vicious lasterhaft              |
| born geboren                       | virtuous tugendhaft             |
| to finish vollenden (r.)           | liberal freigebig               |
| to build bauen (r.)                | to esteem achten (r.)           |
| nest das Nest 2                    | action die Handlung             |
| to win gewinnen (gewann, gewonnen) | to regulate regeln (r.)         |
| bird der Vogel                     | reason die Vernunft             |
| swallow die Schwalbe               | fellowmen die Mitmenschen       |
| liberty die Freiheit               | to deprive berauben (r.)        |
| to ruin zu Grunde richten (r.)     | riches der Reichtum             |
|                                    | consent die Zustimmung.         |

## 61. Section.

The verbs *sein* and *werden*.

1. *To be*, in connection with a participle, is sometimes *not* translated by *werden*, but by *sein*. This is the case, when a *completed* fact is expressed.

Ex. Seine zwei Ochsen sind geschlachtet, they *are* killed, they *have* killed them.

Ochsen werden von dem Metzger geschlachtet, they *kill* them.

Das Buch ist eingebunden, it *is* bound, they *have* bound it.

Das Buch wird von dem Buchbinder eingebunden, he *has* not bound it, he *is* binding it, he binds it.

2. The German verb *werden* denotes:

a) in connection with an adjective and a noun *to become* (grow, turn). Er wird reich, er wurde reich, er ist reich geworden. Er wird Offizier, er ist Offizier geworden;

b) it is, connected with an infinitive, the auxiliary of the future tense, *will* and *shall* in English. Ich werde sehen, er wird kommen, es wird regnen;

c) it is, connected with a past participle, the auxiliary of the passive voice, *to be* in English. *Bücher werden vom Buchbinder eingebunden. Die Blume wird vom Gärtner begossen.*

3. The infinitive of the English passive is often given by the German infinitive of the active, especially when a possibility or necessity is expressed. What is to be done now, *was ist jetzt zu thun?* It is hardly to be believed, *es ist kaum zu glauben.*

#### Aufgabe 104.

1. Is the book, you bought, bound or will you have it bound? My coat is torn, it must be mended, take it to the tailor. Your boots are made, the shoemaker will send them directly. The book can not be read, it is not yet bound. Is the goose you bought alive or is it killed? Roasted geese are liked by every one. Hares are generally skinned, when they are sold. Potatoes are boiled, when they are peeled. Our army was victorious, the enemy is beaten. The child is too much indulged by his parents. To whom does the house belong, that is building there opposite?

2. We became prudent by misfortune. My neighbour has grown rich by industry and economy. Just when my parents were about (im Begriff) to go into the country, my mother was taken (became) ill and so they were obliged to remain in the town. Your sister has grown very tall. The milk has turned sour, it is no more good for coffee. The young man first intended to study law, but afterwards he turned soldier. You cut wood with your penknife, it will soon become blunt. I hope, the weather will get fine again to morrow. The battles of Leipzig and Waterloo were gained by the allies and lost by Napoleon. Will the store of coal in the mines ever be exhausted?

3. Where is this wine to be obtained? Where is the book to be had? It is to be bought at the bookseller's. I looked about in (nach) all directions, but nobody was to be seen. This poem is too hard to be learned by heart. A heavy snowfall was to be expected. The patient is very feverish, a serious illness is to be feared, a speedy recovery is not to be expected. The man died in sad circumstances,

there was much to be done for the family, the affairs were to be arranged, debts were to be paid, the widow and children were to be provided for. You have no idea (*haben*), how much is to be seen in London. Geese are sold at the market or in poultry shops.

to tear zerreißen (*riß, rissen*)  
 to mend ausbessern (*s.*)  
 alive lebendig  
 to skin abziehen (*s, o*) *s.*  
 to peal schälen  
 victorious siegreich  
 to beat schlagen (*Schlug, ge-*  
*schlagen*)  
 to indulge verzeihen (*irr.*)  
 opposite gegenüber  
 misfortune das Unglück  
 industry der Fleiß  
 economy die Sparsamkeit  
 just gerade, eben  
 sour sauer  
 to study studieren  
 law Jura, das Gesetz  
 penknife das Federmesser  
 blunt stumpf

to intend vorhaben (*s.*)  
 to gain gewinnen (*a, o*)  
 ally der Verbündete  
 to obtain bekommen, haben  
 bookseller der Buchhändler  
 to look about umher blicken  
 direction die Richtung  
 heavy stark, schwer  
 snowfall der Schneefall  
 feverish fieberisch  
 speedy baldig  
 recovery die Wiederherstellung  
 circumstance der Umstand  
 the affairs die Verhältnisse  
 to arrange ordnen  
 debt die Schuld  
 widow die Witwe  
 idea die Idee  
 poultry-shop Geflügelladen.

## 62. Section.

### Subordinate conjunctions I.

Wenn, wann, als, ehe, bis, daß, nachdem.

1. When, meaning at what time, is in German: *wann*.

2. When (whenever) referring to a custom, not to a *single* past fact, is translated by: *wenn*, and not by: *als*; when may then be substituted by «whenever».

**Ex.** Ich weiß nicht, wann er kommt. Wir gingen nicht auf die Jagd, wenn es regnete.

3. If in a compound sentence the subordinate sentence precedes the principal sentence, in the latter an inversion takes place, that is the subject follows the verb.

**Ex.** Wenn diesen Nachmittag schönes Wetter ist, wollen wir ausgehen.

*ehe* before, *bis* until, *daß* that, *nachdem* after.

**Aufgabe 105.**

1. Do you know, when your parents will come home? Do you know, when the English letters are delivered? He did not know, when the train started for England. Can you tell me, when the English mail arrives in Ostend? The postman could not tell me, when the English mail starts from Ostend to England.

2. They went skating every day, when the ice was good. When I was in Germany, I got up, when my friends got up; I breakfasted, when they breakfasted; I began to work, when they began. When I could not do my work, they helped me; when they could not do theirs, I helped them. She had such a good memory, that she knew her poems by heart, when she had read them over three or four times. The unlucky fellow always lost, when he played for (um) money, and won, when they played for (zum) pleasure. When you play, you should play for pleasure, not for money. When we had finished our task, we used to play. She generally got a head-ache, when she went to a concert. When you are shortsighted, why do you not wear spectacles? He used to put on his spectacles, when he read.

3. When I had done my work, I took a walk. When I was ill, I was not allowed to drink wine. When the battle was lost, the enemy fled in disorder. When I get my new boots, I will give away my old ones. When I get my new suit, I will give away my old clothes. When the weather was fine, we used to play in the play-ground, and when it rained, in the room.

to deliver (letters) ausgeben

to start for abgehen nach (s.)

mail die Post

to help helfen (a, o)

to know (a poem) können

unlucky unglücklich

for pleasure zum Vergnügen

to have finished fertig haben

to use pflegen

to put on aufsetzen (s.)

to flee fliehen (o, o)

disorder die Unordnung

to give away verschenken

suit der Anzug 1.

**Aufgabe 106.**

People drink, when they are thirsty. People eat, when they are hungry and when they have something to eat. You may play, when you have finished your work. My parents were not at home, when we arrived. It was twelve

o'clock, when we came home. It was six o'clock, when I awoke. It was late, when I got up. It was too late, when we came to the station, the train had just started. The steamer arrived only, when the train had started. People are allowed to drink water and milk, when they have [a] fever, but they are not allowed to drink coffee, tea or wine, or to eat meat, when the fever is high (stark). Peace was made, when the capital had been taken. A child is an orphan, when his parents are dead. Orphans have guardians, when (as long as) they are under age. When you are not hungry, you must not eat. I could not work, before I had breakfasted. I am uneasy, till I know, that my brother has safely arrived in America. She was uneasy, until she knew, that her son had safely arrived. He waited, till his father came back. He put off his work, until it was too late to finish it. We came home, before it was quite dark. Napoleon did not order his army to retreat from Moskow, till winter was near. He will not get up, before it is day-light. She read, till she could no more see. Some people will not go to bed, till they are sleepy. Wait, till the thunderstorm is over. Some people have the bad habit to read, after (nachdem) they have gone to bed. The boy always knew his lessons so well, that his master set him as a model to his class. When people have a head-ache, they can not hear music. Some people suffer so much from head-ache, that they can not do anything, that they can not even eat anything, when it is very bad (stark). Are (wissen) you sure, that the postman had no letter for me? When he had finished the book, he lent it me. When you have read the newspaper, please let me have it. You may stay here, till you are called. We see the lightening, before we hear the thunder.

to awake aufwachen (s.), er-  
wachen  
station der Bahnhof 1  
to start abfahren, abgehen (s.)  
only (time) erst  
to make peace Frieden schließen (o, o)  
guardian der Vormund 2  
under age unmündig  
uneasy unruhig

day-light tag, hell  
some people manche Leute  
over (adv.) vorüber  
habit die Gewohnheit  
to set aufstellen (s.)  
as a model als Muster  
not even sogar nicht  
to suffer from leiden an (i, i)  
sure gewiß

to put off aufschieben (o, o) s.  
to finish fertig machen  
to order befehlen (a, o) dat.

to finish (book) auslesen (a, e) s.  
let have geben (a, e)  
to retreat sich zurückziehen (s.).

### 63. Section.

#### Subordinate conjunctions II.

Als, da — so, weil, indem, nachdem, seit, während,  
when, as, since, because, in, whilst, after, since, whilst,  
so long as long as, so bald as soon as.

The present participle is very little used in German, and only as an adjective. Der lachende Frühling, ein schneidender Wind, eine drückende Luft, die Luft ist drückend, eine solche Beleidigung ist kränkend, eine reizende Landschaft. Der Knabe kam weinend zu mir.

|                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| lachend smiling     | kränkend mortifying  |
| schneidend piercing | reizend charming     |
| drückend close      | Landschaft landscape |
| Beleidigung offence | weinend crying.      |

Used as a verb, one of the following conjunctions is employed: als, da, weil, nachdem, indem.

Ex. 1. Being lately at your brother's, I gave something to his children, als ich neulich bei Ihrem Bruder war, gab ich seinen Kindern etwas. 2. Having no money, I can not lend you any, da ich kein Geld habe, so kann ich Ihnen nichts leihen. 3. Being ill, I can not work, weil ich krank bin, kann ich nicht arbeiten. 4. Having eaten supper, she went to bed, nachdem sie zu Abend gegessen hatte, ging sie zu Bett. 5. In speaking one learns to speak, and in writing to write, indem man spricht, lernt man sprechen, und indem man schreibt, schreiben.

1. Als refers to a definite event of past time.

2. Da implies a reason, from which an inference is drawn; da in the antecedent, the subsequent principal phrase often begins with: so.

3. Weil expresses a real cause.

4. Nachdem states an action that was finished, when another commenced.

5. Indem states that an event is simultaneous with another event.



**Aufgabe 107.**

1. Being at the theatre the other day, I had the pleasure of meeting (inf.) a friend, whom I had not seen for [a] long time (jit). Seeing his creditor, he looked quite embarrassed. Having [a] fever, he was not allowed to drink wine or coffee. The king having died, his son was proclaimed as (ju) his successor. Oliver Cromwell being dead, the Stuarts soon ascended the English throne again. The Romans, when taking Carthage, had to fight for (um) each street, for each house. The uncle having died, his nephew inherited his fortune.

2. The weather being fine, we may take a walk. The book being interesting, I will read it a second time. The water being warm, we can soon bathe. My razor not being sharp, I must send for (nach) a barber. The room being cold, the fire must have been out for some time. Having not lately seen him, I am afraid (baß) he is ill. Being no physician, he does not know how (fürmen) to cure the illness. The blossoms being frozen, it must have been very cold. Being a German, he must understand the German language.

3. He can not walk, having sprained his foot. Having a bad cough, he will keep the room [for] some days. Having [a] bad head-ache, she will not go to the concert. He drank water, the doctor having forbidden him to drink wine. The ice not being strong, it broke and some skaters tumbled into the water. The master was angry with me, for (weil) having done my exercise so badly. The sea being rough, I have put off my departure.

4. Having lost the battle, the enemy fled in disorder. The capital having been taken, peace was made. The leaves having fallen from the trees, winter will soon begin. The letter being sealed, you may take it to the post-office.

5. Saying so, he left the room. He left the room, whistling a well known air. In teaching, one learns. Dying she smiled, and the smile remained on her pale features. In reading liberal papers, you (man) will imperceptibly adopt liberal principles. In seeing good works of art, you (man) improve your taste. In hearing good music, you will

improve your ear. In being conquered, I will learn to conquer, said Peter the Great after the battle of Narwa.

the other day neulich  
creditor der Gläubiger  
to look aussehen (irr.) s.  
embarrassed verlegen  
to proclaim ausrufen (te, u)  
successor der Nachfolger  
to ascend bestiegen (irr.)  
to inherit erben  
fortune das Vermögen  
razor das Rasiermesser  
barber der Barbier  
for some time eine Zeit lang  
to sprain verrenken  
cough der Husten  
skater der Schlittschuhläufer  
tumble fallen (irr.)  
angry böse  
sea die See

to be rough hoch gehen (irr.)  
departure die Abreise  
to whistle pfeifen (i, t)  
known bekannt  
air die Melodie  
to teach lehren  
to smile lächeln  
pale blaß  
feature der Zug 1  
liberal liberal  
imperceptibly unmerklich  
adopt annehmen (s.)  
principle der Grundsatz 1  
work of art das Kunstwerk 1  
improve verbessern, bilden  
taste der Geschmack  
to conquer besiegen, flegen  
physician der Arzt 1

to cure heilen.

### Aufgabe 108.

The small pox epidemic is not half so dangerous, since inoculating has been introduced. He slept, whilst we worked. Whilst we others worked, they went into the garden. People do not use to talk much, whilst they are playing at chess. We took a refreshing bath in the river every day, whilst the weather was so hot. He is extravagant, since he inherited a large fortune. She was knitting, whilst she read to the children. As long [as] a man can eat and sleep, he is not seriously ill. Orphans have a guardian, as long [as] they are under age. As soon [as] he comes home, he takes off his boots. As soon [as] he sees me, he begins to talk with me. He is ashamed, that his clothes are dirtied. I remember that he once called on me. I wonder that you will drink no water, when you are thirsty. I have heard, that your brother has arrived. He relates, what is not true, and does what is not right. He has become brown from having continually exposed himself to the sun (davon, daß). He has become ill from having sat up many nights (davon, daß). He has rescued himself by having jumped through (aus) the window (dadurch, daß). He sup-

ports himself by copying notes (baburč, baß). I know him from his limping (baran, baß). My master was angry [with me] for having done my exercise so badly (barüber, baß). He is so ill, that he can no more speak. The storm was so hard, that some trees were knocked down. The cold was so great, that some men were frozen. I learned my poem, while my brother wrote a letter. The boy was whistling a tune, as he went along the road. As soon as I have read the book, I will send it to you. No sooner had he heard of the misfortune, than he wrote a letter to inform me of it (taum — {o). After he had been nine months in London, he went to Paris. Since we have been in the country, the health of the children has improved a great deal. Many a spendthrift gets poor, before he learns economy. Ere she was fully recovered from her illness, she had [to endure] another attack. We seldom attain virtue, until we have been purified by affliction. Before dying, Jacob took leave of his sons giving each of them a particular blessing.

small pox die Pocken  
epidemy die Epidemie  
vaccination das Impfen  
introduce einführen (s.)  
extravagant verschwenderisch  
to knit stricken  
fortune das Vermögen  
to take off ausziehen, ab-  
nehmen (irr.) s.  
to call on besuchen  
to relate erzählen  
continually beständig  
to expose aussetzen (s.)  
to sit up wachen  
to rescue retten  
note (music) die Note  
to limp hinken

to knock down umwerfen (irr.) s.  
to be frozen erfrieren (o, o)  
tune die Melodie  
along the road die Straße entlang  
to inform benachrichtigen  
to improve sich bessern  
spendthrift der Verschwender  
economy die Sparbarkeit  
to recover herstellen (s.)  
the attack der Anfall  
to attain virtue tugendhaft werden  
to purify läutern, reinigen  
affliction die Trübsal  
leave der Abschied  
particular besond  
blessing der Segen  
to dirty beschmutzen  
to support one's self sich ernähren.

#### 64. Section.

The English present participle rendered by an infinitive in German.

Ex. The hope of seeing my parents so soon, die Hoff-  
nung meine Eltern so bald zu sehen. We intend going to the

seaside this summer, wir gedenken diesen Sommer in ein Seebad zu gehen.

**Aufgabe 109.**

When shall I have the pleasure of seeing you again? The surprise of meeting his parents so unexpectedly was so great, that for a long time he could not say a word. His remarks were so strange, that I could not forbear laughing at them. I detest (it) copying letters the whole day. We deferred writing our exercises, till it was too late. When will you cease plaguing me with requests, that I can not grant? I regret having promised, what I now find impossible to fulfil. They can not endure living in a place, where they are separated from all their friends. Wicked children dread meeting their parents again after some absence from home, while good and kind-hearted children long to see them. My uncle purposes sending his family into the country for (to have) a change of air, but they prefer staying in (the) town. May I have the honour of seeing (accompanying) you [at] home. It is not worth the trouble of going there so late. Have you neglected sending the letters to the post-office? I intended taking them there this afternoon, but I have entirely forgotten it. You may continue (weiter) playing for (noch) half an hour, but then you must come in to learn your lessons. Dancing is a healthy exercise. Drinking cold water, when you are hot, is not advisable. Laughing, when people talk seriously to you, is improper. You may leave off playing now, I propose taking a walk into the wood. Please, do not keep me waiting. He kept me waiting for more than half an hour. I will not keep you waiting for (auf) letters, I will write punctually every week.

surprise die Überraschung  
unexpected unerwartet  
remark die Bemerkung  
strange seltsam  
to forbear unterlassen (ie, a)  
to detest verabscheuen  
to cease aufhören (s.)  
to plague plagen  
request die Bitte  
to regret bedauern

to fulfil erfüllen  
to endure ertragen (u, a)  
to separate trennen  
to dread sich fürchten  
to put off aufschieben (o, a) s.  
absence die Abwesenheit  
kind-hearted liebevoll  
to long verlangen nach  
to purpose beabsichtigen  
change of air der Luftwechsel

to prefer vorziehen (o, o) s.  
to accompany begleiten  
worth the trouble der Mühe wert  
exercise die Bewegung  
advisable rathsam  
grant gewähren

improper unständig  
to leave off aufhören (s.)  
to propose vorschlagen (u, a) s.  
to keep waiting warten lassen  
punctually pünktlich  
neglect veräumen.

## 65. Section.

### Subordinate conjunctions III.

Obgleich (obwohl, obchon) — so doch } though,  
Wenn gleich (wenn auch, wenn schon) — so doch } although  
Zwar — doch.

Wenn auch, obgleich are subordinate conjunctions. When the subordinate sentence precedes, the principal sentence mostly begins with so and takes always doch. Wenn gleich, wenn auch are generally, obgleich, obchon, obwohl are sometimes separated. Zwar has the same signification as obgleich, but is a coordinate conjunction, which does not remove the verb to the end.

Ex. Obgleich es ihm unangenehm ist, wenn es ihm auch unangenehm ist, so muß ich ihn doch auf seine Fehler aufmerksam machen, though he does not like it, I must remind him of his faults. Zwar ist es ihm unangenehm, es ist ihm zwar unangenehm, doch muß ich ihn auf seine Fehler aufmerksam machen.

### Aufgabe 110.

Though the man is not rich, he is very charitable. Though he is very old, he works the whole day. Though the sun shines, it is cold. Although you dislike it, I must reprimand you [for] your faults. Though I [shall] be invited, I do not go to the feast. Although brothers sometimes quarrel, yet they are fond of each other. Though Charles XII. had only 8000 Swedes, and Peter the Great had 80,000 Russians in the battle of Narwa, Charles gained the battle. Though Peter lost this battle, he was not discouraged. Though Miltiades and Themistocles had deserved well of Athens, their fellow-citizens were ungrateful to them, and Themistocles died in exile. Though Socrates was a good and virtuous man, he was sentenced to [drink] the

cup of poison. Though the Spartans were very brave, they were repeatedly conquered by the Thebans. Though Egypt is only a long valley of little breadth and a small country, it was populous and powerful in antiquity. I will try my luck once more, though I fear, it does no more smile [on] me as before. I am much obliged to you for your kind offer, although I must decline [accepting] it. Though the lake of Titicaca in the Andes of Peru is (liegt) more than 12000 feet above the sea, its banks are fertile and inhabited. Though there is much more coffee grown in South-America than in Java and Ceylon, the former is much inferior to (than) the latter. Though America is three or four times as large as Europe, Europe has three or four times as many inhabitants as America, and is much more powerful.

|                                     |                                   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| to reprimand for verweisen (ie, ie) | Egypt Ägypten                     |
| fault der Fehler                    | breadth die Breite                |
| to invite einladen (u, a) s.        | populous volkreich                |
| feast das Fest 1                    | antiquity das Altertum            |
| to quarrel sich streiten            | luck das Glück                    |
| to be fond of } sich gern haben     | to be obliged verbunden sein      |
| each other }                        | offer das Anerbieten              |
| Swede der Schwede                   | to decline ablehnen               |
| discouraged entmutigt               | lake der See                      |
| fellow-citizen Mitbürger            | to sentence, condemn verurtheilen |
| ungrateful to undankbar gegen       | bank das Ufer                     |
| to deserve well of sich verdient    | fertile fruchtbar                 |
| machen um                           | to inhabit bewohnen               |
| exile die Verbannung                | to be grown wachsen (u, a)        |
| cup of poison der Giftbecher        | the former der erstere            |
| Spartan der Spartaner               | the latter der letztere           |
| repeatedly wiederholt               | inferior geringer                 |
| Theban der Thebaner                 | inhabitant der Einwohner.         |

## 66. Section.

Obgleich, ob auch, wenn gleich, wenn auch IV.

Of the conjunctions wenn auch, ob auch, wenn gleich, obgleich the first parts wenn and ob are often dropped. In this case the subordinate phrase must precede and begin with the verb, and the subsequent principal phrase with the conjunction so.

Ex. 1. Wenn (ob) es dir auch unangenehm ist, so muß ich

dir doch deinen Fehler verweisen. 2. Ist es dir auch unangenehm, so muß ich zc.

1. Wenn Brüder auch zuweilen mit einander streiten, so haben sie sich doch immer lieb. 2. Streiten auch Brüder zuweilen mit einander, so haben sie sich doch immer lieb.

### Aufgabe 111.

Translate Aufgabe 110 so that wenn and ob are dropped, or use the conjunction zwar — doch.

## 67. Section.

### Subjunctive.

#### I. The formation of the subjunctive.

##### Present.

|                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                    |                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. I have<br>I may have<br>ich habe<br>du habest<br>er habe<br>wir haben<br>ihr habet<br>sie haben | 2. I be<br>may be<br>ich sei<br>du seiest<br>er sei<br>wir seien<br>ihr seiet<br>sie seien                         | 3. I become<br>may become<br>ich werde<br>du werdest<br>er werde<br>wir werden<br>ihr werdet<br>sie werden                                                       | 4. I bring<br>may bring<br>ich bringe<br>du bringest<br>er bringe<br>wir bringen<br>ihr bringet<br>sie bringen |
| 5. I go<br>may go<br>ich gehe<br>du gehst<br>er gehe<br>wir gehen<br>ihr geht<br>sie gehen         | 6. I speak<br>may speak<br>ich spreche<br>du sprichst<br>er spreche<br>wir sprechen<br>ihr sprecht<br>sie sprechen | 7. I can<br>ich könne<br>8. I will<br>ich wolle<br>9. I must<br>ich müsse<br>10. I shall<br>ich solle<br>11. I may<br>ich möge<br>12. I am allowed<br>ich dürfe. |                                                                                                                |

##### Imperfect.

|                                                                |                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. I had<br>should have<br>ich hätte<br>du hättest<br>er hätte | 2. I were<br>should be<br>ich wäre<br>du wärest<br>er wäre              | 3. I became<br>should become<br>ich würde<br>du würdest<br>er würde                                                                                                                             | 4. I brought<br>should bring<br>ich brächte<br>du brächtest<br>er brächte |
| 5. I went<br>should go<br>ich ginge<br>du gingest<br>er ginge  | 6. I spoke<br>should speak<br>ich spräche<br>du sprächest<br>er spräche | u. f. w.<br>7. I could<br>ich könnte<br>8. I would<br>ich wollte<br>9. I must<br>ich müßte<br>10. I should<br>ich sollte<br>11. I might<br>ich möchte<br>12. I should be allowed<br>ich dürfte. |                                                                           |

Perfect.

ich habe gehabt, gebracht, gesprochen; ich sei gewesen, geworden, gegangen;  
ich habe gekonnt, gewollt, gemußt, gesollt, gemocht, geburft.

Pluperfect.

ich hätte gehabt, gebracht, gesprochen; ich wäre gewesen, geworden, gegangen;  
ich hätte gekonnt, gewollt, gemußt, gesollt, gemocht, geburft.

Future I.

ich werde haben, sein, werden, bringen, gehen, sprechen,  
du werdest haben, sein, werden, bringen, gehen, sprechen,  
er werde haben, sein, werden, bringen, gehen, sprechen,  
u. f. w.  
ich werde können, wollen, müssen, sollen, mögen, dürfen.

Future II.

ich werde gehabt, gebracht, gesprochen haben; ich werde gewesen,  
geworden, gegangen sein.

1. The present (perfect and future) of the subjunctive is quite regular and formed by dropping the *n* of the infinitive, there is *no* modification of the vowel, the 3<sup>d</sup> person singular is like the 1<sup>st</sup>, but the 2<sup>d</sup> person singular has *est* and 2<sup>d</sup> person plural *et*.

2. The imperfect (pluperfect) of *irregular* verbs is formed by modifying the vowel of the imperfect of the indicative, and adding *e* to the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> person singular. *Regular* verbs do not differ in the imperfect of the subjunctive from the imperfect of the indicative.

II. Use of the subjunctive.

The subjunctive is in the German language much more used than in English, and therefore offers some difficulty to a foreigner. It is used to express a *possibility*, not a reality, and chiefly occurs in accessory sentences and in the 3<sup>d</sup> person, in which it particularly differs from the indicative.

Aufgabe 112.

The subjunctive is required:

1. When what a person says, appears *doubtful* or *uncertain*.

Er wird nicht genesen, es sei denn, daß er in ein Bad gehe. Es ist ungewiß, wann er die Reise antreten werde;



auch ist es gleichgültig, ob er reise oder zu Hause bleibe. Man frage ihn mündlich oder man schreibe an ihn, er giebt keine Antwort. Wer er auch sei, was er auch gethan habe, ich kann ihm nicht feind sein. Es ist keiner, der ihm gleiche. Suche einen, der dir helfe. Es ist ihm heilsam, daß er reise.

2. When a *wish or intention* is expressed (in English the *infinitive*, in German the conjunctions *daß*, *damit* with the *subjunctive*).

Ich wünsche, daß er bald komme, und ich hoffe, daß er bei uns bleibe. Ich rate dir, daß du nachgehest. Der Arzt hat verordnet, daß er Wein trinke. Er spart, damit er nicht Mangel leide. Er spricht so laut, damit ihn jeder verstehe. Er läuft, damit er warm werde. Der Vater wünscht, daß sein Sohn studiere. Er hofft, daß er ein tüchtiger Arzt werde.

3. When the predicate is *quoted as a declaration or opinion* of another person, or even the same person that speaks.

Er sagt, dieser Baum trage keine Frucht. Cäsar berichtet, er sei in Britannien gewesen. Der Knabe sagt, er sei krank; und ich erwiderte, wenn er krank sei, müsse er zum Arzt gehen. Du glaubst, er rede die Wahrheit; andere aber meinen, er lüge. Man glaubte früher, die Sonne gehe um die Erde, und die Erde stehe still. Er sagt, daß er nicht kommen könne, nicht kommen wolle, dürfe. Sage ihm, daß er gehen dürfe, müsse, solle, möge, könne. Ich erlaubte ihm, daß er gehen dürfe, riet ihm aber, daß er nicht zu lange bleibe. Ich versprach ihm, daß ich für ihn sorgen wolle. Er behauptet, daß er noch Zeit genug habe. Der Kaufmann hat sich von seinem Geschäft zurückgezogen, weil er glaubte, daß er Vermögen genug habe, um angenehm leben zu können. Der Vater versprach seinem Sohn, daß er auf die Universität gehen könne, wenn er fleißig sei und sein Examen gut bestehe.

genesen to recover  
es sei denn unless  
die Reise journey  
antreten start for  
gleichgültig indifferent  
ob whether  
mündlich by word of mouth  
wer auch whoever  
was auch whatever  
gleiches to resemble

suchen to seek  
heilsam wholesome  
nachgeben to give in  
feind angry with  
sparen to save  
damit in order that  
der Mangel the want  
leiden to suffer  
tüchtig clever  
die Frucht fruit

|               |           |                   |                 |
|---------------|-----------|-------------------|-----------------|
| ungewiß       | uncertain | sorgen für        | to take care of |
| berichten     | to report | behaupten         | to assert       |
| erwidern      | to reply  | erlauben          | to permit       |
| reden         | to speak  | das Geschäft      | business        |
| die Wahrheit  | truth     | sich zurückziehen | to retire       |
| meinen        | to think  | Vermögen          | fortune         |
| lügen         | to lie    | angenehm          | at ease         |
| raten (ie, a) | to advise | bestehen (a, a)   | to pass.        |

From the examples under number 3 is to be seen, that the Germans always use the subjunctive in *indirect quotations* with or without the conjunction daß. *Without* daß, the position of the words is that of a *principal* sentence; *with* the conjunction daß, the position of the words is that of the *subordinate* sentence.

Indirect quotations, deviating from the English, are in the *same tense* as the corresponding *direct quotation* would require. When in English the imperfect and pluperfect, in German the present and perfect is used.

Ex. Cäsar berichtet: Ich bin in Britannien gewesen (perf.). Cäsar berichtet, er sei in Britannien gewesen. Der Vater versprach seinem Sohn: Du kannst auf die Universität gehen (pres.). Der Vater versprach seinem Sohn, er könne auf die Universität gehen.

Translate the preceding sentences of no 1, 2, 3 into English and back into German.

### Aufgabe 113.

|            |           |                       |                           |
|------------|-----------|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| wo auch    | wherever  | wann auch             | whenever                  |
| wohin auch | wherever  | was er auch wolle     | whatever he may want      |
| wie auch   | howsoever | so viel er auch wolle | ever so much he may want. |

Die Kinder waren sehr traurig; sie fürchteten, ihr Vater werde bald sterben. Sie hatten gehofft, er werde noch recht lang leben. Ich erwartete, er werde heute kommen, aber er ist nicht erschienen. Manche denken, es sei unmöglich, den Nordpol mit Schiffen oder Schlitten zu erreichen, man müsse versuchen, mittels eines Luftballons dahin zu kommen. Ich rate dir, daß du thuest, was dein Vater wünscht. Der Schüler hofft, daß er zu Ostern sein Examen machen und Offizier werden könne. Der unartige Knabe behauptet, daß er die Wahrheit gesagt habe. Glauben Sie nicht, daß er gelogen habe? Er wolle oder wolle nicht, er soll gehen. Mein Sohn behauptet, er sei in der Kirche gewesen, haben Sie ihn dort gesehen? Es koste, was es wolle, ich muß

das Buch haben. So viel er auch arbeite, er wird schwerlich sein Examen bestehen. Was er auch sage, wie kann man einem Lügner glauben? Wohin er auch fliehe, die Strafe wird ihn ereilen. Alle glauben, ein solches Unternehmen sei zu gewagt. Der Arzt verordne, was er wolle, der Patient befolgt nicht seine Vorschriften. Ich bin sehr durstig, ich trinke den Wein, er sei süß oder sauer. Ich bin so hungrig, ich esse, was es auch sei. Jeder gehe seines Weges. Er rede die Wahrheit und gestehe, daß er gefehlt hat. Er spreche, so viel er wolle, aber er arbeite auch. Du versicherst mich, du habest meinen Freund gesehen, aber irrst du dich nicht? Er erzählte mir, er sei zweimal in England gewesen, habe sich lange in London aufgehalten und kenne die Stadt sehr genau. Er versichert, London habe ihm besser gefallen als Paris, auch gebe es in London viele, und vielleicht noch bedeutendere Kunstwerke als in Paris. Man sagt, der ägyptische Obelisk in London sei kleiner als der in Paris.

Eines schickt sich nicht für alle; sehe jeder, wie er's treibe, sehe jeder, wo er bleibe, und wer steht, daß er nicht falle. (Göthe.)

|                            |                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| erwarten to expect         | die Vorschrift prescription         |
| der Schlitten the sledge   | reden to speak                      |
| unmöglich impossible       | gestehen to avow, confess           |
| mittels (gen.) by means of | fehlen to do wrong                  |
| der Luftballon balloon     | versichern to assure                |
| behaupten to maintain      | sich irren to be mistaken           |
| schwerlich hardly          | erzählen to tell, relate            |
| der Lügner liar            | sich aufhalten (s.) to stay         |
| fliehen (o, o) to flee     | genau accurately, well              |
| die Strafe punishment      | bedeutend valuable, important       |
| ereilen to overtake        | Kunstwerk work of art               |
| das Unternehmen enterprise | sich schicken to be suitable        |
| wagen to risk              | treiben (ie, ie) to get on, to act. |

#### Aufgabe 114.

Translate the preceding exercise back from English into German.

#### Aufgabe 115.

Tell the beggar, that she should (pres.) go, I could not give her anything now. He said, that he had been (perf.) at school. History reports, that the Phoenicians had sailed (perf.) in their ships as far as England, even to the Baltic. My friend relates, he had sailed in a steamer to Spain, had suffered shipwreck in the gulf of Biscay and

had scarcely saved his bare life, most passengers had perished in the sea. The man sends you word, that he had been here, but as he had not met you and must by all means speak to you, he would come (fut.) again after dinner. My friend maintains, he had seen me this morning and had met me before the gate, and yet I have not been out of the house. His master assured me, that your son had amended, that he was industrious now, and belonged to the best [boys] of his class. Who, after a long and severe winter, does not wish, that spring may soon come and the sun may shine bright and warm again down from the blue clear sky? Who, and be he ever so rich, does not wish, that he may be (become) richer still? Which mother, by the sick-bed of her child, does not pray, that it may soon recover? Which mother, by the death-bed of her darling, does not hope, that she may see him again in heaven? Which weary [man] does not expect, that a recreating sleep will strengthen him anew and refresh him? He who demands, that we (man) revere him for his wealth, has also a right to demand, that we revere a mountain, that has gold in it. He may say ever so much, I can no more believe him. He may study ever so much now, it is too late, he will not ascend at school. I am very hungry, let me have something to eat, whatever it be. Tell him, I must see (sprechen) him, when or wherever it be. Which sick [man] does not hope, that medical assistance and medicine will restore him? I am too busy now, I can see nobody, whoever it be.

beggar die Bettlerin  
to report berichten  
to sail fahren (u, a)  
as far as bis nach  
even to sogar bis in  
the Baltic die Ostsee  
to suffer erleiden (litt, i)  
shipwreck der Schiffbruch 1  
gulf der Golf 1  
Biscay Biscaya  
scarcely kaum  
to save retten  
naked, bare nackt  
send word sagen lassen

death-bed das Totenbett  
to pray beten  
to recover wieder gesund werden  
darling der Liebling  
weary müde  
recreating erquickend  
strengthen anew neu stärken  
to refresh erfrischen  
medical ärztlich  
assistance die Hülfe  
to restore herstellen  
to demand verlangen  
to revere verehren  
wealth der Reichtum 2

|                                 |                                 |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| to meet treffen (a, a) begegnen | for, on account of wegen (gen.) |
| by all means durchaus           | ever so much noch so viel       |
| to amend sich bessern           | to ascend steigen, auf —        |
| ever so rich noch so reich      | let have geben                  |
| sick-bed das Krankenbett        | too busy zu sehr beschäftigt.   |

### 68. Section.

#### Conditional.

##### Present conditional.

|                  |        |       |         |          |        |          |
|------------------|--------|-------|---------|----------|--------|----------|
| I should (might) | have,  | be,   | become, | bring,   | go,    | speak    |
| ich würde        | haben, | sein, | werden, | bringen, | gehen, | sprechen |
| du würdest       | haben  | ic.   |         |          |        |          |
| er würde         | haben  | ic.   |         |          |        |          |

##### Past conditional.

I should have had, brought, spoken; been, become, gone.  
 ich würde gehabt, gebracht, gesprochen haben; gewesen, geworden, gegangen sein.

#### Aufgabe 116.

##### Practise.

I should have seen him, would he have learned it? would you have sent it? they would not have said so, he would not have called me. I should have been there, would he have fallen? would he have died? would you have remained here? would he have become blind? they would not have run so fast, I should have taken a drive to day, he would have gone there on horseback. Would you have eaten such bread? I should not have carried the parcel, he would not have gone, he would not have awoke (aufwachen). I should have sent the letter. I should have thought, I should have gone by railway, we should have returned in a (mit dem) steamer, we should have got rid of him (los werden), he would have become old, we should have slept well, we should have paid for our passage (die Fahrt), we should have danced last night, we should have skated, I should have taken a walk, what would have become of (aus) him?

#### III. Use of the conditional.

1. The conditional is used to express that an action, which is *not* real, is *supposed* to be real:

2. The present conditional corresponds with the imperfect of the subjunctive, the past conditional with the pluperfect of the subjunctive. If the antecedent begins with the conjunction *if*, *wenn*, the subsequent sentence frequently begins with the corresponding conjunction *so*.

3. The imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive are often used instead of the conditional.

4. The imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive are used to express a wish.

5. *Wenn* (falls, im Fall), if (in case), connected with a *past* tense always governs the *subjunctive*, connected with a *present* or *perfect* it always governs the *indicative*.

**Ex.** 1. 2. 3. *Wenn* du aufrichtig wärest, so glaubte man dir und alles stünde (imperf.) anders. *Wenn* die Erde flach wäre, so würde die Sonne an allen Orten zugleich aufgehen. *Wenn* die Störche, die Schwalben, die Nachtigallen und andere Zugvögel im Winter bei uns blieben, so würden sie verhungern. *Wenn* man Gold machen könnte, so würden wir bald eine große Menge dieses Metalls haben und das Gold verlore seinen Wert.

4. O daß doch alle, welche Lust zum Lernen haben, auch die Gelegenheit dazu hätten, und daß doch diejenigen, welche Gelegenheit haben, Lust hätten! Hättest du doch geschwiegen!

5. *Wenn* er nicht krank ist, warum läßt er den Doktor kommen! *Wenn* er nicht krank wäre, würde er aufgestanden sein.

aufrichtig sincere  
stehen to stand, be  
anders different  
flach flat  
der Ort place  
zugleich at the same time  
aufgehen (s.) to rise  
der Storch 1 stork  
die Nachtigall nightingale

der Zugvogel bird of passage  
verhungern to starve  
die Menge quantity  
der Wert 1 value  
die Lust a mind  
die Gelegenheit opportunity  
schweigen (ie, ie) to be silent  
kommen lassen to send for  
aufstehen (s.) to get up.

### Aufgabe 117.

Practise (use the imperfect and pluperfect of the subjunctive instead of the conditional).

If it should rain (imperf.), if it had rained hard; if it were late, if it had been late; if he came here, if he had come here; if he became ill, if he had become ill. If he should go there (imperf.), if he had gone there; if he re-

mained long, if he had remained long; if he wrote to day, if he had written yesterday; if you brought it, if you had brought it. If you paid for the ring, if you had not paid for it; if you had time, if you had had time; if you knew it, if you had not known it; if you knew him, if you had known him. If it were cold, if it had been cold; if you bought it, if you had bought it; if you [should] read it, if you had read it; if he went on horseback, if he had gone on horseback; if you went by a steamer, if you had gone by a steamer. If it snowed, if it had snowed; if he cut himself, if he had cut himself; if he perished (umkommen), if he had perished; if he died, if he had died; if he took, if he had taken; if it burned, if it had burnt; if he threw, if he had thrown; if he named, if he had named (nennen); if he spoiled it, if he had spoiled it (verberben).

Some *irregular* imperfects of the subjunctive:

brennen, nennen, kennen: brennete, nennete, kennete;

stehen, werfen, sterben, verderben, baden: stünde, würde, stürbe, verbürbe, bade.

#### Aufgabe 118.

I should do you this favor, if it were possible. If I were in (an) your place, I should speak to the man or write to (an) him. If he had the treasures of Croesus, he would not be happy. If this poor man were ever (noch) so rich, he could not be happier. He would be happier, if he left off gambling. He would have been happier, if he had left off gambling. If you knew, how ill I am, you would not be astonished to find me in bed. He would not have done it, if he had foreseen the result. He would not have begun the lawsuit, if he had foreseen the issue. I should think myself ungrateful, did I not consider you as (als) my benefactor. I should wish (wollen) (imperf.) you would do (imperfect) it. I should wish (wollen), you would go (imperf.) there. I should wish, you had done it. I should wish, you had gone there. I should have wished (wünschen, pluperf.) to see him, if it had been possible. I should like (mögen) to read this book, if I had only time.

I should wish (wollen), I could read a German book. I should wish, I could speak and write German correctly. If he had friends, he would be happier. If he were rich, he would travel much. If you worked more and if you did not speak English so much, you would speak German fluently. Why has your sister not done her exercises? She would have done them, if she had not been prevented. She would learn better, if she had more time, and you would have no reason to complain of her. I should write, if you approved of it. I should have written (pluperf.), if you had approved of it. We should go to church, if the weather was not so bad. We should have gone to church, if the weather had not been so bad. If you listened to my advice, you would thank me for it (once) some day.

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| favor der Gefallen              | benefactor der Wohlthäter         |
| possible möglich                | correctly richtig                 |
| place die Stelle                | to travel reisen                  |
| treasure der Schatz 1           | fluently fließend                 |
| to leave off aufgeben (s.)      | to prevent abhalten (s.)          |
| to foresee voraussehen (s.)     | reason der Grund 1, die Ursache   |
| the result die Folgen           | to complain of sich beklagen über |
| lawsuit der Prozeß 1            | to approve of billigen            |
| issue der Ausgang               | to listen to folgen (dat.)        |
| ungrateful undankbar            | advice der Rat                    |
| to consider as ansehen als (s.) | to thank danken (dat.)            |
| once, some day einst, einstens. |                                   |

### Aufgabe 119.

I should buy that horse, if I had money enough. I should have bought the horse, if I had had money enough. If you went there, you would see him. If you had gone there, you would have seen him. If I lend him the book, he would not return it to me. If you had come a little sooner, you would have seen the emperor. If your master knew, what you have done, he would scold you. Take care, you might fall. I should like (mögen) to know, where my pen is. I should like to know, who has taken it. He would like to know, who that officer is. We should like to know, which is the way to the station. I should like to know, what o'clock it is. Would you not like to know, who the lady is, that plays so well? They would like to know the author of that book. Would you learn [to] dance,



if I learned it? I should have learned to dance, if you had learned it. Would you go to England, if I went with you? I should have gone there, if you had gone with me. I should like to know, why I can not speak German so well as you. I will tell you: You would speak it quite as well as I, if you were not so timid. If you had studied your lessons more carefully, you would not be afraid to speak. Would you do me a favor? Tell me, what you want; I would do anything to please you. I want fifty Marks, you would do me a favor, if you would lend them to me. I would do it with all my heart, if I could; but having no money myself (selbst), it is not possible [for] me to do you that favor. Would you go out, if I remained at home? I should willingly remain at home, if you went out. I should not have gone out, if you had not remained at home. Should it be stormy, I would put off my departure. Should the sea be rough, I should only go to morrow. I should be sea-sick with (bei) this rough sea.

|                                     |                                   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| to return zurückgeben (s.)          | to want wünschen                  |
| to scold zanken mit                 | anything alles                    |
| to take care acht geben             | to please you Ihnen zu Gefallen   |
| to like gern mögen                  | with all my heart von Herzen gern |
| author der Verfasser                | willingly gern                    |
| timid schüchtern                    | departure die Abreise             |
| carefully sorgfältig                | rough (sea) unruhig               |
| favor der Gefallen                  | sea-sick seekrank                 |
| to think (with an adj.) halten für. |                                   |

#### Aufgabe 120.

Beispiel: Wäre es möglich, so würde ich Ihnen diesen Gefallen thun. Wäre ich an Ihrer Stelle, so würde ich mit dem Manne sprechen, oder an ihn schreiben.

Write out 25 sentences of the two preceding exercises without putting if, wenn.

#### Aufgabe 121.

Wellington would hardly have gained the battle of Waterloo without Blücher's assistance. Before Blücher's arrival, he exclaimed: I would, it was night, or the Prussians would come (imperf.). If Egmont had listened to Orange's advice and entreaties, he would not have remained

at Brussels after Alba's arrival, and would not have mounted the scaffold. If Philipp had not sent (the) cruel Alba to Brussels, the Netherlands would have remained a Spanish province. Spain would be as rich as England, if the Spaniards had understood to avail themselves properly of their colonies. Without a compass Columbus would not have dared (to) undertake his first great voyage of discovery. Who, in the beginning of this century, would have thought of steamers, that cross the ocean, of railways and electric telegraph! and yet we should think now we could not live without them. Who would (mögen) now do without potatoes, rice, coffee, tea, tobacco! and yet our ancestors lived quite happy without these products. The numerous population of Europe would no more be able to exist, if not other parts of the world provided us with their products. How could we spare the hides of South-America! Without them we should not have leather sufficient for (zu) our boots. With what should we clothe ourselves, if America did not provide us with cotton, Australia with wool? How dear would not bread and meat sometimes be, if we did not get corn and meat from America. How gloomy would be many a room, if the Americans had not those great stores of petroleum! England and Holland would not be so rich, if they had had no colonies. The Turks would no more be at Constantinople, if the European powers would agree, or knew to whom they should give their country. The Chinese and Japanese would not have opened their ports to the Europeans, if they had not been forced to do so (dazu). Alexander the Great would not have conquered the large Persian empire with his small army, if he had not been a great general, and if his army had not been very brave. If book-printing had not been invented, Luther would perhaps not have succeeded in the reformation of the church. In what state would (the) earth be without the light and the heat of the sun.

hardly *schwerlich*, kaum  
assistance *die Hilfe*  
arrival *die Ankunft*  
to exclaim *ausrufen* (ie, u) s.  
entreaty *die Bitte*

population *die Bevölkerung*  
to exist *leben, existieren*  
part of world *der Erdteil* 1  
to provide *versorgen*  
to spare *entbehren*

|                                           |                                 |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| to mount besteigen (ie, ie)               | hides of cattle Rindviehhäute 1 |
| scaffold das Schafott                     | leather das Leder               |
| cruel grausam                             | sufficient hinreichend          |
| province die Provinz                      | to clothe sich kleiden          |
| to avail Nutzen ziehen aus                | cotton die Baumwolle            |
| properly richtig (adj.)                   | wool die Wolle                  |
| colony die Kolonie                        | gloomy düster                   |
| compass der Kompaß                        | store der Vorrat                |
| to dare wagen                             | to agree eins (einig) sein      |
| to undertake unternehmen                  | to open öffnen                  |
| voyage of discovery Entdeckungs-<br>reise | port der Hafen                  |
| beginning der Anfang                      | to force zwingen (a, u)         |
| century das Jahrhundert 1                 | to conquer erobern              |
| to cross durchfahren                      | Persian persisch                |
| ocean der Ozean                           | empire das Reich 1              |
| to do without entbehren                   | general der Feldherr 4          |
| rice der Reis                             | to succeed in gelingen (a, u)   |
| ancestor der Vorfahr 5                    | state der Zustand 1             |
|                                           | heat die Hitze                  |
|                                           | product das Produkt 1.          |

### 69. Section.

Should sollte. Whether, if, ob. In case, falls, im Fall.

1. Sollte es stürmisch sein, so würden wir unsere Abreise aufschieben.

2. Wenn es stürmisch sein sollte, würden wir unsere Abreise aufschieben.

3. Sollten Sie von der Sache etwas Näheres (particulars) hören, so bitte ich, es mir gleich mitzuteilen (inform).

4. Es fragt sich, ob diese Nachrichten zuverlässig (positive) sind.

1. 3. If the antecedent begins with sollte, the subsequent must begin with so.

4. If, whether, expressing an uncertainty, is in German ob, generally governing the indicative (in case: Less. 68, rule 5).

### Aufgabe 122.

I think, the watch will go well (richtig); but should it gain or lose, you know how to regulate it (man). My watch does not go, I do not know, if I have forgotten to wind it up. Try to wind it up, but be careful, in case it is not gone down. Do you know, if the hands are of gold? They look so, but I really can not tell you, whether they are of gold or not; not every thing (alles) that is bright, is

gold. Your clock is usually fast, do you know, if this is also the case to day? I think it is some minutes slow to day. — Ask the shoemaker, if he can make me the boots by (bis) Saturday. Should he not be able (es), I will order them of (bei) another shoemaker. He will make them by that time (bis dahin), but in case they should be finished too late, he will bring them early on Sunday morning. Ask the servant, if the postman has been here and brought a newspaper or letters for me, in case he has not yet been here (da), wait for him, and bring them directly to me in my room. The winter is so mild, it rains so much, it is doubtful, if we shall be able to skate this winter. Should there be no ice in the river, we have the skating-rink in (zur) compensation. Do you think, a skating-rink can compensate for real ice, the narrow closed space for the extended tract of ice with its merry bustle in the open air? Whether Schiller or Goethe was the greater poet, you ask me. We will not dispute about their merits. Each of them was great in his way and many of their works will be immortal. In case your time should allow (it), and you should have sufficient knowledge of (im) German, do not neglect to read Schiller's Tell and Wallenstein, his ballads and his song of the bell, on any account also Goethe's Egmont, his Iphigenia and his Torquato Tasso, and should it not be too hard for you, his Faust. In case the illness should take a critical turn, we (man) must consult another physician. Whether medical skill can save the patient is doubtful; but if we should not do all, that is in our power, for the preservation of his life, we should make ourselves reproaches afterwards. What powerful kings of ancient times had planned and could not carry out, a plain private gentleman of our time has done (it). Lesseps has built the canal of Suez; what if (ob) in his high age he will also succeed in digging through the Isthmus of Panama?

to gain (watch) vorgehen (s.)

to lose » nachgehen (s.)

to regulate regulieren

to wind up aufziehen (s.)

careful vorsichtig

to go down ablaufen (s.)

extended weit

tract of ice die Eisschäre

bustle das Treiben

merry fröhlich

open air die freie Luft

to dispute about streiten über

|                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| hand (watch) der Zeiger             | merit das Verdienst 1            |
| really wirklich                     | sufficient hinlänglich           |
| every thing alles                   | in his way in seiner Art         |
| to be bright glänzen                | immortal unsterblich             |
| clock die Uhr                       | knowledge die Kenntnisse (plur.) |
| to be fast vorgehen                 | critical bedenklich              |
| case der Fall                       | turn die Wendung                 |
| to be slow nachgehen                | to consult zu Rat ziehen         |
| to order bestellen                  | skill die Kunst 1                |
| to be finished fertig werden        | power die Macht 1                |
| mild mild                           | preservation die Erhaltung       |
| doubtful zweifelhaft                | reproach der Vorwurf 1           |
| skating-rink die Rollbahn           | powerful mächtig                 |
| compensation die Entschädigung      | ancient alt                      |
| to compensate entschädigen          | to plan planen                   |
| narrow eng                          | to carry out ausführen           |
| closed geschlossen                  | plain einfach                    |
| space der Raum 1                    | private gentleman ein Privatmann |
| to dig through durchstechen (a, o). |                                  |

## 70. Section.

He could have gone er hätte gehen können  
 he should (ought to) have gone er hätte gehen sollen  
 he would have been allowed to go er hätte gehen dürfen  
 he would have liked to go er hätte gehen mögen.

Er hätte den Arzt können holen lassen; wenn man den Arzt hätte können holen lassen. These auxiliaries, connected with *two* infinitives, always precede them.

### Aufgabe 123.

He could have worked, if he had chosen (gewollt). You should have got up early on (bei) such an occasion. You ought to have punished the boy for his impudence. I should not have liked to be present at a bull-fight. Would you have liked to see such a sight? Could you not have come a little sooner? you have come too late. She should not have paid [for] her new watch, before she knew, that it would go well. How could that miser have survived the loss of his fortune? Could you not have told him the truth? Would he have been permitted to frequent such bad society, if his parents had known it? The boys ought to have attended divine service regularly every Sunday. If the man had not neglected his business, he could not have

lost so much money. Could you not have sent for the book, if you wanted it? Could you not have sent for a bottle of beer, if you were thirsty? Would you not have liked to take a walk this afternoon, if the weather had been fine? Should you not have got this letter copied, before you sent it? Should you not have sent for a physician in such a critical case?

Wicked people must be imprisoned, because they use their liberty to disturb the happiness of their neighbours. If the weather continues [to be] fine, we will take a long walk this afternoon. Suffering (inf.) for folly does nobody good, unless it makes people wiser in future. Unless he is very much changed, I can not allow you to keep company with him. I will leave my penknife here, in case you should want it. You may make this tour, provided your parents will give their consent. Though you have wronged me so very often, yet I will pardon you. Although he is bent with (von) the weight of years, he is still very healthy and strong. Honour your parents, that God may bless you. I will wake you, lest you oversleep yourself. I can not see, that I am more to be blamed than you. I will prove, that I have stated the truth. God grant, that you may succeed in your undertaking. I can not doubt, but (daß nicht) she will be successful. If we find him at home, he is sure to accompany us. He will undertake the job, if he has time. Answer me on your honour, if you have not intended to do him wrong. While I write these lines, her state of health has changed materially. When the ship was going (wollte) to leave the harbour, a violent storm arose, which compelled us to return. When the corn is dry, it will be taken (bringen) to the barn.

occasion die Gelegenheit  
impudence die Frechheit  
to be present at beizohnen (dat.) s.  
bull-fight das Stiergefecht 1  
sight der Anblick 1  
miser der Geizhals 1  
survive überleben  
loss der Verlust 1  
to frequent besuchen  
society die Gesellschaft

tour die Tour  
provided vorausgesetzt daß  
consent die Einwilligung  
to wrong unrecht thun  
to pardon vergeben (ie, ie)  
to bend beugen  
the weight die Last  
to bless segnen  
to wake wecken  
lest damit nicht

|                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| to attend besuchen                | to oversleep sich verschlafen    |
| divine service der Gottesdienst 1 | to prove beweisen (ie, ie)       |
| business das Geschäft 1           | to state berichten               |
| to send for holen lassen          | to grant geben                   |
| to take a walk spazieren gehen    | undertaking das Unternehmen      |
| to get copied abschreiben lassen  | successful glücklich             |
| to send off abschieden (s.)       | to accompany begleiten (r.)      |
| to imprison einfertern (s.)       | job das Ding                     |
| to use gebrauchen                 | to intend beabsichtigen          |
| liberty die Freiheit              | line die Zeile                   |
| to disturb stören                 | state of health der Gesundheits- |
| happiness das Glück               | zustand                          |
| neighbour der Mitmensche 4        | to change sich verändern         |
| to continue bleiben               | materially wesentlich            |
| to suffer leiden                  | to leave verlassen               |
| folly die Thorheit                | harbour der Hafen                |
| unless wenn nicht                 | violent heftig                   |
| in future für die Zukunft         | to arise sich erheben (o, o)     |
| to keep company umgehen (s.)      | to compel zwingen (a, u)         |
| barn die Scheune.                 |                                  |

## 71. Section.

### The familiar imperative.

Come, komme, kommt. Go, gehe, geht. Speak, sprich, spricht. Read, lies, lest. Rest a little, ruhe dich ein wenig aus, ruht euch ein wenig aus. Only fancy, stelle dir nur vor, stellt euch nur vor.

1. It is formed in singular by dropping the *n*, or sometimes the *en* of the infinitive; in plural by adding *t* or *et* to the root of the verb.

2. Verbs with the vowel *e* in the root, which change this vowel in the 2<sup>d</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> person of the present tense into *i* or *ie*, take also *i* or *ie* in the imperative singular, and drop the *en* of infinitive.

Ex. Sprich, lies, wirf, brich, befehl, gib, steh.

3. The separable prefix of separable verbs goes to the end.

4. The corresponding reflective pronouns are *dir* and *dich* in singular and *euch* in plural.

5. The imperative never begins with the adverb.

6. The familiar imperative is used in family life, in the bible, in the pulpit, in schools, and when we speak in general without addressing an individual.

**Aufgabe 124.**

1. (Singular.) Take care my child, do not fall and do not hurt yourself, do not run and do not break the bottle. Your shoes are dirty, go to the servant and have them cleaned. Read loud and distinctly, when you read to a foreigner, and do not speak fast, or he will not understand you. Give these alms to the poor old woman and tell her to wait (baß sie), I want (wollte) to speak to her. Finish your work, and then go to the play-ground and play with the other children. Please, give me a pen. Be so good as (unb) to lend me (imper.) your book. Carry this chair into the garden. Fetch a bottle of beer from the cellar. Do not read that book, it is no good book for you. Say what you think. Do what you can. Take this wood into the barn and then fetch some water from the well. Take (bring) this money to your mother, but do not lose it, and ask her, whether we dine soon; give this newspaper to your brother. When you want money, apply to your father, I have myself too little. Give me my hat and stick, I will go out and come with me. Help yourself (dat.) and God will help you. Always speak the truth, never lie. First think and then speak. Always do your duty, never neglect it. Take care of yourself. Be careful (cautions). Do not sleep, when I read to you. Finish (schließen) your letter now, it must [go] to the post-office now. Imagine you were a king, what would you do? Be attentive, when you do your sums. Read the letter loud. Remind me of my promise, if I should forget it. Remind me of my debt. Be ashamed of your bad conduct. Do not disturb me, while I do my sum. Do not interrupt me with your questions. Always keep your promise, never forget, never break it.

2. (Plural.) Boys, pay attention, be diligent and do your work well, that I may be satisfied with you. Come to me and tell me, what has happened, but speak distinctly and speak (reben) the truth. Be attentive and answer to (auf) my questions. Get up, it is time to rise; wash and dress yourselves and then come to breakfast. Go to bed now, but do not make any noise in your bedroom. Bring me your copy-books and then learn your lessons by heart.



Do not drink any cold water, before you have cooled yourselves, walk quietly, do not run. Fill your glasses, friends, and drink with me (auf) the health of our queen. Be quick, or you will be (come) too late to church. Go in. Do not laugh, I am in full earnest. Please, do not talk, while your sister sings. Do not make so much noise, or you will wake our poor invalid. Listen (pay attention), when I read to you. Always behave so, that you must not be ashamed of your conduct. Give (sing) us a merry song. Repeat the last two lessons and write the next exercise. Love virtue, hate vice. Do not walk too quick, I can not follow you. Do not flatter yourselves that you know much [of] French. Only fancy, they thought me rich.

|                                          |                                               |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| to hurt one's self sich (dat.) wehe thun | to be in full earnest es ganz ernst meinen    |
| to clean reinigen                        | merry lustig                                  |
| distinctly deutlich                      | song das Lied 2                               |
| foreigner der Ausländer                  | vice das Laster                               |
| to finish fertig machen                  | to flatter one's self sich (dat.) schmeicheln |
| well der Brunnen                         | to fancy sich (dat.) vorstellen (s.)          |
| to apply to sich wenden an               | to think rich für reich halten (ie, a)        |
| to imagine sich (dat.) einbilden (s.)    | sum die Rechenaufgabe                         |
| to pay attention acht geben              | to remind of erinnern an                      |
| to happen geschehen (sein)               | the debt die Schuld                           |
| question die Frage                       | to disturb stören                             |
| noise der Lärm                           | to interrupt unterbrechen (a, o).             |
| to cool one's self sich abkühlen         |                                               |

### Aufgabe 125.

#### Passages from the Bible.

Offer unto (dat.) God thanksgiving, and pay' thy vows unto the (dat.) most high and call upon me in the day of trouble: I will deliver thee and thou shalt glorify me. Cast me not away from thy presence and take not thy holy spirit from me. Depart from evil and do good and dwell for evermore. Trust in the Lord and do good, dwell in thy land and support thyself honestly. Commit thy way into the Lord and trust in him, he shall bring it to pass. Bless the Lord, o my soul, and forget not all his benefits. Rejoice greatly (sehr), o (du) daughter of Zion; shout, o (du) daughter of Jerusalem; behold thy king cometh unto thee.

Leave thy gift before the altar, and go thy way (hin), first be reconciled to thy brother, and then come and offer thy gift. [If] thy right hand offend thee, cut it off and cast it from thee, and if thy right eye offend thee, pluck it out and cast it from thee. Love your enemies; bless them, that curse you; do good to them, that hate you; and pray for them, which offend you and persecute you. Judge not, that (auf daß) you be not judged. Ask and (so) it shall be given you; seek, and you shall find; knock, and it shall be opened to you. Give us to day our daily bread, and forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors, and lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil. When thou fastest, anoint thy head and wash thy feet. Behold the fowls of the air, they do not sow, neither do they reap, yet your heavenly father feedeth them. Consider the lilies in the field, how they grow, they toil not, nor do they spin. Seek ye first the kingdom of God and his righteousness. Take no thought for to morrow. Follow me and let the dead bury their dead. Lord, save us, we perish. Arise, take [up] thy bed, and go unto thine house (heim).

|                                    |                             |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| passage die Stelle                 | to cast werfen              |
| from aus                           | to cut off abhauen          |
| the bible die Bibel                | to bless segnen             |
| to offer opfern                    | to curse fluchen            |
| thanksgiving der Dank              | to hate hassen              |
| vow das Gelübde                    | to pray bitten              |
| the most high der Höchste          | to offend beleidigen        |
| to call upon anrufen (s.)          | to persecute verfolgen      |
| the day of trouble die Not         | to judge richten            |
| to deliver erretten                | to ask bitten (a, e)        |
| to glorify preisen                 | to open aufthun (a, a) s.   |
| to cast away verwerfen             | daily täglich               |
| presence das Angesicht             | to lead führen              |
| holy spirit der heilige Geist      | to forgive vergeben (a, e)  |
| to depart from lassen              | to deliver erlösen          |
| to dwell bleiben                   | debtor der Schuldiger       |
| for evermore immerdar              | the evil das Übel           |
| to trust in hoffen auf             | to fast fasten              |
| to support sich nähren             | to anoint salben            |
| honestly reblich                   | the fowls die Vögel         |
| to commit befehlen                 | of the air unter dem Himmel |
| to bring it to pass es wohl machen | to sow säen                 |
| to bless loben                     | nor auch nicht              |
| soul die Seele                     | to reap ernten              |

|                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| to forget vergeffen           | heavenly himmlifch              |
| his benefit was er dir Gutes  | to feed nähren                  |
| gethan hat                    | to consider fchauen             |
| to rejoice fich freuen        | to toil arbeiten                |
| to shout jauchzen             | to spin fpiinnen (a, o)         |
| to behold fehen, an —         | kingdom of God das Reich Gottes |
| to leave laffen               | righteousness die Gerechtigkeit |
| the altar der Altar           | to take thought forgen          |
| gift die Gabe                 | to morrow der kommende Tag      |
| to be reconciled to fich ver- | the dead der Tote               |
| fühnen mit                    | to bury begraben                |
| to offend ärgern              | to save helfen (a, o)           |
| to pluck out außreißen        | to perish verderben (a, o)      |
|                               | to arise aufstehen (a, a) s.    |

## 72. Section.

The prepositions that govern the dative.

1. *Aus* out of, from; 2. *außer* besides, out of; 3. *bei* with, at, by; 4. *innen* within; 5. *entgegen* towards, contrary to; 6. *gegenüber* opposite; 7. *gemäß* according to; 8. *mit* with; 9. *nach* to, after, according to; 10. *nächst* next to; 11. *nebst* together with; 12. *samt* together with; 13. *seit* since; 14. *von* of, from, by; 15. *zu* to, at; 16. *zuwider* against my taste, to be disgusted with.

*Observation.* *Entgegen*, *gegenüber*, *gemäß*, *nach* (according to) follow their datives.

Es geschah aus Freundschaft für deine Eltern und aus Interesse für dich selbst. Ich kam gerade aus der Kirche. Außer dir habe ich keinen Freund in dieser Stadt. Er war gerade bei mir, als die traurige Nachricht von dem Tode seines Vaters ankam. Manche Leute reisen lieber bei Nacht als bei Tag. Er mußte binnen einer Stunde abreisen. Sein Bruder kam ihm entgegen. Er war meinem Plane entgegen. Wir wohnten dem Bahnhofe gegenüber. Ihrem Wunsche gemäß schicke ich Ihnen einige Proben von Cigarren. Den Proben gemäß müssen die Cigarren gut sein. Ich wohnte mit einem Freunde zusammen. Seinem Briefe nach wird er heute ankommen. Er ist nach Tisch nach London abgereist. Nächst Gott sollen wir unsere Eltern am meisten lieben. Er hat Haus nebst Garten verkauft. Ich bin seit einigen Wochen nicht ganz wohl. Der ungehorsame Knabe ist von seinem Lehrer gestraft worden. Die Kaufleute find

noch nicht von der Leipziger Messe zurück. Komm zu Weihnachten zu mir mit deinem Freund. Manchem Franken ist das Fleisch zuwider. Das Pferd samt dem Sattel. Die Uhr samt der Kette.

geschehen (a, e) to be done

das Interesse interest

gerade just

die Probe the sample

entgegen kommen come to meet

zusammen together

die Messe fair

die Kette chain.

### Aufgabe 126.

1. What he did, he did *out of* love to him. *Out of* sight, *out of* mind. The boys threw [at] each other with snow-balls, when they came *from* school. The soldiers marched *out of* town to exercise on their drilling-ground. The book is *out of* print. Such ties are *out of* (the) fashion now.

2. She was quite *beside* herself with (vor) grief, when she heard of the death of her mother. There was nobody present *besides* my brother and myself (me). Saving him is *out of* the reach of medical skill. You have run so fast, that you are entirely out of breath. He has large funds *beside* his estate. I met nobody on my walk *except* one gentleman. The instrument is *out of* tune.

3. Books, bought (welche man) *at* a second hand shop (Antiquar), are sometimes quite new and cheaper than bought (wenn man) *at* a bookseller's. I only travel *by* day, never *by* night. *Near* the town is a large park. My friend lived *at* my house [for] three months. Stay and dine *with* us to day. Some people like better to walk *by* moonlight than *by* sunshine. Weak eyes can at times not read much *by* candle-light.

4. The deceased was in (bei) full health and died *within* a few hours. If the money is not paid *within* one month, the house is to be sold. How could you finish such a work *within* so short a time? I hope to establish my own business within twelve months (Jahresfrist).

5. The wind was *against* us. He acted *against* me. He came to *meet* me half way. Will you not go to *meet* your friend? *Contrary* to his good old habit to rise early, he does not get up now before eight. *Contrary* to my advice, he remained silent, instead of defending himself. My father *met* my wish to increase (erhöhen) my allowance.

6. The parsonage is (liegt) near the church, just *opposite* it. When there is a large town on a river, you will frequently find a smaller town *opposite* it. We live *opposite* the bridge. The palace-street begins *opposite* the palace. Three weeks after the declaration of war, our army stood *face to face with* (opposite) the enemy.

7. He is the only heir *according* to law (plur.). In 1816 Germany became a confederation of nearly independent states *according* to the stipulations of the congress of Vienna. *According* to old institutions Germany was not a hereditary, but an elective empire. *According* to my promise I must write to my parents every week. Bulgaria, *in accordance with* the congress of Berlin, was made into a christian principality, independent from Turkey. *According* to my wish he sent me some samples of hock.

8. He took his son by his hand and went away *with* him. When we came down the hill, we saw the town *with* its beautiful villas around it (um — herum). He ate the chicken *with* the greatest appetite. *By* railway, *by* steamer, *by* post, *by* the diligence, *by* the first opportunity. Many German gentlemen like a cup of coffee *and* a cigar after dinner. Let me alone *for* it (do not bother me with it).

sight das Gesicht, die Augen  
mind der Sinn  
to march marschieren  
to exercise exerzieren  
drilling-ground Exerzierplatz  
out of print vergriffen  
fashion die Mode  
grief der Schmerz 5  
present zugegen  
to save retten  
reach der Bereich  
medical skill die ärztliche Kunst 1  
breath der Atem  
funds die Kapitalien  
near nahe bei  
at times zu Zeiten  
candle-light Lampenlicht  
half way halbwegs  
habit die Gewohnheit  
to remain silent sich ruhig  
verhalten

business das Geschäft 1  
parsonage das Pfarrhaus  
palace-street die Schloßstraße  
declaration of war die Kriegs-  
erklärung  
only (adj.) einzig  
the hill der Berg 1  
villa die Villa (plur. en)  
the chicken das Hähnchen  
diligence der Gilwagen  
appetite der Appetit  
opportunity die Gelegenheit  
to let alone in Ruhe lassen (ie, a)  
out of tune verstimmt  
heir der Erbe  
confederation der Bundesstaat 5  
independent unabhängig 5  
state der Staat 5  
stipulation die Bestimmung  
congress der Kongreß 1  
Vienna Wien

estate das Gut, Bandgut  
to defend verteidigen  
allowance das Taschengeld,  
Jahrgeld  
the deceased der Verstorbene  
few wenige  
to establish gründen  
own eigen

institution die Einrichtung  
hereditary erblich  
elective empire das Wahlreich 1  
Bulgaria die Bulgarei  
Turkey die Türkei  
christian christlich  
principality das Fürstentum 2  
hock der Rheinwein 1

to finish fertig bringen (a, a).

### Aufgabe 127.

*Observation.* Von — an, from, denotes the beginning of a period: Deutsche Kinder müssen von ihrem sechsten Jahre an die Schule besuchen.

9. *After* three months hard work (gen.), he passed his examination and became [an] officer [in the army]. Amusement *after* work. *According* to his own report, he is quite right, but the reports of his opponent are (lauten) quite different. *According* to the samples the wine must be very good. In one part of England they sell butter not *by* the weight, but *by* measure [yards]. What o'clock is it *by* your watch, *by* mine it is not yet twelve. You do not drink, is the wine not *to* your taste?

10. *Next* to my parents I am most indebted for my education to my good uncle. *Next* to luck he has to thank his industry and perseverance chiefly for his wealth.

11. I got this watch *together with* the chain and golden watch-key as a (als) birthday-present. He was obliged to economize and sold his carriage *together with* the horses. I have bought a hat *together with* a cap.

12. The ship *together with* the crew were lost. The whole family, the parents *together with* the children, have turned ill. The whole army, infantry *together with* cavalry and artillery, took to flight. All in the family are amiable, the sisters *together with* the brothers. He lost his purse *together with* the money.

13. I have been well *these* last three years, though I did not enjoy a good health before. I have been in Germany *these* six months. We had [a] severe frost ever *since* Christmas. I have been well ever *since* my departure from home. He has been at home *since* Easter, but has been ill *these* three weeks.

14. I have been accustomed (pres.) to get up early *from* my childhood. It has been so *from* the creation of the world. Our pupils have lessons *from* 8 to 12 in the morning. Is that tea-spoon *of* gold or is it gilt? Were you praised *by* your master or blamed? He comes directly *from* England. The milk has turned sour *by* the heat. The Eddystone lighthouse is above a mile *off* the coast. The leaves begin to fall *off* the trees.

15. As soon as you come home, go *to* your father, he has to speak to you. Was your father *at* home? Do you go home in your holidays *at* Christmas? He said much *in* his praise. The mice were killed *by* dozens. Cock-chafers are every third or fourth year found *by* thousands and hundred thousands.

16. There are few gentlemen in Germany that (dat.) *dislike* smoking. Beer is *not to my taste*. Sweet soups are *not to (against)* his taste. I can not tell you how much she was *disgusted with* his silly talk. My sister always was *disgusted* with his clownish manners.

to be indebted for zu verdanken  
to have to thank for haben  
luck das Glück  
chiefly hauptsächlich  
the chain die Kette  
education { die Erziehung  
                  { die Ausbildung  
industry der Fleiß  
perseverance die Ausdauer  
wealth der Wohlstand  
the cap die Mütze  
hard work angestrengte Arbeit  
to pass bestehen (a, a)  
examination das Examen  
amusement das Vergnügen  
report der Bericht 1  
opponent der Gegner  
different anders, verschieden  
part der Teil 1  
weight das Gewicht 1  
measure das Maß 1  
taste der Geschmack  
crew die Mannschaft  
to be lost untergehen (i, a) s.  
army die Armee

infantry die Infanterie  
cavalry die Kavallerie  
to take to flight die Flucht ergreifen  
to enjoy sich erfreuen (gen.)  
before (adv.) zuvor, früher  
severe frost der starke Frost 1  
ever since immer — seit  
departure die Abreise  
to be accustomed gewohnt sein  
childhood die Kindheit  
creation die Erschaffung  
lesson die Stunde  
gilt vergoldet  
directly direkt, geradezu  
lighthouse der Leuchtturm  
the praise das Lob  
dozen das Duzend 1  
cock-chaffer der Maisfäfer  
to dislike  
to be disgusted with } zuwider  
not be to the taste } sein (dat.)  
silly albern  
talk das Geschwätz  
clownish bäuerisch

manners die Manieren (plur.).

### 73. Section.

The prepositions that govern the genitive.

- |                                                          |                                    |
|----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. anstatt, statt instead of                             | 5. trotz in spite of               |
| 2. diesseits on this side                                | ungeachtet notwithstanding         |
| jenseits on that side                                    | 6. vermöge by dint of              |
| 3. außerhalb outside                                     | Kraft in virtue of                 |
| innerhalb inside                                         | laut according to                  |
| oberhalb above                                           | (referring to the contents of      |
| unterhalb below                                          | a letter etc.)                     |
| 4. wegen } on account                                    | 7. mittels, vermittels by means of |
| halben } of, for the                                     | 8. während during                  |
| um — willen } sake of                                    |                                    |
| 9. zufolge in consequence of, according to               |                                    |
| 10. along längs — hin (gen.) or entlang (acc. and dat.). |                                    |

Seiner Gesundheit wegen (halben) machte er eine dreiwöchentliche Fußreise in die Alpen. Meinert-, deinet-, feinet-, unfert-, euert-, ihretwegen (halben), um meinert-, feinet-, unfert-, ihretwillen. Meinertwegen (as for me) kannst du gehen oder bleiben, wie du willst. Um seiner Gesundheit willen kann der Mensch viel thun und lassen. Trotz der großen Kälte, der strengen Kälte ungeachtet, mache ich alle Tage meinen Spaziergang. Sie gelangten über das Wasser mittels eines Floßes (raft). Kraft meines Amtes (office) als Polizei-Inspektor befehle ich Ihnen, mir Ihre Zimmer zu öffnen. Vermöge seiner hohen Stellung (position) besaß (hatte) er vielen Einfluß (interest).

1. Wegen, halben, willen, ungeachtet generally follow their genitives.

2. Wegen, halben, willen are contracted with the genitives of the personal pronouns by changing the: r into a: t.

### Aufgabe 128.

1. He speaks instead of his brother. You may go instead of me, instead of him, instead of her, instead of us, instead of them. The child uses the spoon instead of the fork. His uncle has adopted him. Her aunt has adopted her. He has adopted him. Will you adopt your nephew? Will you adopt the orphan? Please write the letter instead of me. My sister went to the party instead of my mother. So many officers had been killed and wounded in the battle of Gravelotte, that finally instead of a major a lieutenant commanded a battalion, and instead



of a captain a sergeant led a company. Instead of the amusement we expected, we had nothing but annoyance. Instead of money I got promises.

2. On this side of the forest [there] are cornfields, beyond there are meadows. He is now beyond the sea. The house was on this side of the brook, the fields beyond it. A number of people, who are dissatisfied with their native country, seek their fortune beyond the ocean. When they are beyond the sea, they often find, they have been deceived. The baths are on the other side of the river. The fortress is (situated) on the other side of the Rhine. France is on this side of the Channel, England on the other side of it. The Channel is (liegt) between England and France. America is on the other side of the Atlantic.

3. The best place for (zum) skating is on this side of the river above the town. The cemeteries are now outside the towns, formerly they were inside the towns and villages around the churches and were therefore called churchyards. We have ten churches within, and one old church without the walls of our town. The harbour is below the town. Many men seek (their) amusement outside the house and neglect their families. This is the largest estate within four miles round. He was alive and dead within one hour. They were forced to leave the town within three days. The Cologne Cathedral was recommenced building and finished within forty years. The estate is this side of the Thames, above London, in (within) the county of Surrey, between two little towns, opposite a rather high hill.

to adopt an Kindeskind annehmen(s.)  
party die Gesellschaft  
finally schließlich  
to command kommandieren  
battalion das Bataillon 1  
sergeant der Unteroffizier  
to lead führen  
company die Kompagnie  
amusement das Vergnügen  
annoyance der Ärger, Verdruß  
cornfield das Kornfeld 2  
number die Menge, Zahl  
dissatisfied unzufrieden  
fortune das Glück

to be deceived sich täuschen  
to be situated liegen (a, e)  
Channel der Kanal 1  
the Atlantic der atlantische Ocean  
cemetery der Friedhof 1  
around um — herum  
churchyard der Kirchhof 1  
estate das Gut 2  
round in der Runde  
alive lebendig  
to be forced gezwungen werden  
to recommence wieder anfangen  
county die Grafschaft  
rather ziemlich.

**Aufgabe 129.**

4. We were obliged to take shelter in a cottage on account of the storm. I can not go to the concert *for* want of time. A good son willingly works hard for the sake of his old indigent parents. For heaven's sake do not say another word, not to make your father more angry, than he is. What can people (*die Menschen*) not do for the sake of honour, or power, or riches? Sultan Saladin pardoned the templar on account of his great likeness to (*mit*) his late brother. Was he not often taken for his brother on account of the great likeness of the two brothers? He has run into debts for his brother's sake. Never run into debts for your friend's sake, it is too much already, if you do it for your own (*selbst*) sake.

5. On account of the severe cold, the windows remained frozen all the day in spite of the mighty fire in the stove. He left us abruptly notwithstanding my urgent entreaties to stay. The lightminded youth continued to associate with his bad companions in spite of the strictest orders of his father. Notwithstanding the great heat we travelled all the day. In spite of hunger and cold and fatigue a soldier must keep up his courage and good humour. He went into the boat notwithstanding all warnings and in spite of the great danger.

6. According to a telegram, the steamer reached safely and in [a] good state the harbour of New-York. According to his letter from the 16<sup>th</sup> inst. (*b. M.*) from New-Orleans the yellow fever is entirely extinguished in the town. The minister has a great interest by virtue of his high position. A rich man may have great influence on the lower classes by virtue of his riches. By virtue of my office, I request you to follow me. Does he act in virtue of his office or in consequence of an order of his superiors? He, according (*gemäß*) to law (*pl.*), and in consequence (*laut*) of the will, is the only heir, but for honour's sake (*halben*) and for the sake (*willen*) of peace, he left (*a*) part of the inheritance to his opponent.

7. We crossed the lake by means of a rowing-boat. He obtained friends by means of his liberality and hospitality.

8. We lived in town during the winter, and on the seaside and in the country during the summer. Boys are generally at home during their holidays. Was I not very patient during my last illness? The patient could scarcely eat anything during three weeks, which made him very feeble. Commerce and most trades suffer much during a war. He used to sleep during the sermon. I saw the emperor several times during my stay at B.

9. According to experience (*zufolge*) one can move the greatest weights by means of steam-engines.

10. Along (*längs, entlang*). Along the Rhine there is a railway and a high-road on each side of the river. I went along the river (*längs — hin*) as far as the wood. When I went along the street, I met the emperor in his carriage.

*Observation 1.* *Entlang* generally governs the accusative and follows the noun.

*Observation 2.* *Zufolge*, following the noun, governs the dative. *Trotz* is often used with the dative.

want of Mangel an  
to take shelter Schutz suchen  
storm das Gewitter  
to work hard sich anstrengen  
indigent dürftig  
to make angry erzürnen,  
aufbringen  
to pardon begnadigen  
templar der Tempelherr  
likeness die Ähnlichkeit  
late verstorben  
to take for verwechseln mit  
to run into debts Schulden  
machen  
mighty mächtig  
abruptly plötzlich  
urgent dringend  
lightminded leichtsinnig  
youth der Jüngling  
to continue fortfahren  
to associate with umgehen mit  
companion Kamerad, Gefährte  
strict streng  
order der Befehl, das Ver-  
bot (sing.)

fatigue die Strapaze (plur.)  
to keep up sich bewahren  
humour die Laune  
warning die Warnung  
safely glücklich  
yellow gelb  
to be extinguished erlöschen sein  
interest der Einfluß  
position die Stellung  
lower nieder  
office das Amt 2  
to request ersuchen  
to act handeln  
superior der Vorgesetzte  
the will das Testament  
heir der Erbe  
to leave überlassen  
inheritance die Erbschaft  
opponent der Gegner  
the lake der See 5  
rowing-boat das Ruderboot  
to obtain sich erwerben (a, o)  
liberality die Freigebigkeit  
hospitality die Gastfreundschaft  
seaside die See

|                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| patient geduldig                  | stay der Aufenthalt            |
| feeble schwach                    | experience die Erfahrung       |
| commerce der Handel               | to move fortbewegen            |
| trades die Gewerbe                | weight die Last                |
| to suffer leiden (litt, gelitten) | steam-engine die Dampfmaschine |
| sermon die Predigt                | as far as bis an, bis zu       |
| high-road die Landstraße.         |                                |

#### 74. Section.

In English *no* article or the *indefinite* article, in German the *definite* article.

1. An elephant is much bigger than a horse, der Elefant — das Pferd. Elephants are much bigger than horses, die Elefanten — die Pferde. Gold is a precious metal, das Gold ist ein edles Metall.

2. Monday is the second day in the week, der Montag. January is generally the coldest month, der Januar. What do you like better, summer or winter, — den Sommer oder den Winter. Mount Sorata is the highest mountain in the Andes, der Sorata ist der höchste Berg in den Anden.

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 3. a) Switzerland die Schweiz   | Walachia die Walachei      |
| the Palatinate die Pfalz        | Moldavia die Moldau        |
| the Crimea die Krimm            | Mongolia die Mongolei      |
| the Peloponnesus der Peloponnes | Tartary die Tartarei       |
| Lausatia die Lausitz            | March die Mark             |
| Turkey die Türkei               | Lombardy die Lombardei     |
| Bulgaria die Bulgarei           | Britanny die Bretagne      |
| Normandy die Normandie          | Alsace der Elsaß;          |
| b) little Mary die kleine Marie | old Rome das alte Rom      |
| blind Belisarius der blinde     | Queen Victoria die Königin |
| Belisar                         | Viktoria.                  |

4. Innocence die Unschuld, vice das Laster, youth die Jugend, glory der Ruhm &c.

5. In turns der Reihe nach, at church in der Kirche, to school in die Schule &c.

The definite article, deviating from the English, is used in German:

1. When we speak of the whole species of things or in general.

2. Before the names of the seasons, months and days of the week, and before the names of mountains.

3. Before the names of countries of feminine and masculine gender, and when there is an adjective or a title before a proper-name.

4. Before abstract nouns, when employed in the whole extent of the notion.

5. In a number of connections of prepositions with nouns.

### Aufgabe 130.

1. No animal roars more tremendously than *a* lion. *A* dog is faithful, *a* cat is false. Which animal is more useful, *a* horse or *a* cow? *A* nightingale should never be kept in a cage. Lions are only found in Africa. Lions live chiefly in deserts. *A* rose is, roses are the symbol of love. Lilies are white. Lilies are, *a* lily is the symbol of innocence. Roses are red, white and sometimes yellow. Yellow roses are scarce. Women are prettier than men. Plates and dishes are round. Bottles are of glass, most breast pins are of gold. Genuine pearls are very expensive. Pearls are fished for in the Persian Gulf and in the bay of Bengal. Diamonds are the most precious of all stones. Diamonds are found in a very few countries. Iron is malleable. Steel is made of (aus) iron. Iron is the most useful metal. Iron, salt and coal (sing.) are found in many countries. Air and water are transparent and liquid. Quicksilver is a liquid metal. Quicksilver is rarely found and only in a few countries. Quicksilver is used as a medicament, which should not often be employed and only in extreme cases. Quicksilver is used for thermometers and barometers. Quicksilver is a metal, that becomes hard, when it is exposed to very great cold. Iron becomes liquid, when it is exposed to very great heat. Glass is an invention of the Phoenicians. Glass is much in use now. Cows and horses are kept in stables. Dogs are the faithful companions of men. Potatoes and tobacco were introduced from America. Wine, taken soberly, is good for (the) health. Apples, pears, cherries, plums are grown every where in England and Germany. Nut-trees can not bear a rough climate. Grapes of which wine is made, grow in vineyards. We can not study nature too minutely. Watches were

invented at Nuremberg in the 16<sup>th</sup> century. Porcelain is a German invention, made at Meissen in Saxony in the beginning of last century. The life of man is short. The life of man is in the hand of God. Man is mortal.

genuine echt  
 pearl die Perle  
 malleable dehnbar  
 coal die Kohle  
 transparent durchsichtig  
 liquid flüssig  
 quicksilver das Quecksilber  
 medicament das Heilmittel  
 to employ anwenden (s.)  
 extreme case der Nothfall  
 mortal sterblich

to expose aussetzen  
 stable der Stall 1  
 to introduce einführen (s.)  
 soberly mäßig  
 plum die Pflaume, Zwetsche  
 to grow ziehen (o, o), wachsen (u, a)  
 vineyard der Weinberg 1  
 nature die Natur  
 minutely genau, sorgfältig  
 porcelain das Porzellan  
 Nuremberg Nürnberg.

### Aufgabe 131.

2. Mount Everest is the highest mountain in the Himalaya and on the earth. Mont-Blanc is the highest mountain in Europe. Mount Vesuvius and mount Etna are the two principal volcanoes in Italy, the former is near Naples, and had its first eruption in 70 p. Chr.; the latter was a volcano ever since the eldest historical records. The first eruption of Mount Vesuvius was disastrous for the towns of Pompeji and Herculaneum, they were entirely buried under ashes (sing.) and lava. The Caucasus, on the frontiers of Asia and Europe, is a little higher than the Alps. The two highest mountains in it, Mount Elburs and Mount Kasbeck, are about 18000 feet high. Mount Ararat on the frontier of Persia, Russia and Turkey is 17000 feet high. Mount Chimborazo in South-America was first ascended and its height measured by Alexander Humboldt.

November is a foggy month. January is generally the coldest month in Germany. There is sometimes [a] severe frost still in February. July and August are the hottest months in the year. March is the first month in spring. April and May are the months of blossoms. Sunday is kept stricter in England than on the Continent. On Thursday, on Tuesday. On Wednesday and on Saturday German schools have a half holiday. Good Friday is a holiday, (which is) strictly kept by German Protestants. Watering-places are most frequented from May to (bis zu) August.

Most migratory-birds come to us in April, and leave us in August and September. Summer and Autumn are the seasons for travelling. Spring has been much celebrated by many poets. Also winter offers much amusement for young and old.

|                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| vulcano der Vulkan 1                 | about ungefähr                       |
| principal — der Hauptvulkan          | to ascend bestiegen (ie, ie)         |
| the former der erstere               | height die Höhe                      |
| the latter der letztere              | strict streng                        |
| Naples Neapel                        | a half holiday ein halber freier Tag |
| eruption der Ausbruch 1              | to celebrate feiern                  |
| historical historisch, geschichtlich | good Friday der Karfreitag           |
| record die Nachricht, der Bericht    | watering-place das Bad 1             |
| disastrous verberbtlich              | migratory-bird der Zugvogel          |
| to bury begraben (u, a)              | season die Jahreszeit                |
| ashes die Asche (sing.)              | to offer bieten (o, o).              |

### Aufgabe 132.

3. No country in the world is as much frequented by tourists as Switzerland. Admirers of [a] grand scenery (Natur Schönheit), people that want a tonic air for their health use to go to Switzerland. All high mountains of Switzerland, even those, that offer the greatest difficulties and dangers, have now been repeatedly ascended. Are you going to Switzerland this year? When have you returned from Switzerland? Normandy, Brittany and Auvergne are French provinces. There are extinct volcanoes in Auvergne. Bern is in some respect the capital of Switzerland. Bulgaria, Moldavia and Walachia are now christian principalities, independent from Turkey. The sovereigns of Bulgaria, Walachia and Moldavia were German princes before their election to their present dignity. Most inhabitants of European Turkey are christians of the Greek church. Mongolia, for the (zum) greatest part, is a desert and belongs to China. The greatest part of Tartary is now under Russian sovereignty. Tartary is separated from British India by very high chains of mountains. Lombardy belonged formerly to (zu) Austria. Alsace is a province of the German empire. Pope Alexander I. was the powerful opponent of the emperor Frederic I. of Germany. King Alexander of Macedonia conquered Persia, but died too young to give his vast empire

a long duration. Pope Gregory VII. made celibacy a (zum) law for his clergy. King Frederic II. of Prussia is called the Great, because he was great as (als) general and as statesman. He sustained for seven years a glorious war against the united powers of Austria, Russia, France, Sweden and Southern Germany. Czar Peter I. of Russia is the founder of the power of Russia. Archduke Charles of Austria distinguished himself against Napoleon in the campaign of 1809. England has become rich and powerful since the time of Queen Elizabeth. The death of Queen Mary of Scotland is a stain on her glorious reign. Queen Victoria came to (auf) the throne in 1837, she was born in 1819. Admiral Nelson's monument is in Trafalgar square, he gained several naval battles against the French, he destroyed their fleets at Aboukir and Trafalgar. General Moltke is the greatest strategist of our time. Major Gneisenau defended Colberg with success against the French; as General, Gneisenau was the chief of the staff of Field-marshal Blücher. Little Charles, kind Emily, old John, amiable Mary. Foolish Frank did it. Brave Robert saved a child's life. Old Rome was a magnificent town. Old Syracuse and old Capua, in their time, counted among the most populous towns in the world. Old Athens was the seat of sciences and arts in antiquity.

tourist der Tourist 4  
admirer der Bewunderer  
grand großartig  
tonic stärkend, kräftig  
to offer darbieten (o, o) s.  
to ascend ersteigen (te, te)  
extinct erloschen  
in some respect in mancher

Hinfißt  
principality das Fürstentum 2  
independent unabhängig  
sovereign der Herrscher  
election die Wahl  
present gegenwärtig  
dignity die Würde  
sovereignty die Herrschaft  
chain die Kette  
opponent der Gegner  
vast groß, ungeheuer

celibacy das Elibat  
clergy die Geistlichkeit  
statesman der Staatsmann  
to sustain bestehen (a, a)  
glorious ruhmreich  
united vereint  
populous volkreich  
seat der Sitz  
power die Kraft 1, die Macht 1  
southern südlich  
founder der Gründer  
Archduke der Erzherzog 1  
to distinguish sich auszeichnen  
campaign der Feldzug  
stain der Flecken  
reign die Regierung  
born geboren  
monument das Denkmal 2  
naval battle die Seeschlacht



to destroy zerstören, vernichten  
fleet die Flotte  
strategist der Strategist  
to defend verteidigen  
success der Erfolg  
chief der Chef  
staff der Generalstab

fieldmarshal der Feldmarschall  
kind gut  
foolish thöricht, dumm  
magnificent prächtig  
to count among zählen zu  
science die Wissenschaft  
antiquity das Altertum.

#### Aufgabe 133.

4. Can you not discern truth from falsehood? Guilds are an institution of the middle ages. Did you always resist temptation? You knew it was wrong, and yet you did not resist temptation. Has there ever been a more important invention than book-printing? Book-printing was invented in Mainz by a German of the name (namens) of Gutenberg. The inventor of book-printing died as a poor man. Is there any better religion than christianity? Travelling in countries that are uncivilized is troublesome. A man may be deprived of honour and riches against his will, but not of virtue without his consent. Love is patient and friendship willingly pardons. Luck is changeable. God rewards virtue and punishes vice. Virtue leads to happiness, vice to ruin. Of the fine arts, music is the department in which the Germans excel. Painting in (mit) oil-colours is more difficult than painting in water-colours. Economy is a virtue, but avarice is the root of all evil. Time is a balsam that heals all wounds. Virtue has its own reward (in sich selbst). Friendship embellishes life. Ingratitude is a vice that is detested even by the rudest nations of the world. Paganism prevails in the south-east, Mahometanism in the south-west of Asia. The adherents of Buddhism are more numerous than the adherents of Bramanism. Christianity was spread in South-Europe in the first three centuries of the Christian era; among the Teutonic nations after the great migration of peoples. Protestantism prevails in the middle and north, Catholicism in the south of Europe.

to deprive berauben  
patient geduldig  
to pardon verzeihen (ie, ie)  
to reward belohnen  
vice das Laster  
to lead führen

ruin das Verderben  
department das Fach 2  
to excel sich auszeichnen (s.)  
economy die Sparsamkeit  
avarice der Geiz  
root die Wurzel

evil das Übel  
balsam der Balsam  
to heal heilen  
the reward der Lohn, die  
Belohnung  
to embellish verschönern  
ingratitude die Undankbarkeit  
to detest verabscheuen  
rude roh  
Paganism das Heidentum  
to prevail vorherrschen (s.)

south-east der Südosten  
Mahometanism der Muham-  
danismus  
adherent der Anhänger  
Buddhism der Buddhismus  
to spread verbreiten  
century das Jahrhundert 1  
era die Zeitrechnung  
Teutonic deutsch  
middle die Mitte  
north der Norden.

### Aufgabe 134.

5. In (im) war, in peace, in spring, in July, on (am) Sunday. After, before, at breakfast (dinner, supper, coffee, tea). At, to, from school (church) in der, in die, aus der Schule (Kirche). In, to, from town, in der, in die, aus der Stadt.

Most pleasure, das meiste Vergnügen, most time, most money, most wine, most water, most milk, most people, most patients. Last time, das letzte Mal, next time.

For pleasure (zum); in turns, der Reihe nach, um die Reihe. By railway, by steamer, by post, by diligence, mit dem Eilwagen. In prison, from prison, to prison (Gefängnis).

On earth, in heaven, in purgatory (Fegfeuer), in Paradise, abroad (im Auslande), in captivity (in der Gefangenschaft), in exile (im Exil), take to flight (die Flucht ergreifen).

Trade and commerce suffer, fine arts are neglected in war. War was declared, peace was made in three months. Dinner is on the table, please, come to dinner. What are we to do after breakfast? People who have no leisure in day [time], must write their letters after supper. When do you go to church, when do you come from church? Were you at church? He regularly goes to town at 9 in the morning to attend (his) business and returns from town at 5 in the afternoon. The family is in town in spring, abroad in summer, in the country in autumn and winter. The gentlemen then go hunting and shooting. We had most pleasure, when we were in town, most time to read, when we were in the country. Most money is made by (in) commerce and trade, least money by farming. You were in (bei) good spirits the other day, I hope it will be

so, when I see you next time. We play for pleasure, never for (um) money. They went up the Rhine by railway and returned by steamer. The criminal was taken to prison, but is no more in prison, he escaped from prison. Napoleon I. died in captivity, Louis Philippe and Napoleon III. in exile. \*Paradise 'lost is a celebrated poem written by blind Milton. He goes to College, he left College. Verily, I say unto thee, to day thou shalt be with me in Paradise. According to the doctrines of the Roman Church the souls of the deceased must first be purified in purgatory, before they can go in heaven. In captivity we first learn (to know) the value of liberty, in illness the benefit of health. Every thing is changeable on earth. Of all nations English families live most abroad. When the Prussians appeared unexpectedly, the French army, which had fought very bravely all the day at Waterloo, took to flight. We will row and steer in turns. Cards are dealt in turns at whist. Most water of pumps in towns not being healthy, large towns now have waterworks to provide them with good water. Though most milk is drunk by children, milk is a wholesome drink for young and old. What does not change in the course of time? I shall come to see you in the course of day. The enemy took to flight after [a] short fight.

Trade Gewerbe (plur.)  
commerce der Handel  
declare erklären  
to make peace Frieden  
schließen  
leisure die Muße  
regularly regelmäßig  
to attend besorgen, nachgehen  
abroad im Ausland  
farming die Landwirtschaft  
spirits die Laune  
captivity die Gefangenschaft  
exile das Exil  
paradise das Paradies  
college das Gymnasium

poem die Dichtung  
verily wahrlich  
doctrine die Lehre  
to purify reinigen  
benefit die Wohlthat  
to appear erscheinen (ie, ie)  
to row rudern  
to steer steuern  
to deal cards Karten geben  
pump die Pumpe  
waterworks die Wasserleitung  
wholesome gesund  
fight der Kampf 1  
hunting and shooting die Jagd  
learn to know kennen lernen.

### 75. Section.

Verbs and adjectives that require an object with a preposition.

1. Zweifel<sup>n</sup> Sie an meinem Bericht? Zweifel<sup>n</sup> Sie an dem, was ich berichtet habe? Zweifel<sup>n</sup> Sie daran, daß mein Bericht wahr ist?

2. Er ist zufrieden mit seinem kleinen Wohlstand (wealth). Er ist zufrieden mit dem, was er geerbt hat. Er ist zufrieden damit, daß er etwas geerbt hat, so wenig es auch ist.

3. Er ist stolz auf sein Französisch. Er hat Ursache stolz zu sein auf das, was er durch seine eigene Anstrengung (exertion) gelernt hat. Er ist stolz darauf, daß er französisch so gut spricht.

4. Die arme Frau ist dankbar für jede Gabe, die sie empfangt. Sie ist dankbar für das, was ich ihr gegeben habe. Sie ist dankbar dafür, daß sie eine mitleidige (compassionate) Seele gefunden hat, die sie in ihrer Not unterstützt.

5. Mancher strebt (aspires) nach Reichtum und bleibt arm. Wir sollten nicht nach dem streben, was nicht erreichbar (attainable) für uns ist. Mancher strebt darnach, daß er reich wird, und es gelingt ihm nicht.

From the preceding sentences we see:

The preposition is not always followed by a noun as object, but sometimes by a sentence that begins either with *was*, or *daß*. In both cases the preposition must always be put in the principal sentence, and is then connected with *daß* (dem), when followed by *was*; and with *da* (daran, damit, darauf, dafür, darnach), when followed by the conjunction *daß*.

### Aufgabe 135. (Un.)

Did you not remind him *of* our last interview? Remind him *of* his youth, *of* our friendship, *of* his parents. Have you reminded her *of* her duty *to* (gegen) her old parents? What illness did then emperor Napoleon I. die *of*? They say, he died *of* a cancer of the stomach. The easiest and quickest death is, when a man dies *of* a stroke of the heart. Death then follows unconsciously and without any (allen) pain or suffering. Every death should remind us

of our own death, especially when we are <sup>2</sup>advanced <sup>1</sup>in age. Therefore be always prepared *for* death, and think *of* eternity. We can not think *of* every thing, but a man should think *of* that. A gambler does not think *of* his own welfare, nor *of* the welfare of his family, he only thinks *of* what gives him pleasure for the moment and is a slave of his passion. In our youth, we should accustom ourselves *to* getting up early. Youth must be accustomed (*muß* man) *to* industry, economy and order. The Turks believe *in* their Koran, Christians *in* the Bible; the Roman and Greek Church, besides the Bible, *in* traditions, Protestants only *in* the Bible. What were we *at* yesterday? *To* what do we come *to* day? Yesterday we were *at* the English geography, *to* day we come *to* the geography of France. We were *at* the mountains and now come *to* the rivers. Why do you not set *about* your work? I was just setting *about* it, but was detained *from* it by a visitor (*visit*). *To* morrow is a grand ball, do you take part *in* it? I should take part *in* it, if I were invited. What do you think *of* the projected Canal of Panama, will it be accomplished? When many participate *in* the undertaking, it will be accomplished as well as the Canal of Suez was, but when the participation is not great, it will not be accomplished. Much money can be lost, and little be gained *in* this enterprise. [It is] not *in* all great transactions, which a merchant undertakes, [that] profit is made, *in* some (*manche*) he may also lose money. We have lost much *through* (*an*) this merchant. Hang my coat *on* the nail, *on* the wall, not in the wardrobe, it has become damp from the rain. Do not push *against* the table, when I am writing, how can I write, when you constantly knock *against* the table? What (*woran*) is wanting in the boy (*dat.*)? I think not capacity, but application and good will. He who (*wem es*) lacks perseverance, never will thrive in the world. *For* a (*zu*) business is required more than good will, it requires also industry and knowledge of business, and before all, a man of business must not lack money. They say, I am the cause *of* his misfortune. But I can assure you, I am not the least culpable *of* it, on the contrary I have warned

him *against* it, but he did not mind my warning, he alone has the fault *of* it. Pilate said: I am innocent *of* the blood of this just [person]. I find no fault *in* this man (him). Do you doubt the truth of (dessen) what I said? On the contrary, I do not doubt that he is the most honest man in (von) the world. Since when have you been suffering *from* a head-ache? There are (sind oder giebt?) people, who do not suffer *from* any pain of the kind, not *from* a tooth-ache, not *from* a head-ache, not *from* a sore-throat, not *from* a pain in the eyes.

|                                          |                                      |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| interview die Zusammenkunft              | enterprise das Unternehmen           |
| cancer of the stomach der Magen-         | transaction das Geschäft 1           |
| trebs                                    | to make profit in gewinnen an (dat.) |
| quick schnell                            | nail der Nagel                       |
| stroke of the heart der Herzschlag       | wardrobe der Kleiderschrank          |
| unconsciously unbewußt                   | damp feucht                          |
| suffering das Leiden                     | to push against stoßen an (acc.)     |
| especially besonders                     | to want } fehlen an etwas            |
| every death jeder Todesfall              | to be short of } (dat.)              |
| advanced vorgerückt                      | capacity die Fähigkeit               |
| prepare for vorbereiten auf (acc.)       | application der Fleiß                |
| eternity die Ewigkeit                    | to lack fehlen an etwas              |
| gambler der Spieler                      | to require erfordern                 |
| welfare das Wohlergehen, Glück           | he lacks money es fehlt ihm an Geld  |
| moment der Augenblick                    | to thrive vorankommen                |
| slave der Sklave                         | to remind of erinnern an (acc.)      |
| passion die Leidenschaft                 | to be the cause of } schuld sein     |
| to accustom to gewöhnen an (acc.)        | to be culpable of } an (dat.)        |
| order die Ordnung                        | to have the fault of }               |
| to be at something an etwas              | to assure versichern                 |
| sein (dat.)                              | in the least im geringsten           |
| to come to something an etwas            | on the contrary im Gegenteil         |
| kommen (acc.)                            | of the kind der Art                  |
| to set about sich an etwas machen (acc.) | to believe in glauben an (acc.)      |
| to follow (neut. verb) erfolgen          | to think of denken an (acc.)         |
| to detain from abhalten von              | to warn against warnen vor (dat.)    |
| to take part in } teilnehmen an          | to mind }                            |
| to sympathize } (dat.)                   | to listen to } hören auf (acc.)      |
| to project projektieren                  | warning die Warnung                  |
| to be accomplished zustande              | Pilate Pilatus                       |
| kommen                                   | innocent of unschuldig an (dat.)     |
| to participate in sich beteiligen        | no fault in keine Schuld an (dat.)   |
| an (dat.)                                | to doubt zweifeln an (dat.)          |
| undertaking das Unternehmen              | a tooth-ache Zahnschmerzen (plur.)   |
| participation die Beteiligung            | to suffer from leiden an (dat.)      |

**Aufgabe 136. (Auf.)**

All boys, also the most studious and best pupils, look forward *to* their holidays with pleasure. Do not wait *for* me longer than 7 o'clock. In vain I waited *for* him before the gate. I had looked forward with pleasure *to* the arrival of the friend of my youth, but I can now no more rejoice *at* [seeing] him, and can no more be proud *of* him. He looks so miserable *from* hunger and grief, and once he was a proud youth, proud *of* his family and his knowledge (plur.). He dreamt *of* happiness and wealth, when he left his country and came back disappointed in all his expectations. So it is (geht es), when a man confides too much *in* himself. He who (wer) is in trouble, often counts in vain *on* the help of his friends. He who is in trouble, hopes *for* better times; he who is ill, hopes *for* recovery; a dying man hopes *for* eternal blissfulness; hope does not forsake a man, it is his faithful companion that never quits him. He who trusts *in* friends, is often forsaken. A boar, when it is wounded, rushes *upon* the hunter. When we do not take care *of* our health, we may easily catch an illness. A hawk darts *upon* a hare, a cat jumps *upon* a mouse, a robber falls *upon* a harmless traveller. Only in war a man can fire in cold blood *at* his fellow-man and kill him. The cost of building of the Cologne Cathedral amounted *to* many millions of Thalers, that of the Houses of Parliament in London *to* three millions of Pounds. A good shooter aims *at* a flying bird, a sportsman *at* a running hare, without missing them. What did you allude *to* with your words? If we listened *to* the advice of good friends, we should often be (bleiben) preserved *from* misfortune. Trust *in* God, he helps in trouble. Every one was convinced, that one could rely *upon* his promise. Who has more cause to be proud *of* his country, than an Englishman? He is jealous *of* his talents and therefore tries to calumniate him. There is no (man sollte nicht) counting *on* a man's happiness before he (so lange man nicht) is dead. The horse is blind *of* both eyes. You may rely *upon* his promise. What did he reply *to* your letter? He did not reply *to* it at all, and I scarcely expected, that he would reply *to* it.

|                                  |                                             |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| to look forward with pleasure    | grief der <i>Rummer</i>                     |
| to sich freuen auf               | a youth ein <i>Jüngling</i> 1               |
| to rejoice at sich freuen über   | to dream of träumen von                     |
| to wait for warten auf           | expectation die <i>Erwartung</i>            |
| miserable from elend vor         | to disappoint täuschen                      |
| proud of stolz auf               | recovery die <i>Genesung</i>                |
| to confide in sich verlassen auf | dying man der <i>Sterbende</i>              |
| to count on rechnen auf          | eternal ewig                                |
| to hope for hoffen auf           | blissfulness die <i>Seligkeit</i>           |
| to trust sich verlassen auf      | to forsake, quit verlassen                  |
| to rush, dart, fall upon sich    | boar das <i>Bildschwein</i> 1               |
| stürzen auf                      | catch sich <i>zugreifen</i> (o, o) s.       |
| to take care of acht geben auf   | hawk der <i>Habicht</i> 1                   |
| to fire at schießen auf          | robber der <i>Räuber</i>                    |
| to aim at zielen auf             | harmless harmlos                            |
| to amount to sich belaufen auf   | in cold blood kaltblütig                    |
| to allude to anspielen auf       | fellow-man der <i>Nebenmensch</i> 4         |
| to listen to hören auf           | cost of building die <i>Baukosten</i> (pl.) |
| to preserve from bewahren        | shooter der <i>Schütze</i>                  |
| vor (dat.)                       | to miss verfehlen                           |
| to trust in vertrauen auf        | to convince überzeugen                      |
| jealous of eifersüchtig auf      | cause die <i>Ursache</i>                    |
| to rely upon sich verlassen auf  | to try suchen, versuchen                    |
| to reply to antworten auf        | to calumniate verleumben                    |
| in vain vergebens                | (auf always with the acc. here).            |

### Aufgabe 137. (Über.)

He lectured *on* electricity. His treatise *on* cholera brought him first into renown. Only a malicious man can rejoice *at* the misfortune of his neighbour, every other man pities the unfortunate. Every one should learn the art of not being unnecessarily vexed *at* others. It is of no use to complain *of* our misfortunes (sing.). A teacher has often cause to complain *of* naughty or lazy boys. Whom are you angry *with*? What was your father angry *at* yesterday? Irritable men are vexed *at* any trifling cause. Reflect *on* your conduct and correct yourself. He was not angry, he was enraged *at* such impudence. We often wonder *at* things, that are quite natural, and which we should not have wondered *at*, if they had not surprised us. His licentious companions mocked *at* him for his sobriety. She grieves most *at* being separated from her mother. In Germany the emperor has to decide *upon* war and peace. Napoleon reigned *over* France, Italy and Spain, and for



some time also *over* Germany. Queen Elizabeth mourned a long time *over* the death of Earl Essex. He triumphed *over* his fallen enemy. He had a great advantage *over* his opponent. He was furious *with* the treatment, he had received. He complained *of* bad treatment. Do not complain *of* too great strictness, when you neglect your duty. He insisted *upon* my going directly. When I insisted *upon* payment, I at last got my money. He insisted *upon* having said the truth. There is no country in Europe, none on earth, that abounds so much *in* wine as France. A man that is rich *in* money, but poor *in* mind is not to be envied. I am innocent *of* his misfortune.

|                                    |                                      |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| to lecture on lesen über           | neighbour der Nächste                |
| a treatise on eine Abhandlung über | renown der Ruf                       |
| to be vexed at sich ärgern über    | to pity bedauern                     |
| to complain of sich beklagen über  | unnecessarily unnötig                |
| angry with, at böse über           | of no use nutzlos                    |
| to reflect on nachdenken über      | irritable reizbar                    |
| enraged at wütend über             | trifling cause Kleinigkeit           |
| to wonder at sich wundern über     | to correct bessern                   |
| to mock at spotten über            | to surprise überraschen              |
| to grieve at sich grämen über      | licentious leichtfertig              |
| to decide upon entscheiden über    | sobriety die Mäßigkeit               |
| to reign over regieren über        | treatment die Behandlung             |
| to mourn over trauern über         | to receive erhalten, erfahren (u, a) |
| to triumph over triumphieren über  | strictness die Strenge               |
| furious with wütend über           | payment die Bezahlung                |
| to insist upon bestehen auf        | to prove beweisen (ie, ie)           |
| to abound in reich sein an (dat.)  | mind der Geist                       |
| electricity die Electricität       | rich in reich an (dat.)              |
| malicious schadenfroß              | (über always governs the acc. here). |

### Aufgabe 138.

(Gegen) Be kind and hearty *to* your friends, not irconcilable *to* your enemies, charitable *to* the poor, strict *to* your own faults, indulgent *to* the faults of others, not envious *to* the happy, sympathetic *with* the unfortunate, honest and just *to* every one. In Russia every one protects himself *from* the intense cold by warm fur, be it the sheep skin (fur) of the poor, or the sable of the rich. A miser is deaf *to* all cries of distress of his fellow-men. A man ought to be grateful *to* his parents and benefactors. Weak parents are blind *to* the faults of their children. He who

is not affable *to* those, that come to see him, scares sociability from his house. Be not proud *to* your inferiors and cringing *to* your superiors. Deal *with* others, as you wish them (daß sie) to deal *with* you.

(Begen) Cheshire is famous *for* its cheese, Burgundy famous *for* its wine. Do not blame me *for* my conduct. The boy apologized *for* his misbehaviour. Formerly many people died, when prices were very high, *for* want of food. The criminal was accused *of* unintentional murder. When we wish to buy things that (uns) appear too dear, we barter *for* them. England is noted *for* its riches.

*From* his serious countenance I concluded, that something of importance must have happened. The vessel is bound *for* London. When will he depart *for* Paris? He embarked with only one attendant *for* New-York. My brother stood security *for* his friend. The child had fallen and hurt his arm severely, but hid it *from* his mother *for* fear *of* her. She died *of* grief *at* the loss of her husband. Your argument is not decisive *of* the question. We had to economize our time, as we had not many more days left before our journey. He had grown *into* a youth. The vapours thickened *into* water. Do you think they will admit me *into* their party? I have leisure enough *for* it, but I have no mind *to* [do] it. In Kamtchatka people live chiefly *on* fish, fresh, salted and dried; dried fish serve them as (als) bread. An ambitious man is desirous *of* honour. I beg [your] pardon. May I ask you a favor? May I ask you for some stamps? The girl asked her mother's permission, to stay at home [for] the afternoon (bleiben zu dürfen). The poor man asked me for some old clothes.

to conclude from schließen (o, o)  
aus  
to be bound for bestimmt nach  
to depart for abreisen nach  
to embark for sich einschiffen nach  
to stand security for gut  
sprechen für  
to hide from verbergen (a, o)  
vor (dat.)  
for fear of aus Furcht vor (dat.)

to come to see besuchen  
to scare verschrecken  
sociability die Geselligkeit  
to deal with handeln gegen  
famous berühmt  
to apologize sich entschuldigen  
misbehaviour das schlechte Verhalten  
prices are high alles ist teuer  
for want of wegen (aus) Mangel an

to die of grief at sterben aus  
 rummer über  
 decisive of entscheidend für  
 to economise sparsam umgehen mit  
 to grow into heranwachsen zu  
 to thicken into sich verdichten zu  
 to admit zulassen zu  
 leisure for Ruhe zu  
 mind to Lust zu  
 live upon leben von  
 desirous of begierig nach  
 to beg }  
 to ask for } bitten (a, e) um  
 hearty herzlich  
 irreconcilable unversöhnlich  
 charitable barmherzig  
 indulgent nachsichtig  
 envious neidisch  
 sympathetic theilnehmend  
 to protect from sich schützen gegen  
 intense streng  
 cries of distress die Notschreie  
 grateful dankbar  
 benefactor der Wohlthäter  
 affable freundlich  
 arguments Gründe, Beweisgründe

to accuse anklagen  
 unintentional fahrlässig  
 murder der Mord  
 to appear scheinen (dat.)  
 to barter for handeln um  
 noted bekannt  
 riches der Reichtum  
 serious ernst  
 countenance das Gesicht  
 importance die Wichtigkeit  
 to happen sich zutragen (u, a) s.  
 attendant der Begleiter  
 to hurt sich verletzen an (dat.)  
 husband der Gatte  
 left übrig, vor sich haben  
 journey die Reise  
 vapour der Dampf, Dunst 1  
 party die Gesellschaft  
 to dry trocknen  
 salted gesalzen  
 pardon die Verzeihung, Ent-  
 schuldigung  
 favor der Gefallen  
 permission die Erlaubnis  
 food die Nahrung  
 stamp die Briefmarke.

### Aufgabe 139.

Napoleon Bonaparte, after having been First Consul of the French republic, *made* himself emperor of France in 1804. Napoleon I. *created* many of his distinguished generals counts, dukes and princes, and gave them sufficient property to maintain their ranks (sing.). Bernadotte, a French general, was *elected* crownprince of Sweden. Charlemagne, king of the Franconian empire, was *crowned* Roman emperor in Rome in 800. Count Rudolf of Habsburg in 1273 was *elected* emperor of Germany at a time, when lawlessness and anarchy reigned every where in Germany, and soon succeeded in restoring order and peace in the empire. When did your young friend get his *appointment* as ensign? *Upon* my honour, he is not concerned *in* the affair. He partook *of* a bowl of punch, over (bei) which he discussed politics. He tried very [hard] to cheat me *out of* my money. The beer tastes too much *of* hops. Do not smell *of* tobacco, when you pay a visit. The Hindoos live

entirely *on* vegetables. She is afraid *of* things, which exist nowhere but in her imagination. This landscape is drawn *from* nature. He who judges *from* appearance, will often be deceived. King Frederic William III., after the glorious battle of (bei) Leipzig, *appointed* General Blücher Fieldmarshal and raised him to the rank of a prince. I *think* him an honest man, what do you think of him? Every one *thought* him rich, but when he died, it was found (man), that he had not enriched himself in his high position. Tell me, whom you associate *with*, and I will tell you, who you are. Never associate *with* people, who are inferior *to* you in character or cultivation of mind; when a youth associates *with* such, he can not expect to improve *in* mind or character. *To* whom have you written? *To* whom am I to write, *to* the father or *to* the son, or *to* both? *To* whom was the letter directed, *to* whom was it addressed? *With* what did you occupy yourself in your solitude, when you were in the country? I occupied myself *with* reading, and in my leisure-hours *with* riding on horseback, fishing and strolled about in the fields and woods. He pretends *to be* a doctor, but he is a quack. The swindler pretended *to be* a count and lived highly for a time *upon* the fruits of his swindlings, but was finally recognized as (als) [a] tailor. When Winkelried, the brave Swiss, sacrificed himself for his country, he cried in dying: 'A road <sup>1</sup>to liberty! Countrymen, take care *of* my wife and children. Parents take care *of* their children, when they are young and helpless; should dutiful children not take care *of* their indigent parents, when they are old and helpless? The death of Mirabeau was a misfortune *to* (für) the cause of royalty and constitutional liberty. The failure of Louis' XVI. attempt of flight was a cruel blow *to* (für) the hopes of the royalists. North-America is one of the richest countries in the world; it has a flourishing commerce, a good climate, a fertile soil, an abundance *of* valuable products and is rich *in* metals, the east abounds *in* iron and coal, the west *in* precious metals as gold and silver. The man is ill, you did not think *of* it, and I can not tell you anything *about* the affair, I do not know anything *of* it myself. He bought wine to

deal *in* it, but he will lose *on* it, instead of gaining *on* it; wine-trade requires more experience than he has. Too great trouble, when undeserved, may lead *to* despair.

to create, make *machen* zu  
to crown *kronen* zu  
to elect *wählen* zu  
to appoint *ernennen* zu  
to concern in *betheiligen* bei  
to cheat out of *betrügen* (o, o) um  
to taste of *schmecken* nach  
to smell of *riechen* (o, o) nach  
to be afraid of *sich fürchten* vor  
to draw from *zeichnen* nach  
to judge from *urteilen* nach  
to think *halten* für  
to associate with *umgehen* mit  
to improve in *gewinnen an* (dat.)  
to write to *schreiben an* (acc.)  
to direct to *richten an* (acc.)  
to address to *adressieren an* (acc.)  
to occupy with *beschäftigen* mit  
to pretend to be *sich ausgeben* für  
to take care of *sorgen* für  
abundance of *Überfluß an* (dat.)  
to think of *denken an* (acc.)  
to deal in *handeln* mit  
to lose on *verlieren an* (dat.)  
to lead to *führen* zu  
distinguished *ausgezeichnet*  
duke der *Herzog* 1  
property das *Vermögen*  
to maintain *behaupten*  
rank der *Rang*  
Franconian *fränkisch*  
crownprince der *Kronprinz*  
lawlessness die *Gesetzlosigkeit*  
anarchy die *Anarchie*  
every where *überall*  
to reign *herrschen*  
to restore *herstellen* (s.)  
appointment as die *Ernennung* zu  
bowl die *Bowle*

to discuss *sprechen* über  
politics die *Politik*  
hops der *Hoppen*  
to pay a visit *einen Besuch* machen  
vegetables *Vegetabilien*  
imagination die *Einbildungskraft*  
appearance der *Schein*  
to raise to *erheben* in  
rank of prince der *Fürstenstand*  
to enrich *bereichern*  
to be inferior to *stehen unter*  
cultivation of mind *geistige*  
*Bildung*  
solitude die *Einsamkeit*  
to stroll about *herumspendern*  
quack der *Quacksalber*  
swindler der *Schwindler*  
fruits der *Ertrag*  
swindling die *Schwinderei*  
to sacrifice *opfern*  
road die *Gasse*  
countryman { der *Sandsmann* -  
                  *Sandsleute* (plur.)  
dutiful *pflichttreu*  
cause die *Sache*  
royalty das *Rönigtum*  
constitutional *konstitutionell*  
failure das *Mißlingen*  
attempt of flight der *Flucht-*  
                  *versuch* 1  
a cruel blow *ein schwerer Schlag*  
commerce der *Handel*  
climate das *Klima*  
soil der *Boden*  
a precious metal *ein edles Metall*  
wine-trade der *Weinhandel*  
to require *erfordern*  
experience die *Erfahrung*  
despair die *Verzweiflung*.

### 76. Section.

Formation of deviated nouns of the feminine gender with the terminations: e, ei, in, heit, teit, schaft, ung.

#### Aufgabe 140.

##### 1. Nouns terminating in: e.

Form nouns by adding **e** (vowels modified) from the following adjectives:

Groß, stark, schwach, lang, kurz, breit, tief, hoch, dick, gut, treu, untreu, naß, lieb, hart, rot, schwarz.

Find the correspondent nouns in English, and try to make combinations with them in German.

##### 2. Nouns terminating in: ei.

a) The termination **ei** is mostly preceded by: **er**;

b) in derivatives, formed from verbs terminating in **eln**, by: **ei**;

c) some add **ei** without either of the two syllables.

Form nouns terminating in: **ei** from the following nouns and verbs:

a) Brauer brewer, Gerber tanner, Färber dyer, Weber weaver, Drucker printer, Seifensieder soap-maker, Branntweinbrenner distiller, Bäcker, Schlosser, Metzger, Buchbinder.

Here the termination signifies a trade, and the place where it is carried on.

b) Heucheln to feign, schmeicheln to flatter, tänseln to trifle, bummeln to idle, quälen to torture, necken to tease, zanken to quarrel, balgen to fight (between boys), kriechen to cringe, rasen to rage, schwärmen to be enthusiastic, spielen, schwindeln.

c) Collective nouns: Reiter, Wüste(n), Abt abbot, Pfarr(er) parson, Tyrann tyrant, Sklave, Land(er), Ketzer heretic, Gesel.

In b) an action or proceeding, often with a notion of disdain, is expressed. Most of c) are collective words.

Find the corresponding English words, and try to make combinations with them in German.

##### 3. Nouns terminating in: in (plur. innen).

Form feminine nouns with this termination from:

Feind, Freund, Lehrer, Schüler, Kaiser, König, Fürst, Prinz,

Herzog duke, Graf, Baron, Herr, Diener, Sklave, Maler painter, Dichter poet, Schriftsteller author, Tänzer, Sänger, Schauspieler actor, Heuchler hypocrite, Haushälter housekeeper, Gatte husband, Gemahl spouse, Bettler beggar, Krankenwärter nurse, Komponist composer, Spieler, Reiter, Nachbar, Herrscher ruler, Wohlthäter benefactor, Arbeiter, Tagelöhner day-labourer, Spinner, Schneider, nähen, stricken, waschen, bügeln to iron, Fuß machen (milliner), Gehülfe assistant (partner), Gefährte companion, Lebensgefährtin.

#### Aufgabe 141.

The terminations: **heit** und **keit**.

1. **heit** is to be added, and the corresponding English word to be found:

Dunkel, weise, blind, taub, zart, sicher, falsch, träge, faul, schwach, klug, rein, wahr, schön, frei, hoch, mehr, Mensch, Gott, Christ(en), Kind, Thor fool, gewöhnen.

|                   |                   |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| dumm stupid, dull | gewiß certain     | froh impudent           |
| schüchtern timid  | gemein vulgar     | feige cowardly          |
| trunken drunken   | roh raw, rude     | kühn bold               |
| gleich equal      | grob rude, coarse | schlau sly, klar clear. |

2. **keit** is to be added, and the corresponding English noun:

|                       |                               |                                   |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| flüchtig fleet        | behaglich comfortable         | ritterlich chivalrous             |
| thätig active         | sittlich moral                | beharrlich persevering            |
| geschäftig busy       | reinlich clean                | möglich possible                  |
| anständig decent      | zierlich neat                 | anhänglich attached               |
| schuldig owing        | fröhlich joyful               | wirklich real                     |
| wichtig important     | zärtlich tender, affectionate | geistlich spiritual, ecclesiastic |
| heimlich secretly     | sterblich mortal              | menshlich humane                  |
| öffentlich public     | billig just                   | weiblich feminine                 |
| trefflich excellent   | nachsichtig indulgent         | vertraulich confidential          |
| tauglich fit          | gefällig complaisant          | verdrüsslich ill humoured         |
| ehrlich honest        | übermüthig haughty            | vergeßlich forgetful              |
| redlich honest        | nachgiebig yielding           | verantwortlich responsible        |
| höflich polite        | nüchtern, eitel vain          | danfbar grateful                  |
| häßlich ugly          | schwächlich weakly            | fruchtbar fertile                 |
| fähig capable         | kränklich sickly              | ehrbare respectable, honest       |
| einig agreeing        | herzlich hearty               | flüchtig visible                  |
| ewig eternal          | deutlich distinct             | einsam lonely                     |
| heftig violent        | ähnlich similar, like         | grausam cruel                     |
| schwierig difficult   | sinnlich sensual              | sparsam economical                |
| lächerlich ridiculous | freundlich friendly           | schändlich base, infamous.        |
| nützlich useful       | aufmerksam attentive          |                                   |
| enthaltfam abstinent  |                               |                                   |

3. *Zeit*, preceded by *ig*, is to be added:

*Süß*, milder, *gerecht*, schnell, *leicht*, klein, *fest* firm, *feucht* damp, *geschwind* nimble (swift), *bang* anxious (afraid), *spröde* brittle.

### Aufgabe 142.

The terminations *ung* und *schaft*.

1. *ung* is to be added to the root of the verb, and corresponding English noun to be found.

|                      |                           |                         |
|----------------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| warnen to warn       | wahrnehmen to perceive    | erschaffen to create    |
| drohen to menace     | aufstehen to rise again   | entfernen to remove     |
| dulden to tolerate   | beerdigen to bury         | entdecken to discover   |
| stellen to place     | unterstützen to support   | erziehen to educate     |
| zahlen, be— to pay   | untersuchen to examine    | empfinden to feel       |
| bilden to form       | unterhandeln to negotiate | entschuldigen to excuse |
| achten to esteem     | unterbrechen to interrupt | gerüstet to be equipped |
| sitzen to sit        | überlegen to consider     | verrückt to be mad      |
| handeln to act, deal | überzeugen to convince    | gerührt to be moved     |
| nähren to feed       | überreden to persuade     |                         |
| wandern to wander    | übersetzen to translate   |                         |
| teilen to divide     | unterhalten to converse   |                         |
| trennen to separate  | genesen to recover        |                         |
| retten to save       | empfehlen to recommend    |                         |

verehren to reverence  
verschwenden to squander  
verführen to mislead, seduce  
verfolgen to pursue  
versichern to assure  
verzweifeln to despair  
verweigern to refuse  
vergrößern to augment  
vermehrten to increase  
sich verstellen to disguise  
vorstellen to intrude

perform  
verbinden to connect  
erzählen to tell  
erfüllen to fulfill  
erfinden to invent  
erinnern to remember  
erklären to explain  
verändern to change  
verändern to change

Most of the directly, as I want  
to the student, the is very short. Bring  
versation and reading



2. The termination *ſchaft* is to be added (many of them are collective nouns):

Mann, Nachbar, Herr, Diener, Freund, Feind, Gefandte, Bruder, Land, wiſſen, leiden ſuffer, Gefelle companion, Wirt landlord, Verwandte relation, Knecht ſervant, Bekannte acquaintance, Ritter knight.

#### Aufgabe 143.

There are two more *affixes* and a *prefix* to be mentioned, by which nouns are formed.

1. Nouns with the termination *nis* are neuter or feminine.

|                 |                      |                |
|-----------------|----------------------|----------------|
| das Bedürfnis   | das Verſtändnis      | die Finſternis |
| „ Gefängnis     | „ Mißverſtändnis     | „ Wildnis      |
| „ Verhältnis    | „ Zerwürfniß         | „ Kenntnis     |
| „ Mißverhältnis | „ Bündnis            | „ Erkenntnis   |
| „ Vermächtnis   | „ Bekenntnis         | „ Erlaubnis    |
| „ Gedächtnis    | „ Glaubensbekenntnis | „ Bedrängnis   |
| „ Verhängnis    | „ Wildnis            | „ Betrübnis    |
| „ Ereignis      | „ Verzeiſchnis       | „ Beſorgnis    |
| „ Ergebnis      | „ Begräbnis          | „ Erſparnis    |
| „ Hindernis     | „ Leidenbegängnis    | „ Verſäumnis.  |
| „ Geſchändnis   | „ Erlebnis           |                |

2. Nouns with the termination *tum* are neuter, a few masculine.

|               |              |              |
|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| das Herzogtum | das Judentum | das Waſſer   |
| „ Kaiſertum   | „ Heidentum  | „ Siechtum   |
| „ Fürſtentum  | „ Rittertum  | der Reichtum |
| „ Wiſſtum     | „ Altertum   | „ Irrtum.    |
| „ Chriſtentum | „ Eigentum   |              |

3. Nouns with the prefix *Ge* are mostly neuter and nearly all of them collective nouns; ſome are masc. and a few feminine.

|             |               |               |
|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| das Geſicht | das Getreibe  | das Gewehr    |
| „ Geſchir   | „ Gewäſſer    | „ Genie       |
| „ Gefühl    | „ Gewölſ      | der Geſchmack |
| „ Gemüt     | „ Gewitter    | „ Geruch      |
| „ Geſchrei  | „ Gebüſch     | „ Geſang      |
| „ Geheul    | „ Gebirg      | „ Gedanke     |
| „ Geſchöſn  | „ Gemach      | „ Gehorſam    |
| „ Geſpräch  | „ Geräte      | „ Gefährte    |
| „ Geplauder | „ Gebicht     | die Gewalt    |
| „ Geſchmäz  | „ Gerücht     | „ Geſtalt     |
| „ Gerede    | „ Gericht     | „ Gefahr      |
| „ Geſetz    | „ Gewüſchl    | „ Geduld.     |
| „ Gewüſchl  | „ Gezwitſcher |               |

Moſt of the words of this exerciſe are already known to the ſtudent, the other will occaſionally be met in converſation and reading, and be found in the dictionary.

## 77. Conversation.

It will be advisable to take Conversation, Letters and Tales in turns to be less fatiguing.

### 1. In a hotel.

I wish to see the landlord<sup>1</sup> of the hotel. I wish to have two beds for a few days. I wish my (a) bedroom on (im) the first floor<sup>2</sup>. Can we have three single<sup>3</sup> bedrooms here to<sup>4</sup> night, one bed in each room? A double-bedded<sup>5</sup> room will not suit<sup>6</sup> us. Give me the key of my room, I have number<sup>7</sup> twelve. Where is the bell<sup>8</sup> to (in) this room? The bell does not ring<sup>9</sup>. Will you send the chambermaid<sup>10</sup> directly, for we are tired and want<sup>11</sup> to go to bed. Tell the chambermaid, to bring (fie möge) more water and towels<sup>12</sup>. Bring me fresh water. I should like<sup>13</sup> to take a warm bath. If you have no foot-bath<sup>14</sup>, a little tub<sup>15</sup> will do just as well<sup>16</sup>. I want<sup>17</sup> my bed warmed directly. The bed seems (to be) very hard. Are the sheets<sup>18</sup> well aired<sup>19</sup>? Where is the water-closet<sup>20</sup>? My boots are quite wet, will you have them thoroughly dried<sup>21</sup> [for] me by to-morrow morning; for I always catch a cold, if they are at all<sup>22</sup> damp<sup>23</sup>. Will you have this chest of drawers wiped out<sup>24</sup>, it is rather dirty. Put the [box of] matches<sup>25</sup> on the table. Will you send the commissioner<sup>26</sup> to me? At what hour do we dine<sup>27</sup> (wirb)? Bring us tea for four<sup>28</sup> directly. Why is dinner not ready<sup>29</sup>? I had ordered<sup>30</sup> it for (auf) half past twelve punctually<sup>31</sup> and have no time to lose. At what hour is [your] table d'hôte? Have you many people at<sup>32</sup> it? Keep<sup>33</sup> six places<sup>34</sup> for me. How much do you charge<sup>35</sup> a head<sup>36</sup> at the table d'hôte? Does that include<sup>37</sup> wine? Show me your bill of fare<sup>38</sup> and list of wines<sup>39</sup>. Bring me half a bottle of this hock<sup>40</sup>. I will thank you<sup>41</sup> to hand me that dish, the vegetable. Have you any wine, which is not acid<sup>42</sup>? Mosel-wine is generally too acid for English. Give me another fork. Waiter<sup>43</sup>, the linnen<sup>44</sup> is not clean.

Will you send the washerwoman directly, as I want my linnen<sup>45</sup> washed, and my stay<sup>46</sup> here is very short. Bring

me the newspaper. Have you any English or French paper? Have you a commissioner, to go<sup>45</sup> (der mid) through the town with me and show all, that is worth seeing<sup>46</sup>? What must I pay him per (für die) hour, per day? Is he ready, I am anxious<sup>47</sup> to set out<sup>47</sup>? At what hour do the letters arrive from England? Which is the way to the post-office? Have you a letter for me? Let me have five stamps<sup>48</sup> for abroad<sup>49</sup>. Bring me some letter-paper, pen and ink<sup>50</sup>. I wish to have my passport<sup>51</sup> signed<sup>52</sup> at the police-office<sup>53</sup>. Will you see, that it is done<sup>54</sup>. Is it necessary to have the passport signed here? Is there an English consul here? In what street does he live? Show me the way to his house. Where can I get [my] money changed<sup>55</sup>? Where does a banker<sup>56</sup> live? Show me the way to his house.

I wish to see (prüfen) a medical man, I am unwell. Will you send for<sup>57</sup> him, and (hvar) [send for him] immediately<sup>58</sup>. Have you a doctor in this town, who can speak English? If he understands French, that will do<sup>59</sup>. What fee<sup>60</sup> should I give him? Is that enough? I want some medicine, some salt, rhubarb<sup>61</sup>, pills. Have you fresh leeches<sup>62</sup>? these do not bite<sup>63</sup>. Please change<sup>64</sup> them for others.

Can I have a warm bath? Have you baths in the house? Have you a thermometer? Bring me some (a piece of) soap. Did you tell the hair-dresser<sup>65</sup> to come (bestellen) to dress my hair<sup>66</sup>, to cut my hair? When does the barber<sup>67</sup> come to (zum) shave<sup>68</sup>?

Call me at six in the morning<sup>69</sup>. Will you give a loud knock<sup>70</sup> at my door at a quarter before five to-morrow and let<sup>71</sup> my boots be there and (hvar) well dried. I want<sup>72</sup> my coat brushed<sup>73</sup>. Close<sup>74</sup> the shutters<sup>74</sup>. Can I have the breakfast, before I start<sup>75</sup>? We will have breakfast for two punctually at six in the morning. Order a hackney coach<sup>76</sup> [for] me. Why is the carriage not yet come (da)? Take that out of the room. Carry my luggage<sup>77</sup> into the bedroom. My luggage must be put<sup>78</sup> on [board] the steamer (taken<sup>78</sup> to the railway). Light<sup>79</sup> a fire in my room. Make a good fire. The fire is going out, stir<sup>80</sup> it. How much have I to pay? Bring me my account. Give me a speci-

fied<sup>81</sup> account. Have you an omnibus to go (der) to the station? How long<sup>82</sup> will it take [me] to walk to the station?

<sup>1</sup> Herr. <sup>2</sup> der Stod. <sup>3</sup> einschläferig. <sup>4</sup> für die. <sup>5</sup> zweischläferig.  
<sup>6</sup> dienen. <sup>7</sup> [die] Nummer. <sup>8</sup> die Schelle. <sup>9</sup> schellen. <sup>10</sup> Zimmermädchen.  
<sup>11</sup> möchten. <sup>12</sup> das Handtuch 2. <sup>13</sup> Badewanne. <sup>14</sup> Bittchen. <sup>15</sup> die-  
 selben Dienste. <sup>16</sup> Bettuch. <sup>17</sup> recht trocken, gut getrocknet. <sup>18</sup> der Ab-  
 tritt 1. <sup>19</sup> gut trocknen. <sup>20</sup> im mindesten. <sup>21</sup> feucht. <sup>22</sup> aussegen. <sup>23</sup> die  
 Streichhölzchen. <sup>24</sup> Kommissionsdr. <sup>25</sup> speisen. <sup>26</sup> vier Portionen. <sup>27</sup> bereit.  
<sup>28</sup> bestellen. <sup>29</sup> Punkt. <sup>30</sup> an. <sup>31</sup> belegen. <sup>32</sup> das Couvert 1. <sup>33</sup> loßen.  
<sup>34</sup> Couvert. <sup>35</sup> eingeschlossen. <sup>36</sup> der Speisezettel. <sup>37</sup> die Weinfarte. <sup>38</sup> Rhein-  
 wein. <sup>39</sup> bitte, gefälligst. <sup>40</sup> keine Säure haben. <sup>41</sup> Kellner. <sup>42</sup> das Tisch-  
 zeug. <sup>43</sup> die Wäsche. <sup>44</sup> der Aufenthalt. <sup>45</sup> herumführen. <sup>46</sup> die Sehens-  
 würdigkeit. <sup>47</sup> sich auf den Weg machen. <sup>48</sup> die Briefmarke. <sup>49</sup> das Aus-  
 land. <sup>50</sup> die Tinte. <sup>51</sup> der Paß. <sup>52</sup> visieren. <sup>53</sup> das Polizeibureau.  
<sup>54</sup> besorgen. <sup>55</sup> gewechselt bekommen. <sup>56</sup> Banquier. <sup>57</sup> nach. <sup>58</sup> sofort.  
<sup>59</sup> genügen. <sup>60</sup> das Honorar. <sup>61</sup> der Rhabarber. <sup>62</sup> der Blutegel. <sup>63</sup> an-  
 beißen (i. i.) s. <sup>64</sup> andere dafür geben. <sup>65</sup> der Coiffeur, Friseur. <sup>66</sup> frisieren.  
<sup>67</sup> der Barbier. <sup>68</sup> rasieren. <sup>69</sup> morgen früh. <sup>70</sup> stark klopfen. <sup>71</sup> sorgen,  
 daß. <sup>72</sup> ausbürsten (s.). <sup>73</sup> zumachen (s.). <sup>74</sup> der Laden. <sup>75</sup> abreißen (s.).  
<sup>76</sup> die Droschke. <sup>77</sup> das Gepäc. <sup>78</sup> bringen. <sup>79</sup> einzeigen (s.). <sup>80</sup> führen.  
<sup>81</sup> spezifizieren. <sup>82</sup> wie viele Zeit.

## 2. Breakfast. Tea.

Will breakfast soon be<sup>1</sup> ready? I begin to feel hungry. Yes, Sir, breakfast is quite ready; every thing is on the table. Let (wir wollen) us sit down (daran) then at once. I shall presently want some boiling<sup>2</sup> water, ask Susan<sup>3</sup>, if the water boils. You have not put a slop-basin<sup>4</sup> on the table. I will fetch it, Madam<sup>5</sup>. We have not cups enough. Bring another spoon, two cups and a saucer<sup>6</sup>. What do you take, Mrs. B., tea or coffee? I would thank you (nehme) for a cup of tea, if you please. And what do you take, Mr. B? Thank you, Mrs. N., I will take a cup of coffee. Is the tea to your liking<sup>7</sup>? I think, it is rather too strong. I am very fond<sup>8</sup> of [a cup of] strong tea. I beg your pardon<sup>9</sup>, I have given you no tea-spoon. Is your tea sweet enough? I will trouble you<sup>10</sup> for a small piece of sugar; I like my tea rather sweet. Is your coffee, as you like it? It is very nice, indeed. If you should like<sup>11</sup> some more sugar or cream<sup>12</sup>, will you help<sup>12a</sup> yourself; you see it is all on the table. No, I thank you, Madam, it is just<sup>13</sup> to my taste; I do not like much sugar or cream. May I

trouble<sup>10</sup> you for a tea-spoon, Madam? I beg your pardon, I quite forgot to give you one. Allow [me] to help<sup>13a</sup> you to a slice of roasted ham<sup>14</sup>, or beef. Or would you prefer an egg? Much obliged to you<sup>15</sup>; I will take a small piece of ham, if you please. And what will you take, Mr. S.? You have not tasted<sup>16</sup> this tongue<sup>17</sup>; I hope, you [will] take a piece of it. I will<sup>18</sup>, Madam; it seems to be delicious; it looks<sup>19</sup> so tempting<sup>20</sup>, that I can not refuse<sup>21</sup> it. I [will] trouble you for<sup>10</sup> an egg. [Would] not you take some buttered toast<sup>22</sup>, Miss Mary? No thank you, Madam, I could not take any more. Permit [me] (daß) to offer<sup>23</sup> you another piece of this cake. A very small piece, if you please. But you have not yet tasted my marmalade<sup>24</sup>. Allow me to help you<sup>13a</sup> to a little of that. Thank you, I will take a little, I am very fond of marmalade. You do not eat<sup>25</sup> any bread and butter, gentlemen; you do not seem to relish<sup>26</sup> my bread and butter. I beg your pardon, we have made<sup>26</sup> a very good breakfast. These rolls<sup>27</sup> are very fresh and delightful. Tell the servant, to chop<sup>28</sup> (daß sie) some more sugar and to bring boiling water. Here is the sugar, Madam, I will fetch the water directly. Can I help<sup>29</sup> you to another cup of coffee or tea? No, thank you, we have quite finished<sup>30</sup>. I fear you have made<sup>31</sup> a very poor breakfast. I for my part<sup>32</sup> have made<sup>31</sup> an excellent<sup>33</sup> breakfast, and can say, that I never relished<sup>31</sup> it better in all my life. Then take away [the breakfast things]<sup>34</sup>, and wipe<sup>35</sup> the table.

<sup>1</sup> fein. <sup>2</sup> kochen. <sup>3</sup> Susanne. <sup>4</sup> Spülnapf. <sup>5</sup> gnädige Frau. <sup>6</sup> die Untertasse. <sup>7</sup> nach Ihrem Geschmack. <sup>8</sup> gern trinken. <sup>9</sup> die Entschuldigung. <sup>10</sup> bitten um. <sup>11</sup> haben wollen (pres.). <sup>12</sup> der Kaffee. <sup>12a</sup> sich bedienen (pres.). <sup>13</sup> ganz. <sup>13a</sup> daß ich gebe. <sup>14</sup> Stück gerösteten Schinken. <sup>15</sup> danke sehr (bestens). <sup>16</sup> versuchen. <sup>17</sup> die Zunge. <sup>18</sup> Ich bin so frei. <sup>19</sup> aussetzen. <sup>20</sup> einladend. <sup>21</sup> zurückweisen. <sup>22</sup> geröstetes Brot mit Butter. <sup>23</sup> geben. <sup>24</sup> die Marmelade. <sup>25</sup> nehmen. <sup>26</sup> schmecken. <sup>27</sup> das Brötchen. <sup>28</sup> klein machen. <sup>29</sup> einschenken. <sup>30</sup> fertig. <sup>31</sup> schmecken. <sup>32</sup> das Teil. <sup>33</sup> vortrefflich. <sup>34</sup> abtragen (s.). <sup>35</sup> abwischen.

### 3. Dinner.

What are<sup>1</sup> we to have for dinner? What would you like to have? We have not yet ordered<sup>2</sup> anything, so<sup>3</sup>

it is still time to write the bill of fare<sup>4</sup>. I am quite indifferent<sup>5</sup> [about], what we eat. Let us have<sup>2</sup> some good soup. I should like to have a roast leg of mutton<sup>6</sup> and an apple-pudding<sup>7</sup>. But we must also have [some] fish<sup>8</sup>. There is no fish in the market. Then we must have some game<sup>9</sup>, or some poultry<sup>10</sup>. Tell the cook to let the meat be well done<sup>11</sup> (rather underdone<sup>12</sup>), and desire her to be punctual to the time<sup>13</sup>. I am afraid, we shall have but a very indifferent<sup>14</sup> dinner. Never mind<sup>14a</sup>, we must manage<sup>15</sup> as well as we can.

At what time shall we dine? We must wait till six o'clock; we are not to have dinner till<sup>16</sup> my father's return from town. Shall we have any body to dinner to day? Do you expect company? Mr. B. has promised to come, if the weather is fine. Well, you are just in time<sup>17</sup>; we were just going<sup>18</sup> to sit down to dinner. We were uncertain, whether you would come or not. I hurried<sup>19</sup> as much as I could, but I was prevented<sup>20</sup> so much, that I could not be here in time<sup>21</sup>. I hope, dinner has (is) not [been] spoiled<sup>22</sup> through me<sup>23</sup>. Now take a chair near the fire. No, I thank you, I am not cold at all. I will rather sit with my face to the fire. You will find a draft<sup>24</sup> there, when the door is opened<sup>25</sup>. Desire the servant to bring the dinner<sup>26</sup> immediately.

What shall I help<sup>27</sup> you to? [Will]<sup>27a</sup> you take some soup? No, I thank you, I do not much care for<sup>28</sup> soup, I would rather take a slice of that boiled beef. [Will] you not take some of this fish? Thank you, a small piece, if you please. What vegetables [will] you take? May I help<sup>27</sup> you to a potato? Allow me<sup>29</sup> to recommend you this cauliflower<sup>29a</sup>. It looks very nice indeed, I [will] thank<sup>30</sup> you for a little. Allow [me] to help<sup>31</sup> you to a piece of this roast-beef. What part<sup>32</sup> do you like best? Will you have it well done or underdone? I do not like it overdone. Did I help<sup>33</sup> you to your liking? Quite<sup>33a</sup>, Mr. N., this is a fine piece of meat. Will you take a little fat<sup>34</sup>? Give me some of the lean<sup>35</sup>, if you please. Here is a piece, which I hope will please you. You have no gravy<sup>36</sup>. I have plenty<sup>37</sup>, I thank you. May I trouble<sup>38</sup> you for some

peas? Will you also take a few of these beans? Here are spinach<sup>39</sup> and asparagus<sup>40</sup>. Do you eat salad<sup>41</sup>? I will thank you<sup>42</sup> for a few potatoes and a little asparagus. You have no bread, give me leave<sup>43</sup> to help<sup>27</sup> you to a piece. You have not eaten any pudding. It does not agree<sup>44</sup> with me. I will thank you for a small piece, just to taste it. Now what can I offer<sup>45</sup> you? You will take a piece of this fowl, I hope. (I take) not any more, I thank you. A little piece of this fowl can not hurt<sup>46</sup> you. A very small piece then, if you please. Bring a plate to this gentleman, Susan. Which (was) do you like best, a leg<sup>47</sup> or a wing<sup>48</sup>? I have no choice at all<sup>49</sup>, it is quite the same to me<sup>5</sup>. You gave me a good deal too much. Half<sup>49a</sup> of it [will] be sufficient<sup>50</sup>. Will that do<sup>51</sup>? Thank you, that is plenty<sup>52</sup>. You are fond of plum-pudding, I know; [will] you allow [me], to help you to a piece? Not quite so large a piece<sup>53</sup>, if you please. I prefer a little tart<sup>54</sup>; it looks quite tempting. Take away<sup>55</sup> now [the breakfast things], and bring us some wine.

<sup>1</sup> sollen wir essen. <sup>2</sup> bestellen. <sup>3</sup> also. <sup>4</sup> der Speisegettel. <sup>5</sup> einerlei. <sup>6</sup> der Hammelsbraten. <sup>7</sup> der Pudding. <sup>8</sup> der Fisch. <sup>9</sup> das Bild. <sup>10</sup> das Geflügel. <sup>11</sup> gut braten. <sup>12</sup> nicht zu viel (kurz) braten. <sup>13</sup> pünktlich fertig sein. <sup>14</sup> mittelmäßig, fein besonderes. <sup>14a</sup> macht nichts. <sup>15</sup> sich befehlen. <sup>16</sup> erst wenn. <sup>17</sup> gerade zurecht. <sup>18</sup> wollten eben. <sup>19</sup> sich eilen. <sup>20</sup> aufgehalten werden. <sup>21</sup> zu rechter Zeit. <sup>22</sup> verderben (a, o). <sup>23</sup> meine Schuld. <sup>24</sup> ziehen. <sup>25</sup> aufgehen. <sup>26</sup> auftragen. <sup>27</sup> reichen. <sup>27a</sup> always the present tense in German. <sup>28</sup> sich machen aus. <sup>29</sup> ich kann. <sup>29a</sup> der Blumenkohl. <sup>30</sup> ich bitte um. <sup>31</sup> daß ich gebe. <sup>32</sup> das Stück. <sup>33</sup> bedienen. <sup>33a</sup> ganz und gar. <sup>34</sup> das Fett. <sup>35</sup> das Magere. <sup>36</sup> die Sauce. <sup>37</sup> reichlich versehen sein. <sup>38</sup> bitten um. <sup>39</sup> der Spinat. <sup>40</sup> die Spargel. <sup>41</sup> der Salat. <sup>42</sup> bitten um. <sup>43</sup> erlauben Sie, daß. <sup>44</sup> vertragen. <sup>45</sup> anbieten. <sup>46</sup> schaden. <sup>47</sup> das Bein. <sup>48</sup> der Flügel. <sup>49</sup> gar nicht wählerisch. <sup>49a</sup> die Hälfte. <sup>50</sup> genügen. <sup>51</sup> ist es so recht. <sup>52</sup> reichlich. <sup>53</sup> viel. <sup>54</sup> die Torte. <sup>55</sup> abtragen (u, a) s.

#### 4. Supper.

I hope, you will stay (hier) and sup with us. I am very much obliged to you<sup>1</sup>, but I fear it [will] delay<sup>2</sup> me too long. Not in the least, I will order<sup>3</sup> (it) directly. Well, I will stay then; but pray, do not order anything<sup>4</sup> on purpose for me<sup>5</sup>. Bread and cheese will be quite sufficient<sup>6</sup> for me. We shall have only a little cold meat and a few oysters<sup>7</sup>. Do you like<sup>8</sup> oysters? O yes, I am very fond

of them. I have just<sup>9</sup> received a whole barrel<sup>10</sup> of oysters; let us try now, how they are. There is a double rap<sup>11</sup> at the door<sup>12</sup>; I believe, it is my friend, Mr. N., who (has) half and half promised me to come. Ah, how do you do, [my] dear friend? I am very glad<sup>13</sup> to see you. [I am] very well, I thank you, and I am very happy<sup>13</sup> to get to so comfortable<sup>14</sup> a fire-place<sup>15</sup>; for the weather is very raw and cold. You see, you are<sup>16</sup> just in time to take your supper with us. Or will you first take a little wine and water? No, I thank you, I will rather wait till by and by<sup>17</sup>. Well, sit down<sup>18</sup> then. Here is some ham and cold beef, and here are also some oysters, what shall I offer you first? I will take a few oysters, if you please. How do you like<sup>19</sup> them? They are very good indeed; they seem to be quite fresh. Won't you take two or three more<sup>20</sup>? No, I thank you; I will take a little ham, if you please<sup>21</sup>. Take some beef with it<sup>22</sup>. Or will you have a piece of this apple-pie<sup>23</sup>, or a piece of this lobster<sup>24</sup>? No, I thank you, I can not take anything more. I am afraid you have supped very badly<sup>25</sup>. On the contrary; I have made an excellent<sup>26</sup> supper. Will you (not) take one of the oranges<sup>27</sup>? No, I thank you, I never eat fruit at night.

<sup>1</sup> Sie sind sehr freundlich. <sup>2</sup> aufhalten (s.). <sup>3</sup> auftragen lassen. <sup>4</sup> Umstände machen. <sup>5</sup> meinetwegen. <sup>6</sup> genügen. <sup>7</sup> die Außer. <sup>8</sup> ein Freund sein von. <sup>9</sup> eben. <sup>10</sup> das Fäßchen. <sup>11</sup> klopfen. <sup>12</sup> die Hausthür. <sup>13</sup> freuen. <sup>14</sup> behaglich. <sup>15</sup> das Kaminfeuer (Ofen). <sup>16</sup> zurecht kommen. <sup>17</sup> nachher. <sup>18</sup> Platz nehmen. <sup>19</sup> schmecken. <sup>20</sup> ein paar. <sup>21</sup> erlauben. <sup>22</sup> dazu. <sup>23</sup> die Pastete. <sup>24</sup> der Hummer. <sup>25</sup> nicht sehr schmecken. <sup>26</sup> ausgezeichnet. <sup>27</sup> die Apfelsine.

## 5. To take<sup>1</sup> a furnished<sup>2</sup> room.

Have you a room to let? I have several and at different<sup>3</sup> prices. Will you have your lodgings (es), Sir, by<sup>4</sup> the day, the week or the month? Let me see<sup>5</sup> it, and I will decide<sup>6</sup> afterwards. Here is a very pretty room on the first floor<sup>7</sup>, there is a dressing-room<sup>8</sup> next to it<sup>9</sup>. How much do you ask<sup>10</sup> for it? If you only take it for a few days, I must have<sup>11</sup> two Marks a (ben) day, if you take it for a week, you [must] pay<sup>12</sup> twelve Marks, by the month it is<sup>13</sup> forty M. That seems to me rather dear. You see,



it is very clean<sup>14</sup>, the furniture is handsome and new, and there is a fine mirror over the chimney-piece<sup>15</sup>. Is the bed good? The mattresses have just been newly stuffed<sup>16</sup> and are very soft<sup>17</sup>. How often do you change<sup>18</sup> the sheets? Every fortnight, and the towel<sup>19</sup> once a week. Does the chimney smoke<sup>20</sup>? We shall soon have winter, and it will be necessary<sup>21</sup> to have a fire<sup>22</sup>. It begins to be cold already. It does not smoke at all<sup>23</sup>. Can I have warm water to wash me with (zum), when I want it? If you give a trifle<sup>24</sup> to the servant, she will wait upon<sup>25</sup> you attentively, and will also clean your shoes and boots. As this is the case, I will take the room for three months, and will pay you a month in advance<sup>26</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> die Miete. <sup>2</sup> möbliert. <sup>3</sup> verschieden. <sup>4</sup> für. <sup>5</sup> zeigen. <sup>6</sup> sich entscheiden. <sup>7</sup> der Stof. <sup>8</sup> Ankleidezimmer. <sup>9</sup> daneben. <sup>10</sup> fordern. <sup>11</sup> berechnen. <sup>12</sup> geben. <sup>13</sup> lassen. <sup>14</sup> nett. <sup>15</sup> das Kaminstück. <sup>16</sup> polstern. <sup>17</sup> weich. <sup>18</sup> wechseln. <sup>19</sup> das Handtuch. <sup>20</sup> rauchen. <sup>21</sup> notwendig. <sup>22</sup> einheizen. <sup>23</sup> im mindesten. <sup>24</sup> die Kleinigkeit. <sup>25</sup> bedienen. <sup>26</sup> im Voraus.

## 6. To pay<sup>1</sup> a visit.

Good morning, Mr. N., how do you do? Very well, I thank you<sup>2</sup>. I am rejoiced to hear it. Pray be seated. Sit down on the sofa. And how are you? Tolerably well<sup>3</sup>. I have been ill for some days past<sup>4</sup>, but I am<sup>5</sup> better to day. The weather is not good for delicate<sup>6</sup> people. I have had<sup>7</sup> a cold too for<sup>8</sup> the last week. That then is the reason<sup>9</sup>, why we had not the pleasure of your company<sup>10</sup> at supper<sup>11</sup> the day before yesterday. I hope, you will do me the favour<sup>12</sup> to dine with me. I am very much obliged<sup>13</sup> to you for your kind invitation, but it is impossible [for] me to accept<sup>14</sup> it, I am engaged<sup>15</sup>. I did myself the honour<sup>16</sup> to call on<sup>17</sup> you yesterday. You had just gone out. I have not been told of it (man). I regret<sup>18</sup> (daß ich) not having been at home. If you have a mind<sup>19</sup> for a chat<sup>20</sup>, sit down. Come near the fire. Give this gentleman a chair. No, I thank you, do not trouble yourself<sup>21</sup>. It is late already, and I must be off<sup>22</sup>. I have an engagement<sup>23</sup> at (für) eleven, and it is already half past ten. Do me the favour<sup>24</sup> to<sup>25</sup> sit down only<sup>26</sup> for two minutes. You come seldom to

see<sup>27</sup> me. Pray come nearer the fire, I am sure, you must be cold. No, I am not cold. Though the weather is foggy, it is very mild. I must go, it is late; good bye<sup>28</sup>. I shall (wir) see you again this evening, where we commonly meet<sup>29</sup>. Yes, I will come there<sup>30</sup>, especially as I want to speak to Mr. N. I wish you [a] good morning. Take care of yourself<sup>31</sup>. We shall meet again this evening.

<sup>1</sup> Abſtattung. <sup>2</sup> Ihnen aufzuwarten. <sup>3</sup> ſo ziemlich. <sup>4</sup> in den letzten Tagen. <sup>5</sup> gehen. <sup>6</sup> von zarter Geſundheit. <sup>7</sup> leiden. <sup>8</sup> in. <sup>9</sup> der Grund. <sup>10</sup> Sie bei mir zu ſehen. <sup>11</sup> Abend. <sup>12</sup> das Vergnügen. <sup>13</sup> danken. <sup>14</sup> annehmen. <sup>15</sup> verſagen. <sup>16</sup> wollte. <sup>17</sup> beſuchen. <sup>18</sup> bedauern. <sup>19</sup> die Luſt. <sup>20</sup> plaudern. <sup>21</sup> ſich bemühen. <sup>22</sup> ſich empfehlen. <sup>23</sup> die Verabredung. <sup>24</sup> der Gefallen. <sup>25</sup> und. <sup>26</sup> wenn auch nur. <sup>27</sup> beſuchen. <sup>28</sup> Ihr Diener. <sup>29</sup> treffen. <sup>30</sup> hin. <sup>31</sup> vorſichtig ſein, ſich in acht nehmen.

## 7. With a tailor.

Good morning, Sir. Good morning, Mr. N. I have sent for you to be measured<sup>1</sup> [for] a suit of clothes<sup>2</sup>. Very well<sup>3</sup>; what do you wish to have? I want a dress-coat, a shooting-coat<sup>4</sup>, a waist-coat<sup>5</sup> and two pair of trowsers<sup>6</sup>; but I must tell you before hand<sup>7</sup>, that I must have every thing next Friday. It is rather a busy time<sup>8</sup> just now, [being] so near (vor) Christmas; but if you want your things particularly<sup>9</sup>, we must contrive<sup>10</sup> to get them ready<sup>11</sup>. Well, will you first take my measure<sup>12</sup> for (von) a coat? How will you have it made? Make it as they wear them now; I do not like to be out of fashion<sup>13</sup>. Let<sup>14</sup> the sleeves<sup>15</sup> be long and wide, and the collar<sup>16</sup> must not be too low. How do you wish to have your shooting-coat made? How are coats worn now, single- or double-breasted<sup>17</sup>? They are (man) worn both ways<sup>18</sup>, but more double-breasted. Well make it double-breasted then, and not too short, if you please. Do you wish to have an outside<sup>19</sup> breast-pocket<sup>20</sup>? No, I think it is rather out of fashion; but an inside<sup>21</sup> pocket on each side. Have you any choice<sup>22</sup> respecting<sup>23</sup> the buttons? No, I am not particular<sup>24</sup> about them; but do not let<sup>25</sup> them be too small. Will you allow me to measure<sup>12</sup> you for the waist-coat and trowsers? What is the fashion<sup>26</sup> now in regard to (mit) waist-coats? I should like to have it very good<sup>27</sup>, this article of dress<sup>28</sup> being a

great improvement<sup>29</sup> or the contrary, according as<sup>30</sup> it is fashionable or unfashionable<sup>31</sup>. Waist-coats are mostly worn single-breasted, especially<sup>32</sup> with a dress-coat. Make it so then, but let it not come down<sup>33</sup> quite so low<sup>34</sup> as this. What sort of buttons will you have? I will have them covered<sup>35</sup> with the same stuff<sup>36</sup>. Have you any orders<sup>37</sup> respecting the trowsers? No, I leave<sup>38</sup> that to you; of course, you will make them after the present<sup>39</sup> fashion; but I do not like them too tight<sup>40</sup>. I know, they are worn very tight just now; but I find it a ridiculous<sup>41</sup> fashion, and I will not be tyrannized<sup>42</sup> by it. They shall be made exactly<sup>43</sup> as you like them<sup>44</sup>. But remember<sup>45</sup>, I must have the whole suit Friday without fail<sup>46</sup>. You shall have it on Friday evening. Mind<sup>47</sup>, if you disappoint me<sup>48</sup>, this will be the last work you [ever] do for me. —

Have you brought my suit of clothes? Yes, Sir, here it is. You are a man of [your] word; but, frankly<sup>49</sup>, I began to grow impatient. It is but nine o'clock, and I had promised them you [some time] in (für) the evening. Nor do I complain<sup>50</sup>; but let me try<sup>51</sup> them on, to see how they fit<sup>52</sup>. You have made the sleeves hardly<sup>53</sup> long and wide enough, and it cuts me under the arm. It is too long waisted<sup>54</sup>. It sits in wrinkles<sup>55</sup> between the shoulders<sup>56</sup>. I think everything fits<sup>57</sup> you exceedingly<sup>58</sup> well. You were never better dressed<sup>59</sup> in your life.

<sup>1</sup> anmessen lassen. <sup>2</sup> der Anzug. <sup>3</sup> wohl. <sup>4</sup> Jagdrock. <sup>5</sup> die Weste. <sup>6</sup> die Hose. <sup>7</sup> im voraus. <sup>8</sup> die Arbeit geht stark. <sup>9</sup> notwendig. <sup>10</sup> sehen. <sup>11</sup> fertig. <sup>12</sup> das Maß. <sup>13</sup> altmodisch, unmodern. <sup>14</sup> machen. <sup>15</sup> der Ärmel. <sup>16</sup> der Tragen. <sup>17</sup> ein-, zweireihig. <sup>18</sup> auf beide Art. <sup>19</sup> äußere. <sup>20</sup> die Brusttasche. <sup>21</sup> innere. <sup>22</sup> der Bunsch. <sup>23</sup> wegen. <sup>24</sup> einerlei. <sup>25</sup> nehmen. <sup>26</sup> die Robe. <sup>27</sup> recht schön, fleißig. <sup>28</sup> das Kleidungsstück. <sup>29</sup> den Anzug heben. <sup>30</sup> je nachdem. <sup>31</sup> unmodern. <sup>32</sup> besonders. <sup>33</sup> machen. <sup>34</sup> lang. <sup>35</sup> überziehen. <sup>36</sup> der Stoff. <sup>37</sup> der Bunsch l. <sup>38</sup> überlassen. <sup>39</sup> jetzt. <sup>40</sup> eng. <sup>41</sup> lächerlich. <sup>42</sup> sich tyrannisieren lassen. <sup>43</sup> genau. <sup>44</sup> wünschen. <sup>45</sup> nicht vergessen. <sup>46</sup> unfehlbar. <sup>47</sup> hören. <sup>48</sup> nicht Wort halten. <sup>49</sup> offen gestanden. <sup>50</sup> sich beschweren. <sup>51</sup> anprobieren. <sup>52</sup> gehen. <sup>53</sup> kaum. <sup>54</sup> in der Taille. <sup>55</sup> Falten schlagen. <sup>56</sup> die Schulter. <sup>57</sup> gehen. <sup>58</sup> ausgezeichnet. <sup>59</sup> Sie haben nie einen Anzug gehabt, der Sie besser kleidet.

## 8. With a shoemaker.

Sir, I have brought your shoes. I am very glad<sup>1</sup>; I am just preparing for<sup>2</sup> a little pedestrian excursion<sup>3</sup>, so

they come just in time<sup>4</sup>. Let me see them. Give [me] leave<sup>5</sup> to try them on<sup>6</sup> you. Thank you, I will try them on myself. They seem to be a great deal too tight. I can not get<sup>7</sup> my foot in. New shoes and boots must always be rather tight or they will not fit<sup>8</sup> afterwards. Allow me to assist<sup>9</sup> you. I shall so get them on<sup>10</sup>. Now they are on, it is true<sup>11</sup>, but I can not walk in them; they hurt<sup>12</sup> my toes<sup>13</sup> dreadfully. You have made them too pointed<sup>14</sup>; nor are they wide enough over the instep<sup>15</sup>. They pinch<sup>12</sup> me every where. You must not mind<sup>16</sup> a little inconvenience<sup>17</sup> at first<sup>18</sup>; they will grow wide enough by wearing; for the leather always stretches<sup>19</sup>. True<sup>20</sup>, but I don't choose<sup>21</sup> my toes to be crippled<sup>22</sup> until it gets wider. I like them [to be] comfortable at once<sup>23</sup>. You will not have worn them two days, before they cease<sup>24</sup> to hurt you. I can not walk in them, and I have told you before<sup>25</sup>, that I do not like to have shoes which pinch me. I wish [to be] easy [in] them. Nor have I a great desire [to get] (nach) corns<sup>26</sup>. At all events<sup>27</sup> they must be put on the last<sup>27a</sup>, before I can wear them, so take them back and send them again to morrow morning. Just let me first examine<sup>28</sup> the leather. They do not seem to be strong, and you know I ordered a pair of strong shoes. The soles<sup>29</sup> seem to be good, but the upper-leather<sup>30</sup> is good for nothing<sup>31</sup>. It will be in holes<sup>32</sup> before a fortnight is elapsed<sup>33</sup>. The quarters<sup>34</sup> are too low, and the heels<sup>35</sup> are much too high. I am sure, the shoes were never made for me; at least they are not according to my orders<sup>36</sup> (wie). So take them back, and make me another pair as soon as possible. — Here is a pair of shoes, that will fit<sup>37</sup> you, Sir, and I am sure, they are of the best workmanship<sup>38</sup>. These are good, I own<sup>39</sup>; I can not find any fault with them<sup>40</sup>. I see you can work well, if you choose; and therefore you may measure<sup>41</sup> me at once [for] a pair of half-boots, and a pair of jockey-boots<sup>42</sup>, but the leather must be stout<sup>43</sup>. If you make them according to [my] wishes (sing.), I will give you orders for another pair of boots, and a pair of dress-shoes<sup>44</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> lieb. <sup>2</sup> antreten (a, e). <sup>3</sup> die Fußtour. <sup>4</sup> zu rechter Zeit. <sup>5</sup> erlauben, daß. <sup>6</sup> anprobieren. <sup>7</sup> hineinbringen. <sup>8</sup> passen. <sup>9</sup> helfen. <sup>10</sup> an-

bekommen. <sup>11</sup> zwar. <sup>12</sup> brüden. <sup>13</sup> die Zehe. <sup>14</sup> spit. <sup>15</sup> die Reihe.  
<sup>16</sup> beachten. <sup>17</sup> die Unbequemlichkeit. <sup>18</sup> im Anfang. <sup>19</sup> sich dehnen.  
<sup>20</sup> wohl wahr. <sup>21</sup> wollen. <sup>22</sup> verkrüppelt haben. <sup>23</sup> von vorn herein.  
<sup>24</sup> aufhören. <sup>25</sup> vorher. <sup>26</sup> das Hühnerauge. <sup>27</sup> auf alle Fälle. <sup>27a</sup> auf  
den Heften schlagen. <sup>28</sup> befehen. <sup>29</sup> die Sohle. <sup>30</sup> das Oberleder.  
<sup>31</sup> taugen. <sup>32</sup> zerrissen sein. <sup>33</sup> vergehen. <sup>34</sup> die Kappe. <sup>35</sup> der Absatz l.  
bestellen. <sup>37</sup> passen. <sup>38</sup> vorzüglich arbeiten. <sup>39</sup> zugeben (s.). <sup>40</sup> daran.  
<sup>41</sup> anmessen (s.). <sup>42</sup> Reitstiefel. <sup>43</sup> flart. <sup>44</sup> Gesellschaftsschuhe.

### 9. To hire<sup>1</sup> or to buy a horse.

I wish to hire a horse to take a ride<sup>2</sup> through the town and its (die) environs<sup>3</sup>, have you one to let out? If I like<sup>4</sup> it, perhaps I may (werde) buy it. Yes, Sir, I have chesnut-horses<sup>5</sup>, white spotted<sup>6</sup>, pie-ball<sup>7</sup>, bay<sup>8</sup>, grey<sup>9</sup>, spotted grey<sup>10</sup>, black<sup>11</sup>, white<sup>12</sup>. I have some (sie) of all kinds. What colour<sup>13</sup> do you wish (soll) to be your horse? I care little about<sup>14</sup> this, provided<sup>15</sup> he has no faults and is handsome (sonst schön) and tractable<sup>16</sup>. Here is a horse five years old (von), perfectly well broken in<sup>17</sup>. Mount him and make<sup>18</sup> him trot<sup>19</sup> and gallop<sup>20</sup>. I must see, if he has no defects<sup>21</sup>. It is a spirited<sup>22</sup> horse and has neither faults nor vices<sup>23</sup>. Bridle<sup>24</sup> and saddle<sup>25</sup> it (lassen Sie). I will mount him myself to try<sup>26</sup> him. Very well<sup>27</sup>. The stable boy<sup>28</sup> will put on<sup>29</sup> his bridle<sup>30</sup> and saddle<sup>31</sup> and you shall<sup>32</sup> mount it. This horse walks, trots<sup>33</sup> and gallops well, but he has the fault, (daß es) of kicking<sup>34</sup> and rears<sup>35</sup>. I beg your pardon<sup>36</sup>, he is perfectly broken in and quite gentle<sup>36</sup>, but as it is a young horse full of spirit<sup>37</sup>, you must neither spur nor whip<sup>38</sup> him. How much do you ask<sup>39</sup> for it? What price<sup>40</sup> do you want<sup>41</sup> for him? For how much will you sell him? A thousand Marks have been offered<sup>42</sup> for him more than once, which I refused<sup>43</sup>, you shall have it for twelve hundred Marks. That is very dear. Such (daß ist) a price (der) frightens<sup>44</sup> me. Examine<sup>45</sup> the head, the chest<sup>46</sup> and the legs of the horse. He is faultless<sup>47</sup> in all points<sup>48</sup>. His mouth<sup>49</sup> is so fine, he could almost drink out of a glass. I will hire him for a fortnight, and if he has<sup>50</sup> the qualities<sup>51</sup> I wish, we shall soon agree<sup>52</sup> about the price, I hope. For how much is it to be hired (Sie)? Eight Marks a day.

<sup>1</sup> mieten. <sup>2</sup> einen Ritt machen. <sup>3</sup> Umgebungen. <sup>4</sup> gefallen. <sup>5</sup> der Rotfuß. <sup>6</sup> weißgestrichelt. <sup>7</sup> Apfelschimmel. <sup>8</sup> braun. <sup>9</sup> grau. <sup>10</sup> Grauschimmel. <sup>11</sup> der Klappe. <sup>12</sup> der Schimmel. <sup>13</sup> die Farbe. <sup>14</sup> ankommen auf. <sup>15</sup> vorausgesetzt daß. <sup>16</sup> lenksam. <sup>17</sup> zureiten (s.). <sup>18</sup> setzen in. <sup>19</sup> der Trab. <sup>20</sup> der Galopp. <sup>21</sup> der Fehler. <sup>22</sup> lebhaft. <sup>23</sup> die Untugend. <sup>24</sup> zäumen. <sup>25</sup> satteln. <sup>26</sup> probieren. <sup>27</sup> ganz wohl. <sup>28</sup> Stallknecht. <sup>29</sup> anlegen. <sup>30</sup> der Zaum. <sup>31</sup> der Sattel. <sup>32</sup> können. <sup>33</sup> einen guten Schritt. <sup>34</sup> Trab gehen. <sup>35</sup> ausschlagen (s.). <sup>36</sup> sich bäumen. <sup>37</sup> Verzeihung. <sup>38</sup> feurig. <sup>39</sup> Sporen und Peitsche geben. <sup>40</sup> fordern. <sup>41</sup> der Preis. <sup>42</sup> verlangen. <sup>43</sup> bieten (o, o). <sup>44</sup> nicht feil sein für. <sup>45</sup> abschreden (s.). <sup>46</sup> untersuchen. <sup>47</sup> die Brust. <sup>48</sup> untadelhaft. <sup>49</sup> der Teil. <sup>50</sup> das Maul. <sup>51</sup> besigen. <sup>52</sup> die Eigenschaft. <sup>53</sup> einig werden über.

### 10. With a hackney coachman<sup>1</sup>.

Can you drive us immediately to N.? Have you a comfortable<sup>2</sup> carriage? Are your horses good? What must I pay for a two horse carriage<sup>3</sup> with four places? How much for a one horse<sup>4</sup>? That is too much, I only give 20 M. How soon shall I (wir) be there? How much must I pay you by (für) the day? the tolls<sup>5</sup> included in our agreement<sup>6</sup>. How many miles a day will you travel<sup>7</sup>? Is there room<sup>8</sup> for my luggage upon the coach<sup>9</sup>? I have a trunk<sup>10</sup>, two portmanteaus<sup>11</sup> and a hat-box<sup>12</sup>. We wish to go to N., to remain there some hours and then to return. We wish to go to A. by (über) B. If you go fast, you shall have a good fee<sup>13</sup>. Put to<sup>14</sup> immediately. Do not keep<sup>15</sup> me waiting. Come with your carriage<sup>16</sup> to morrow morning at six. Stop<sup>17</sup>, coachman. We wish to get out. Drive faster (zu), coachman. We do not get on<sup>18</sup>. Do not drive so near (dat.) that precipice<sup>19</sup>, the river. How long must we stay here, coachman, to rest<sup>20</sup> the horses? When must I be ready<sup>21</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> Bohnkutscher. <sup>2</sup> bequem. <sup>3</sup> der Zweispänner. <sup>4</sup> Einspänner. <sup>5</sup> Chauffee- und Brückengeld. <sup>6</sup> gehen auf ihre Rechnung. <sup>7</sup> zurücklegen (s.). <sup>8</sup> der Platz. <sup>9</sup> die Kutsche. <sup>10</sup> der Koffer. <sup>11</sup> die Reisetasche. <sup>12</sup> die Hut-  
schachtel. <sup>13</sup> das Trinkgeld. <sup>14</sup> anspannen (s.). <sup>15</sup> lassen. <sup>16</sup> vorfahren (s.). <sup>17</sup> halten. <sup>18</sup> voran kommen. <sup>19</sup> der Abgrund. <sup>20</sup> ruhen lassen. <sup>21</sup> bereit.

### 11. Roads. Conveyances<sup>1</sup>.

Is there<sup>2</sup> a steamboat (a diligence<sup>3</sup>) from here to N.? At what hour does the steamer start? What are the fares<sup>4</sup>? Where is the office<sup>5</sup>? Are refreshments<sup>6</sup> to be (forn man)

obtained<sup>7</sup> on [board] the boat? Does it stop<sup>8</sup> at N.? Can I be landed<sup>9</sup> at N.? Do they give much trouble<sup>10</sup> to travellers about their passports? Is there a carriage-road<sup>11</sup> (a foot-path<sup>12</sup>) from this place<sup>13</sup> to N.? Is the road easy to find? How far is it to N.? Can I hire a carriage (ber) to take<sup>14</sup> me there? How much must I pay for a carriage by (auf) the day? What fee ought I to give (gibt man) to the driver? Can I have<sup>15</sup> a horse [to carry me] to N.? Can we get a pony or a donkey<sup>16</sup> for this lady to mount<sup>17</sup> that hill? What is the usual charge (bezahlt man) by the day? What do you charge<sup>18</sup> per hour? What for (um) driving (riding) to N.? Where is the diligence-office<sup>19</sup> to take my place (in the diligence)? At what hour does it start<sup>20</sup>? How many hours shall we be upon the road<sup>21</sup>? Do they charge<sup>22</sup> (muß man) for the luggage? What weight is allowed<sup>23</sup>? Can I take my dog with [me] in the carriage? Where does the diligence stop? Have I time to breakfast here? How long do we stay here? Do we dine on the road? Which is the best hotel<sup>24</sup> at N.? Are the charges moderate<sup>25</sup>? Is there an inn<sup>26</sup> or public house<sup>27</sup>? Where is the station for (nach) N.? When does the next train start. These six packages<sup>28</sup> go to N. Is this the train to N.? How long does it take to get<sup>29</sup> to N.? How many more stations are there?

<sup>1</sup> die Fahrgelegenheit. <sup>2</sup> fahren (u. a). <sup>3</sup> der Kilmagen. <sup>4</sup> der Fahrpreis, das Passagiergeld. <sup>5</sup> die Expedition, das Bureau. <sup>6</sup> die Erfrischung. <sup>7</sup> haben. <sup>8</sup> halten, anhalten. <sup>9</sup> aussetzen. <sup>10</sup> Umstände machen wegen. <sup>11</sup> der Fahrweg. <sup>12</sup> der Fußpfad l. <sup>13</sup> hier. <sup>14</sup> bringen. <sup>15</sup> bekommen. <sup>16</sup> der Esel. <sup>17</sup> hinauf reiten. <sup>18</sup> rechnen. <sup>19</sup> die Post. <sup>20</sup> abfahren. <sup>21</sup> unterwegs. <sup>22</sup> bezahlen. <sup>23</sup> wie viel Pfund sind frei? <sup>24</sup> der Gasthof. <sup>25</sup> ist es billig dort? <sup>26</sup> das Wirtshaus. <sup>27</sup> die Schenke. <sup>28</sup> die Gepäcksstücke. <sup>29</sup> wie lange fahren wir bis.

## 12. Materials of writing<sup>1</sup>. Letters.

I want<sup>2</sup> to write a letter, but have no inkstand<sup>3</sup>. May I use yours? Take it and use it, as long as you like. Is there a stationer's shop<sup>4</sup> in the neighbourhood<sup>5</sup>? There is one in this street, the third or fourth shop<sup>6</sup> to the left, on going out<sup>6</sup>. I wish to have a quire<sup>7</sup> of letter-paper, twenty five envelopes<sup>8</sup>, a quire of note-paper<sup>9</sup>, wafers<sup>10</sup>,

sealing-wax<sup>11</sup>, ink, a pen-holder<sup>12</sup> and pens. What pens do you like best, do you like them broad or pointed? Very broad, No. J, if they have them. Waiter, go and buy what the gentleman wants. Yes, I will thank you to do so<sup>13</sup>. Here is some money, will five M. be enough? Yes, Sir, more than enough. You will also buy me a quire of blotting-paper<sup>14</sup>. In the mean time<sup>15</sup> make use<sup>16</sup> of this sheet<sup>17</sup>. I thank you, much obliged<sup>18</sup>. If that pen is not good, take this quill<sup>19</sup>, and here is a penknife, you can cut it to your liking<sup>20</sup>. I have a penknife, but I have not my seal<sup>21</sup>, will you lend me yours? I see the envelope is gummed, so I do not want a seal, thank you.

When does the post depart for England? It departs every night at eight, the letters must be posted<sup>22</sup> before seven. Please let me have<sup>23</sup> some foreign stamps<sup>24</sup>. And when are letters from England delivered<sup>25</sup>? They are delivered early in the morning about eight, but sometimes at noon, or in the afternoon, when the steamers are<sup>26</sup> too late for the train. I thank you for the information<sup>27</sup>, you had the kindness<sup>28</sup> to give me. [There is] no cause<sup>29</sup>. — There is the waiter with the paper. I shall go up to my room.

<sup>1</sup> Schreibmaterialien. <sup>2</sup> müssen. <sup>3</sup> das Tintenfaß 2. <sup>4</sup> Schreibmaterialien-Handlung. <sup>4a</sup> die Kasse. <sup>5</sup> der Laden. <sup>6</sup> wenn man zur Thüre hinausgeht. <sup>7</sup> das Buch. <sup>8</sup> das Couvert l. <sup>9</sup> Schreibpapier. <sup>10</sup> die Oblate. <sup>11</sup> das Siegelb. <sup>12</sup> der Federhalter. <sup>13</sup> einen Gefallen thun. <sup>14</sup> Blosch-papier. <sup>15</sup> indeffen. <sup>16</sup> sich bedienen (gen.). <sup>17</sup> der Bogen. <sup>18</sup> verbunden. <sup>19</sup> die Gänsefeder, der Riel. <sup>20</sup> nach ihrer Hand. <sup>21</sup> das Petschaft. <sup>22</sup> zur Post kommen. <sup>23</sup> geben. <sup>24</sup> Briefmarken fürs Ausland. <sup>25</sup> ausgeben (s.). <sup>26</sup> ankommen. <sup>27</sup> die Auskunft. <sup>28</sup> freundlich sein. <sup>29</sup> Ursache.

### 13. Chess.

Let us play a game at chess<sup>1</sup>. I am not a chess-player. I do not know that game. If you wish to learn it, I will teach you. With much pleasure; let us begin at once. Where is the chess-board<sup>2</sup> with the men<sup>3</sup>? Here are the chess-men, and here is the chess-board, containing<sup>4</sup> sixty four squares<sup>5</sup>. But now be kind enough<sup>6</sup> to (und) tell me the names of all the pieces<sup>7</sup>. (That) I will: this [one] is the king, here is the queen, these two are called<sup>7</sup>



bishops<sup>8</sup>, these two are knights<sup>9</sup>, these are the two castles<sup>10</sup>, and those eight are pawns<sup>11</sup>. Now look, how they are placed<sup>12</sup>; you see, the pawns always take<sup>13</sup> the first line<sup>14</sup>. Is<sup>15</sup> the board right<sup>16</sup>? Yes, observe<sup>17</sup> the white corners<sup>18</sup> must be to your right. Each queen must stand on her own colour; that is to say<sup>19</sup>, the white queen on [a] white [square], and the black queen on a black square. Now place your men in order<sup>20</sup>. Are your men arranged<sup>21</sup>? Now you must first show me the moves<sup>22</sup>. Your queen is not in (an) the proper<sup>16</sup> place<sup>23</sup>. Who begins? Let us draw for it<sup>24</sup>. You have the first move, which is sometimes a great advantage<sup>25</sup>. I will forward<sup>26</sup> this pawn. You must always place<sup>27</sup> your pieces so, that they are supported<sup>28</sup>. Do you see, that your queen is in danger? That was a very good move. Guard<sup>29</sup> your queen! I am afraid, I must exchange<sup>30</sup> pieces. I fear, I shall lose the game; I have already lost one of my knights and both castles. I will castle my king<sup>31</sup>. You can not castle your king after having moved<sup>32</sup> your king. Check<sup>33</sup>! I can cover<sup>34</sup> this check with my bishop. You have made a bad move, I take your other knight. It is stale mate<sup>35</sup>. Checkmate<sup>36</sup>! I was in hopes, you would not observe my dangerous situation, or give me [a] stale mate. I am not a match<sup>37</sup> for you. Let us have<sup>38</sup> another game. What odds<sup>39</sup> will you give me? You can give me both your castles and yet beat me. That is more, than I ought to give, but I will do it with pleasure<sup>40</sup>. What will you bet<sup>41</sup> on this game? Ten to<sup>42</sup> one. These are long odds<sup>43</sup>, but the skill<sup>44</sup> is on your side. I have lost the game again. Will you play another game? No, I have no time now; I will take [my] revenge<sup>45</sup> another time.

<sup>1</sup> eine Partie Schach machen. <sup>2</sup> das Schachbrett. <sup>3</sup> die Figur. <sup>4</sup> enthalten. <sup>5</sup> das Quadrat. <sup>6</sup> so. <sup>7</sup> heißen. <sup>8</sup> der Läufer. <sup>9</sup> der Springer. <sup>10</sup> der Thurm. <sup>11</sup> der Bauer. <sup>12</sup> aufstellen (s.). <sup>13</sup> kommen. <sup>14</sup> die Reihe. <sup>15</sup> stehen. <sup>16</sup> richtig. <sup>17</sup> bemerken. <sup>18</sup> die Ecke. <sup>19</sup> das heißt. <sup>20</sup> aufstellen. <sup>21</sup> richtig aufstellen. <sup>22</sup> der Zug 1. <sup>23</sup> die Stelle. <sup>24</sup> darum ziehen. <sup>25</sup> der Vorteil. <sup>26</sup> vorrücken. <sup>27</sup> stellen. <sup>28</sup> decken. <sup>29</sup> gardez. <sup>30</sup> austauschen. <sup>31</sup> rochieren. <sup>32</sup> rücken. <sup>33</sup> schach! <sup>34</sup> decken. <sup>35</sup> patt. <sup>36</sup> schachmatt! <sup>37</sup> gewachsen (dat.), stark genug sein. <sup>38</sup> machen. <sup>39</sup> vor. <sup>40</sup> gern. <sup>41</sup> wetten. <sup>42</sup> gegen. <sup>43</sup> vorgeben. <sup>44</sup> die Geschicklichkeit. <sup>45</sup> sich revanchieren.

14. Cards<sup>1</sup>.

Let us have a game at cards. Yes, I have no objection to it<sup>2</sup>. Here are the cards; just see, whether the pack<sup>3</sup> is complete<sup>4</sup>. Where is the card-table<sup>5</sup>? There are two cards wanting<sup>6</sup>. I will get<sup>7</sup> them. These cards have been played with; bring a fresh<sup>8</sup> pack! The card-table is [quite] ready, let us begin. Shall we make up a game<sup>9</sup> of whist? Whist is my favourite game<sup>10</sup>, let us play at whist. But then we want a fourth. Will you take a hand<sup>11</sup>, Mr. N.? With pleasure; but I am only an indifferent<sup>12</sup> player, I am not very fond of cards. Shuffle<sup>13</sup> the cards well, for all the court cards<sup>14</sup> are together<sup>15</sup>. I will mix them thoroughly<sup>16</sup>. There is<sup>17</sup> a card faced<sup>18</sup>. What is trump<sup>19</sup>? Diamonds<sup>20</sup>. I wish it had been spades<sup>21</sup>. I have a suit<sup>22</sup> of clubs<sup>23</sup>. I am favoured<sup>24</sup> with hearts. Let us cut<sup>25</sup> for partners<sup>26</sup>. Will you draw a card? I have a card too many. Then you must deal<sup>27</sup> again. Who is to (am) deal? Cut for the deal<sup>28</sup>. There is a misdeal<sup>29</sup>. You never deal the right number<sup>30</sup> of cards. The pack is not complete. I have a good hand this time (good cards). I took in<sup>31</sup> nothing good. You are to lead<sup>32</sup>. I lay first<sup>33</sup>. Play away<sup>34</sup>. What did you lead? I led diamonds. Why did you not return my lead<sup>34</sup>? Why did you not trump<sup>35</sup> this card? You have revoked<sup>36</sup>. I had no more of that suit<sup>37</sup>. You must either follow suit<sup>38</sup> or trump. How many tricks have you? We have two tricks and two [by] honours<sup>39</sup>. I had the king, the queen<sup>40</sup>, the knave<sup>41</sup> and the ace<sup>42</sup>. All my counters<sup>43</sup> are gone<sup>44</sup>. I have always bad luck<sup>45</sup>. Who can sell me two dozen? What do we play for<sup>46</sup>? How much<sup>47</sup> shall we play a (the) point? Let us play low, [for] a Pfennig a point, just<sup>48</sup> to amuse<sup>49</sup> ourselves. I never play high, I only play for amusement<sup>50</sup>, never for gain<sup>51</sup>. Is this game (robber) nearly finished<sup>52</sup>? Not quite, but it will soon be over<sup>53</sup>. Mind<sup>54</sup> your game, you do not play with sufficient caution<sup>55</sup>. Have you lost or won? I leave off, as I began, I have neither lost nor won. I have won considerably<sup>56</sup>. You have always [good] luck, when you play at cards. I shall play no longer<sup>57</sup>; I have made it a point<sup>58</sup> never to lose above a certain

sum. Will you not give me [my] revenge? Not to night; it is now time to go home.

<sup>1</sup> Kartenspiel. <sup>2</sup> nichts dagegen. <sup>3</sup> die Karten. <sup>4</sup> vollständig. <sup>5</sup> der Spieltisch. <sup>6</sup> fehlen. <sup>7</sup> holen. <sup>8</sup> neu. <sup>9</sup> eine Partie Whist. <sup>10</sup> das Diebstahls-  
 lingspiel. <sup>11</sup> mitspielen. <sup>12</sup> schwach. <sup>13</sup> mischen. <sup>14</sup> die Bilder. <sup>15</sup> be-  
 sammen. <sup>16</sup> tüchtig. <sup>17</sup> liegen. <sup>18</sup> verkehrt. <sup>19</sup> der Trumpf. <sup>20</sup> Carreau.  
<sup>21</sup> Pique. <sup>22</sup> gut verstehen mit. <sup>23</sup> Treffle. <sup>24</sup> beglücken. <sup>25</sup> ziehen. <sup>26</sup> wer  
 zusammen spielt. <sup>27</sup> geben. <sup>28</sup> wer giebt. <sup>29</sup> die Karten sind vergeben.  
<sup>30</sup> die Anzahl. <sup>31</sup> bekommen. <sup>32</sup> anspielen (s.). <sup>33</sup> voran machen. <sup>34</sup> nach-  
 spielen. <sup>35</sup> trumpsfen. <sup>36</sup> nicht bekennen. <sup>37</sup> Farbe. <sup>38</sup> bekennen. <sup>39</sup> Honneur.  
<sup>40</sup> Dame. <sup>41</sup> der Bube. <sup>42</sup> das Aß. <sup>43</sup> der Spielfennig. <sup>44</sup> fort. <sup>45</sup> das  
 Unglück. <sup>46</sup> um was, wie hoch. <sup>47</sup> hoch. <sup>48</sup> eben nur. <sup>49</sup> unterhalten.  
<sup>50</sup> die Unterhaltung. <sup>51</sup> um zu gewinnen. <sup>52</sup> zu Ende. <sup>53</sup> aus. <sup>54</sup> acht  
 geben auf. <sup>55</sup> vorsichtig, aufmerksam genug. <sup>56</sup> beträchtlich. <sup>57</sup> mehr.  
<sup>58</sup> es sich zum Grundsatze machen.

# 15. The master before getting up.

John, what o'clock is it? It is past eight, Sir. What! eight! why do you come so late to my room? You told me last night not to<sup>1</sup> come before nine. Yes, it is true, now I recollect. It was very late, when I went to bed. Will you get up now, Sir? Yes, draw back the curtains, make a<sup>2</sup> fire and bring me some warm water to wash in (zum). Will you shave to day? No, I shaved yesterday, and I shall not shave again till<sup>3</sup> to morrow. You know, I generally shave only every other day<sup>4</sup>. What coat will you put on to day? The one I had on the day before yesterday, but you must brush<sup>5</sup> it well. Will you [have] boots or shoes? What kind of weather is it? It is bad weather, Sir, it rains. Then give me my boots, as the street must (werden) be dirty. Will you have your dressing-gown<sup>6</sup>? Yes, give it to me (her), and also my drawers<sup>7</sup> and stockings. What stockings would you like<sup>8</sup>, worsted or cotton? You must give me cotton-stockings to wear (weil ich) [with my] boots, and my grey trowsers. Will you have a clean shirt? Certainly, and a clean neck-cloth<sup>9</sup> too. Where are my slippers? They are near<sup>10</sup> your bed. Now<sup>11</sup> I think of it, did you take the letter, I gave you last night, to Mrs. N.? Yes (wohl), Sir. To whom did you give it? To her maid<sup>12</sup>, who told<sup>1</sup> me to come for<sup>18</sup> an answer before twelve. Very<sup>14</sup> good. Has the washer-woman

brought my linnen? No, Sir, not yet, but she will bring it to day.

<sup>1</sup> ich sollte nicht. <sup>2</sup> anmachen (s.). <sup>3</sup> erst. <sup>4</sup> einen Tag um den andern. <sup>5</sup> ausblühen (s.). <sup>6</sup> Schlafrock. <sup>7</sup> die Unterhose. <sup>8</sup> wünschen. <sup>9</sup> die Halsbinde. <sup>10</sup> stehen an. <sup>11</sup> da ich gerade. <sup>12</sup> das Kammermädchen. <sup>13</sup> abholen (s.). <sup>14</sup> schön.

## 16. Spring. Summer.

I have a great longing<sup>1</sup> for spring again; it is the most pleasant of all seasons. Yes, I like it best too. Though we are in the middle [of] March, we have scarcely had any spring-weather; it is still as cold, as it was in February. The season is very backward<sup>2</sup>. There is hardly any flower to be found, not even snow-drops<sup>3</sup>, crocuses<sup>4</sup>, or violets<sup>5</sup>. — How suddenly the weather has changed; it is quite a summer's day to day. Every thing seems to leap into existence<sup>6</sup>. All nature is smiling again. Did you notice<sup>7</sup>, how beautiful all the trees in our neighbour's orchard<sup>8</sup> look? All the fruit-trees are in full blossom. If the weather continues<sup>9</sup> so favourable, we shall have<sup>10</sup> plenty of fruit this year. I should be glad of that; for last year we had scarcely any<sup>11</sup> fruit at all; at least all the stone-fruits failed<sup>12</sup> entirely. How delightful it is now in the country! This air is quite reviving<sup>13</sup> after having lived so long in town. How fragrant every thing smells<sup>14</sup>! How warm it was this morning, and how lovely<sup>15</sup> the sky looked, when the sun was rising! The dew<sup>16</sup> was<sup>17</sup> very heavy on the grass<sup>18</sup> this morning, and when the first rays<sup>19</sup> of the sun fell upon the dew-drops<sup>20</sup>, they looked like diamonds. It was [a sight] worth<sup>21</sup> getting up early in the morning (um). Are you fond of rising early? Yes, I am (sehr gern), particularly in summer. I consider<sup>22</sup> the early hours<sup>23</sup> of the morning the best part of the whole day. Every thing looks so refreshed<sup>24</sup>. The birds sing so cheerfully<sup>25</sup> again. What a pity<sup>26</sup> it is, that so many people [should] not enjoy<sup>27</sup> the pleasures<sup>28</sup> of (which offers<sup>29</sup>) an early morning. Look at that white-thorn<sup>30</sup> in the hedges<sup>31</sup>! It looks (is) quite ornamental<sup>32</sup>, and how beautiful<sup>33</sup> it smells! See, they are going to cut the grass<sup>34</sup> already. It has grown

very fast. The crop<sup>35</sup> appears to be very fine<sup>36</sup>, it must be hard work for the mowers<sup>37</sup>. How well they keep time<sup>38</sup> with their strokes<sup>39</sup>! It is really a pretty sight<sup>40</sup>! The hay-makers<sup>41</sup> in the next meadow seem to be very merry<sup>42</sup>. Hay-making is a delightful<sup>43</sup> occupation<sup>44</sup>. The hay<sup>45</sup> is nearly ready<sup>46</sup> to be housed<sup>47</sup>. How promising the corn looks in the field! In some places<sup>48</sup> it has been laid<sup>49</sup> by the rain, but the present dry weather will, I hope, recover<sup>50</sup> it. Heark<sup>51</sup>! what strange noise<sup>52</sup> that was! It is a cuckoo<sup>53</sup>. Have you never heard one? Never in my life. I should like to see one. The late showers<sup>54</sup> have been very refreshing. They will very much improve<sup>55</sup> the harvest<sup>56</sup>. In several parts of the country<sup>57</sup> the weather is said<sup>58</sup> to have been very dry. Yes, in travelling<sup>59</sup> (afß) through the country a few weeks ago, I perceived, that the ground<sup>60</sup> was quite parched<sup>61</sup>. Yesterday afternoon it was quite sultry, and the sky looked very lowering<sup>62</sup>. I really thought, we should have a thunderstorm. It did<sup>63</sup> look very lowering, and I dare say<sup>64</sup>, there was a heavy rain at some distance, for the air felt much cooler<sup>65</sup> afterwards. The evening was most lovely; I never saw a finer tint<sup>66</sup> than at sun-set. After supper we took a short walk through the park. The birds were so musical<sup>67</sup>, that our walk was most delightful<sup>68</sup>. The storm, I suppose, kept<sup>69</sup> you at home this afternoon. Of course, who would think of going out in (bei) such weather? The hail was tremendously<sup>70</sup> heavy, and the thunder louder, than I ever remember to have heard it. The flashes of lightning were exceedingly<sup>71</sup> vivid, so [much so] that the whole town seemed to be<sup>72</sup> on fire<sup>73</sup>. You have heard, that Mr. N.'s house has been struck<sup>74</sup>? Yes, I understand<sup>75</sup> the chimney<sup>76</sup> has been damaged<sup>77</sup>. The heavy rain has swelled<sup>78</sup> the river so [much], that the banks<sup>79</sup> have given way<sup>80</sup>, and several meadows have been overflowed<sup>81</sup>. The number of accidents<sup>81a</sup> (which arise<sup>82</sup>) from lightning have caused<sup>83</sup> the use of conductors<sup>84</sup> [to be] general<sup>85</sup>. Yes, and even on [board of] ships they are almost universally<sup>85</sup> adopted<sup>86</sup>, and have proved<sup>87</sup> to be (afß) very beneficial<sup>88</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> die Schnjucht. <sup>2</sup> zurück. <sup>3</sup> das Schneeglöckchen. <sup>4</sup> Crocus. <sup>5</sup> das Weizen. <sup>6</sup> mit einem Schlag ins Dasein treten. <sup>7</sup> bemerken. <sup>8</sup> der Obst-

garten. <sup>9</sup> bleiben. <sup>10</sup> bekommen. <sup>11</sup> fast gar kein. <sup>12</sup> misraten (ie, a).  
<sup>13</sup> erfrischend. <sup>14</sup> köstlich duften. <sup>15</sup> reizend. <sup>16</sup> der Tau. <sup>17</sup> liegen (a, e).  
<sup>18</sup> das Gras. <sup>19</sup> der Strahl 5. <sup>20</sup> der Tautropfen. <sup>21</sup> der Wille wert  
 sein. <sup>22</sup> halten für. <sup>23</sup> die Morgenstunden. <sup>24</sup> frisch. <sup>25</sup> fröhlich. <sup>26</sup> wie  
 schade. <sup>27</sup> kennen lernen. <sup>28</sup> die Annehmlichkeit. <sup>29</sup> bieten (o, o). <sup>30</sup> der  
 Weißdorn. <sup>31</sup> die Hecke. <sup>32</sup> ein wahrer Schmuck. <sup>33</sup> köstlich. <sup>34</sup> das Gras.  
<sup>35</sup> die Heuernte. <sup>36</sup> gut. <sup>37</sup> der Mäher. <sup>38</sup> Takt halten bei. <sup>39</sup> der Streich.  
<sup>40</sup> aussehen (s.). <sup>41</sup> der Heumacher. <sup>42</sup> munter. <sup>43</sup> herrlich. <sup>44</sup> die Be-  
 schäftigung. <sup>45</sup> das Heu. <sup>46</sup> fertig. <sup>47</sup> zum Einfahren. <sup>48</sup> an einigen  
 Stellen. <sup>49</sup> niederlegen (s.). <sup>50</sup> heben. <sup>51</sup> hören. <sup>52</sup> der Ton. <sup>53</sup> der  
 Ausdruck. <sup>54</sup> der Regenschauer. <sup>55</sup> gut thun. <sup>56</sup> die Kornerte. <sup>57</sup> die  
 Gegend. <sup>58</sup> soll. <sup>59</sup> eine Reise machen. <sup>60</sup> der Boden. <sup>61</sup> austrocknen.  
<sup>62</sup> drohend. <sup>63</sup> wirklich. <sup>64</sup> glauben. <sup>65</sup> sich abkühlen. <sup>66</sup> die Beleuchtung.  
<sup>67</sup> singen. <sup>68</sup> köstlich. <sup>69</sup> zurück halten. <sup>70</sup> ungeheuer. <sup>71</sup> außerordentlich  
 hell (grell). <sup>72</sup> stehen. <sup>73</sup> in Flammen. <sup>74</sup> einschlagen in s. (es). <sup>75</sup> hören.  
<sup>76</sup> der Schornstein. <sup>77</sup> beschädigen. <sup>78</sup> anschwellen (o, o). <sup>79</sup> der Ufer-  
 damm 1. <sup>80</sup> durchbrechen (a, o). <sup>81</sup> überschwemmen. <sup>81a</sup> viele Unglücks-  
 fälle. <sup>82</sup> entstehen. <sup>83</sup> machen. <sup>84</sup> der Bligableiter. <sup>85</sup> allgemein. <sup>86</sup> ein-  
 führen (s.). <sup>87</sup> sich erweisen (ie, ie). <sup>88</sup> wohlthätig. I hope hoffentlich.  
 I expect vermutlich.

## 17. Illness.

I am very glad to see you again. What a stranger<sup>1</sup> you have been (bei uns geworden); we began to think, you had quite forgotten us. No, indeed<sup>2</sup>, I assure you. I have been out of town<sup>3</sup>, and was much concerned<sup>4</sup> on my return<sup>5</sup> to hear, that you had had a sickhouse<sup>6</sup>. We have indeed all been invalids<sup>7</sup>; William<sup>8</sup> has had the small-pox<sup>9</sup>, and Eliza<sup>10</sup> has had the measles<sup>11</sup>. It must have been a trying and distressing time<sup>12</sup> for your mother; how is<sup>13</sup> she? Thank you, she is<sup>13</sup> tolerably<sup>14</sup> well, but her health has been (is) a good deal affected<sup>15</sup> through the attention<sup>15a</sup> [she has paid] my brother and sister (gen.). Could you not prevail on<sup>16</sup> her to have<sup>17</sup> a nurse<sup>18</sup>? I used<sup>19</sup> every argument<sup>20</sup> to induce<sup>21</sup> her to take care of<sup>22</sup> herself, but her anxiety<sup>23</sup> would not suffer<sup>24</sup> [her to allow] any one else to be near<sup>25</sup> them. The invalids are now, I hope, quite out of danger? O yes, they are doing<sup>18</sup> very well and are able to go out again into the open<sup>26</sup> air. To day my youngest brother is complaining<sup>27</sup> of a sore-throat<sup>28</sup>, and we are afraid of<sup>29</sup> the scarlet-fever<sup>30</sup>. That would be sad<sup>31</sup> indeed; but I sincerely<sup>32</sup> hope, you will be spared<sup>33</sup> [so severe a trial]. Pray, who is your physician? Mr. N. generally attends<sup>34</sup>

our family, but by his desire<sup>35</sup>, Dr. S. was called in<sup>36</sup>, as William was for some time in a doubtful<sup>37</sup> state<sup>38</sup>. They are both very clever men (physicians) and have an extensive<sup>39</sup> practice<sup>40</sup>. They have shown their skill<sup>41</sup> in (bei) the treatment<sup>42</sup> of these children. At one time William's fever was so high<sup>43</sup>, that his pulse<sup>44</sup> was<sup>45</sup> 140 a (in der) minute. I am astonished<sup>46</sup> to hear, that your brother has had the small-pox<sup>47</sup>; has he not been vaccinated<sup>48</sup>? Yes, he has<sup>49</sup>; but it is too often the case, that from want of care<sup>50</sup> in (bei) the practitioners<sup>51</sup>, vaccine-inoculation<sup>52</sup> is of no avail<sup>53</sup>. Have all your brothers and sisters had the hooping-cough<sup>54</sup>? Yes, we got over<sup>55</sup> that trouble<sup>56</sup> two years ago; they were ill for a long time, but a change of air in the spring completely reestablished their health (fie). How is<sup>13</sup> (mit) your own health at present? You used to be (Ihre Gesundheit war) rather delicate some years ago. Thank you, it is (hat) very much improved<sup>56</sup>, and seems to have settled<sup>57</sup>. My complaint is<sup>58</sup> sometimes a cold in my head, or a slight<sup>59</sup> cough, whenever<sup>60</sup> I catch a cold. How is<sup>13</sup> your father? He has lately<sup>61</sup> had an attack<sup>62</sup> of his old complaint<sup>63</sup>, [a] giddiness<sup>64</sup> in the head. Does his physician recommend bleeding<sup>65</sup>? Yes, he has been bled<sup>66</sup> copiously<sup>67</sup>. It is a remedy<sup>68</sup>, that must weaken<sup>69</sup> him very much at (bei) his advanced<sup>70</sup> age; but nothing else gives<sup>71</sup> him [any] relief<sup>72</sup>. Next month we are going to the sea-side<sup>73</sup> for (auf) four or five weeks, and we hope the fresh sea-air and bathing will thoroughly<sup>74</sup> recruit<sup>75</sup> the health of the whole family.

<sup>1</sup> wie fremd. <sup>2</sup> gewiß nicht. <sup>3</sup> abwesend. <sup>4</sup> bedauern. <sup>5</sup> die Rückkehr. <sup>6</sup> ein wahres Lazarett. <sup>7</sup> krank. <sup>8</sup> Wilhelm. <sup>9</sup> die Blattern. <sup>10</sup> Elise. <sup>11</sup> die Mäfern. <sup>12</sup> eine Zeit der Angst und Sorge. <sup>13</sup> geht es. <sup>14</sup> ziemlich. <sup>15</sup> angegriffen. <sup>16a</sup> die Pflege. <sup>16</sup> bestimmen. <sup>17</sup> nehmen. <sup>18</sup> Krankenwärterin. <sup>19</sup> anbieten (o, o) s. <sup>20</sup> die Gründe. <sup>21</sup> bewegen. <sup>22</sup> sich schonen. <sup>23</sup> die Besorgnis. <sup>24</sup> zugeben daß. <sup>25</sup> um. <sup>26</sup> frei. <sup>27</sup> klagen über. <sup>28</sup> Halsschmerzen. <sup>29</sup> befürchten. <sup>30</sup> das Scharlachfieber. <sup>31</sup> schlimm. <sup>32</sup> von Herzen. <sup>33</sup> davon verschont bleiben. <sup>34</sup> behandeln. <sup>35</sup> der Wunsch. <sup>36</sup> zuziehen (o, o) s. <sup>37</sup> bedenklich. <sup>38</sup> der Zustand. <sup>39</sup> ausgedehnt. <sup>40</sup> die Praxis. <sup>41</sup> die Geschicklichkeit. <sup>42</sup> die Behandlung. <sup>43</sup> stark. <sup>44</sup> der Puls. <sup>45</sup> haben. <sup>46</sup> Zu meiner Verwunderung. <sup>47</sup> impfen. <sup>48</sup> gewiß. <sup>49</sup> die Sorgfalt. <sup>50</sup> der Impfarzt. <sup>51</sup> das Impfen. <sup>52</sup> nutzlos. <sup>53</sup> der Reuchhusten. <sup>54</sup> durchmachen (s.). <sup>55</sup> die Plage. <sup>56</sup> sich bessern. <sup>57</sup> fest sein.

<sup>58</sup> leiden an (i, i). <sup>59</sup> leicht. <sup>60</sup> so oft. <sup>61</sup> kürzlich. <sup>62</sup> wieder. <sup>63</sup> das  
<sup>64</sup> übel. <sup>65</sup> der Schwindel. <sup>66</sup> Blutegel (Aderlaß) verordnen. <sup>67</sup> Blut nehmen.  
<sup>68</sup> reichlich. <sup>69</sup> das Heilmittel. <sup>70</sup> schwächen. <sup>71</sup> vorgerückt. <sup>72</sup> gewähren.  
<sup>73</sup> die Erleichterung. <sup>74</sup> die See. <sup>75</sup> gründlich. <sup>76</sup> wieder herstellen.

18. How to (man) break<sup>1</sup> ill news<sup>2</sup>.

Scene: *The rooms of Mr. G. at Oxford.*

(Enter<sup>3</sup> to<sup>4</sup> him his father's steward<sup>5</sup>.)

Mr. G.: Ha Jervas, how are you [my] old boy<sup>6</sup>? How do things go on<sup>7</sup> at home?

Steward: Bad enough, your honour<sup>8</sup>, the magpie<sup>9</sup> is dead.

Mr. G.: Poor mag! So he is gone<sup>10</sup>. How came he to<sup>11</sup> die?

St.: Over-ate himself, Sir.

Mr. G.: Did he faith<sup>12</sup>! A greedy dog<sup>13</sup>! What did he get, that he liked so well?

St.: Horseflesh, Sir. He died of (weil) eating horseflesh.

Mr. G.: How came he to get so much horseflesh?

St.: All your father's horses, Sir.

Mr. G.: What! are they dead too?

St.: Aye<sup>14</sup>, Sir, they died of (weil) overwork<sup>15</sup>.

Mr. G.: And why were they overworked, pray<sup>16</sup>?

St.: To carry<sup>17</sup> water, Sir.

Mr. G.: To carry water! And what were they carrying water for?

St.: Sure<sup>18</sup>, Sir, to put out<sup>19</sup> the fire.

Mr. G.: Fire! What fire?

St.: O, Sir, your father's house is burnt down<sup>20</sup> to the ground<sup>21</sup>.

Mr. G.: My father's house burnt down! And how came it set on<sup>22</sup> fire?

St.: I think, Sir, it must have been the torches<sup>23</sup>.

Mr. G.: Torches! What torches?

St.: At your mother's funeral<sup>24</sup>.

Mr. G.: My mother dead?

St.: Ah poor lady! She never looked up<sup>25</sup> after it.

Mr. G.: After what?

St.: The loss<sup>26</sup> of your father.

Mr. G.: My father gone<sup>27</sup> too!



St.: Yes, poor gentleman! He took to<sup>28</sup> his bed, as soon as<sup>29</sup> he heard of it.

Mr. G.: Heard of what?

St.: The bad news, Sir, an please your honour<sup>30</sup>.

Mr. G.: What, more miseries<sup>31</sup>! more bad news!

St.: Yes, Sir, your bank has failed<sup>32</sup>, and you are not worth<sup>33</sup> a shilling [in the world]. I made bold<sup>34</sup>, Sir, to come to [wait on] you to tell<sup>35</sup> you about it, for I thought, you would like to hear<sup>36</sup> the news.

<sup>1</sup> beibringen (s.). <sup>2</sup> schlimme Nachrichten. <sup>3</sup> eintreten (a, e) s. <sup>4</sup> bei. <sup>5</sup> der Verwalter. <sup>6</sup> der Bursche. <sup>7</sup> steht es. <sup>8</sup> Herr. <sup>9</sup> die Eifer. <sup>10</sup> hin. <sup>11</sup> es, daß. <sup>12</sup> zu viel freffen. <sup>13</sup> gieriges Vieh. <sup>14</sup> ja wohl. <sup>15</sup> sich überarbeiten. <sup>16</sup> denn. <sup>17</sup> herbeifahren. <sup>18</sup> nun. <sup>19</sup> löschen. <sup>20</sup> abbrennen (a, a) s. <sup>21</sup> bis auf den Grund. <sup>22</sup> angehen (s.). <sup>23</sup> die Fackel. <sup>24</sup> das Beigebengangs. <sup>25</sup> wieder erholen. <sup>26</sup> verlieren. <sup>27</sup> tot. <sup>28</sup> nicht mehr verlassen. <sup>29</sup> nachdem. <sup>30</sup> mit Ihrer Erlaubnis. <sup>31</sup> Unglück. <sup>32</sup> fallieren. <sup>33</sup> im Vermögen haben. <sup>34</sup> sich die Freiheit nehmen. <sup>35</sup> benachrichtigen. <sup>36</sup> interessieren.

## 78. Letters.

### 1. From a young lady in a boarding-school<sup>1</sup>.

*My dear Ann.*

You remember that it is now five months, since I quitted home<sup>2</sup>; though when I look back, the time seems to have passed very quickly, at least a great deal more so, than I should have supposed<sup>3</sup>. For I had always had a horror<sup>4</sup> [of going] to a boarding-school. — I do not know why, but [a sort of] something<sup>5</sup> seemed to tell me, it was<sup>6</sup> a most unhappy place<sup>7</sup>, and [it was] not without tears that I saw Mamma drive away<sup>8</sup> from the door and leave me here. I looked around<sup>9</sup> and saw every body trying to get a look at<sup>10</sup> the new young lady<sup>11</sup>, — that is<sup>12</sup> myself, — and I can assure you, I felt quite solitary and dismayed<sup>13</sup>. This however did not last long, for the amiability of my companions, who are nearly all of my own age, soon cheered me up<sup>14</sup>, and in a very short time I felt quite (wie) at home and entered<sup>15</sup> at once upon my studies with all the zeal<sup>16</sup>, which novelty added to them<sup>17</sup>. I have already found [out], that languages are rather my fort<sup>18</sup> more than

any thing else, and I have made rapid progress<sup>19</sup> in French and German. The beauty<sup>20</sup> of the writings of foreign authors<sup>21</sup>, of which my master is always telling<sup>22</sup> me, inspires me<sup>23</sup> with a still greater desire<sup>24</sup> to be able to understand them and appreciate<sup>25</sup> all their beauties. It is quite clear, that my hands were never made to do any drawing, for my sketches<sup>26</sup> are so very badly done<sup>27</sup>, that the master hardly looks at them; however I can not help<sup>28</sup> it, I try to do my best<sup>29</sup> and I can no more. I think, that I shall ask Mamma to leave off<sup>30</sup> and begin Italian instead.

The prizes are going (fut.) to be given out<sup>31</sup> in a few days; I am in hopes<sup>32</sup>, that I shall gain<sup>33</sup> one, but I am not yet quite sure, as they (man) never let you know<sup>34</sup> until the very day<sup>35</sup>. If you think it would amuse<sup>36</sup> you to see them given out, I am sure Mrs. C. will be most happy<sup>37</sup> to see you<sup>38</sup>, as many relations of the girls generally are present<sup>39</sup>. We have a beautiful garden (um) to walk in here, and I can assure you, that as we study well during studying-hours<sup>40</sup>, so we amuse ourselves well<sup>41</sup> during the hours for recreation<sup>42</sup>. Hoping to see you soon and with kind remembrance<sup>43</sup> to your family.

I remain

Your affectionate<sup>44</sup> friend.

<sup>1</sup> das Pensionat, Institut. <sup>2</sup> Elternhaus. <sup>3</sup> erwarten. <sup>4</sup> der Widerwillen vor. <sup>5</sup> irgend etwas. <sup>6</sup> Indic. or Subjunctive? <sup>7</sup> Aufenthaltsort. <sup>8</sup> abfahren. <sup>9</sup> umher blicken. <sup>10</sup> zu Gesicht bekommen. <sup>11</sup> der neue Ankömmling. <sup>12</sup> nämlich. <sup>13</sup> nutzlos. <sup>14</sup> aufheitern. <sup>15</sup> sich machen an. <sup>16</sup> der Eifer. <sup>17</sup> der Reiz der Neugier giebt. <sup>18</sup> starke Seite. <sup>19</sup> Fortschritte (plur.). <sup>20</sup> die Schönheiten. <sup>21</sup> welche die fremde Litteratur bietet. <sup>22</sup> sprechen. <sup>23</sup> verstärken. <sup>24</sup> das Verlangen, der Wunsch. <sup>25</sup> würdigen. <sup>26</sup> die Zeichnung. <sup>27</sup> ausfallen. <sup>28</sup> ändern. <sup>29</sup> sich nach besten Kräften bemühen. <sup>30</sup> es liegen lassen. <sup>31</sup> austheilen. <sup>32</sup> hoffen. <sup>33</sup> bekommen. <sup>34</sup> erfahren. <sup>35</sup> vor dem Tage selbst. <sup>36</sup> Vergnügen machen. <sup>37</sup> sich freuen. <sup>38</sup> wenn Du kommst. <sup>39</sup> zugegen. <sup>40</sup> Arbeitsstunde. <sup>41</sup> recht frühlich sein. <sup>42</sup> die Erholung. <sup>43</sup> herzlich (freundlichen) Gruß. <sup>44</sup> Dich liebende.

## 2. From a mother to her child.

*My dear Mary.*

I received your very pretty piece of needle-work<sup>1</sup> on my birthday, and was much pleased with<sup>2</sup> the taste<sup>3</sup> you

have exhibited in the choice of your colours. The design<sup>4</sup> is indeed<sup>5</sup> beautiful and the work is neatly<sup>6</sup> and carefully<sup>7</sup> done<sup>8</sup>.

I hope, my dear Mary, you pay every attention<sup>9</sup> to the lessons imparted<sup>10</sup> to you by that excellent lady, under whose care<sup>11</sup> you are placed, and that you seize every opportunity<sup>12</sup> of improving your mind<sup>13</sup>. The ignorant are deprived<sup>14</sup> of many sources<sup>15</sup> of amusement<sup>16</sup>, frequently through (dadurch daß) their own neglect<sup>17</sup> of the advantages of a solid education<sup>18</sup>, which was offered<sup>19</sup> them, when young; but this I think will not be your<sup>20</sup> case, at least (not) if you continue to give satisfaction<sup>21</sup> to your kind governess, who called upon<sup>22</sup> me to day and gave me a very good account<sup>23</sup> of your behaviour and attention<sup>24</sup>. To receive these<sup>25</sup> will prove (be) a great source of happiness to

Your affectionate<sup>26</sup> mother.

<sup>1</sup> die Handarbeit. <sup>2</sup> sehr erfreut über. <sup>3</sup> Geschmack zeigen. <sup>4</sup> das Muster. <sup>5</sup> wirklich. <sup>6</sup> sauber. <sup>7</sup> sorgfältig. <sup>8</sup> ausführen (s.). <sup>9</sup> Fleiß verwenden. <sup>10</sup> Unterricht erteilen. <sup>11</sup> unter Obhut stellen. <sup>12</sup> Gelegenheit ergreifen zu. <sup>13</sup> Ausbildung. <sup>14</sup> entbehren. <sup>15</sup> manche Quelle. <sup>16</sup> das Vergnügen. <sup>17</sup> vernachlässigen, versäumen. <sup>18</sup> sich die Vorteile einer tüchtigen Bildung aneignen. <sup>19</sup> darbieten. <sup>20</sup> bei Dir. <sup>21</sup> zufrieden stellen. <sup>22</sup> besuchen. <sup>23</sup> sich ganz zufrieden aussprechen. <sup>24</sup> Fleiß, Leistungen. <sup>25</sup> solches zu hören. <sup>26</sup> Dich liebende.

### 3.

*Dear<sup>1</sup> Sir.*

From the very<sup>2</sup> first day since I left<sup>3</sup> your school, where I had passed<sup>4</sup> a happy year, I had the idea<sup>5</sup> of showing you my gratitude in some useful way<sup>6</sup>, but did find no (eine) opportunity for it but till<sup>7</sup> yesterday.

You remember perhaps, that my father is engineer<sup>8</sup> to<sup>9</sup> the royal coal-mines<sup>10</sup> here. One of his headmen<sup>11</sup> brought him yesterday a rather<sup>12</sup> large piece of coal-slate<sup>13</sup>, on which [there] are very good petrifications of plants<sup>14</sup>. When my father showed it me, I asked<sup>15</sup> him to let me have<sup>16</sup> it, of course<sup>17</sup> not for myself, but for your collection<sup>18</sup>. My kind father willingly gave me the stone, had<sup>19</sup> it well packed up<sup>20</sup> and sent you by railway. You will have the

little case<sup>21</sup> in a few days, and it would give<sup>22</sup> me great pleasure, if this fine and rare specimen<sup>23</sup> would prove instructive<sup>24</sup> to many of your pupils.

Thanking<sup>26</sup> you heartily again<sup>27</sup> for all the kindness<sup>28</sup>, which was offered<sup>29</sup> me during my stay<sup>30</sup> in your house, and with giving you my father's respects<sup>25</sup>

I remain<sup>31</sup>

ever faithfully yours<sup>32</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> geehrt. <sup>2</sup> schon. <sup>3</sup> verlassen (ie, a). <sup>4</sup> verliehen. <sup>5</sup> die Absicht.  
<sup>6</sup> auf irgend eine Weise. <sup>7</sup> erst. <sup>8</sup> Berggrat. <sup>9</sup> bei. <sup>10</sup> Rohlenwerke.  
<sup>11</sup> Obersteiger. <sup>12</sup> ziemlich. <sup>13</sup> Schiefertafel. <sup>14</sup> Pflanzenverfeinerung.  
<sup>15</sup> bitten (a, e). <sup>16</sup> schenken. <sup>17</sup> natürlich. <sup>18</sup> Sammlung. <sup>19</sup> lassen (ie, a).  
<sup>20</sup> verpacken. <sup>21</sup> Rißchen. <sup>22</sup> machen. <sup>23</sup> das Stück. <sup>24</sup> zur Belehrung  
 dienen. <sup>25</sup> Mein Vater läßt sich Ihnen freundlich empfehlen. <sup>26</sup> und indem  
 ich Ihnen danke. <sup>27</sup> nochmals. <sup>28</sup> Freundlichkeit. <sup>29</sup> bieten (o, o). <sup>30</sup> der  
 Aufenthalt. <sup>31</sup> verbleiben. <sup>32</sup> stets Ihre dankbare.

4.

*My dear friend.*

I wish, you had been present<sup>1</sup>, when I remitted<sup>2</sup> the unhappy family the abundant<sup>3</sup> and very welcome support<sup>4</sup>, which you were kind enough<sup>5</sup> to collect<sup>6</sup> for them. I understand now, how true the words of the scripture<sup>7</sup> are: It is more blessed<sup>8</sup> to give than to receive<sup>9</sup>. I wish, I could let you taste some<sup>10</sup> of the satisfaction<sup>10</sup> I felt, when I witnessed<sup>11</sup> the genuine<sup>12</sup> happiness of these poor people.

But I will not thank you by making many words, knowing that you do not like it. You will find the sweetest<sup>13</sup> reward<sup>14</sup> for your charity<sup>15</sup> in the peace of your heart; may God bless<sup>16</sup> you for it, my dear. If you had allowed me to tell the poor people your name, I think, they would not have found the way to your town too long<sup>17</sup>, to thank you in person<sup>18</sup>. But thus they charged<sup>19</sup> me to give<sup>20</sup> their most respectful<sup>21</sup> thanks to their unknown benefactress<sup>22</sup>.

At the same<sup>23</sup> time I must thank you myself for the readiness<sup>24</sup>, with which you complied with<sup>25</sup> my request so soon and successfully<sup>26</sup> as well as for the great gratification<sup>10</sup>,

which you procured<sup>27</sup> me by allowing me to deliver<sup>28</sup> your charity<sup>29</sup> to the unhappy poor family.

Truly yours

Your affectionate friend.

<sup>1</sup> zugegen. <sup>2</sup> übergeben. <sup>3</sup> reich. <sup>4</sup> Unterstützung. <sup>5</sup> so. <sup>6</sup> sammeln.  
<sup>7</sup> die Schrift. <sup>8</sup> selig. <sup>9</sup> nehmen. <sup>10</sup> hohe Freude. <sup>11</sup> ein Zeuge sein.  
<sup>12</sup> augenscheinlich. <sup>13</sup> süß. <sup>14</sup> der Lohn. <sup>15</sup> das Liebeswerk. <sup>16</sup> segnen.  
<sup>17</sup> weit. <sup>18</sup> persönlich. <sup>19</sup> beauftragen. <sup>20</sup> sagen, aussprechen. <sup>21</sup> ehrerbietig.  
<sup>22</sup> Wohlthäterin. <sup>23</sup> zu gleicher. <sup>24</sup> Bereitwilligkeit. <sup>25</sup> erfüllen. <sup>26</sup> mit  
 so viel Erfolg. <sup>27</sup> bereiten. <sup>28</sup> überreichen. <sup>29</sup> Gabe. <sup>30</sup> etwas schmecken  
 lassen.

## 5. Country-life.

*My dear J.*

You ask me, what I [can] do<sup>1</sup> in the country all day to amuse<sup>2</sup> myself, but I can assure you, there are<sup>3</sup> more pleasures in a country-life, than you seem to think [of]. At least I will tell<sup>4</sup> you, how I generally pass the day and then you will be able to judge<sup>5</sup> [for] yourself. We rise at six o'clock; that of course will highly<sup>6</sup> astonish you<sup>7</sup> in London, who have the greatest difficulty<sup>8</sup> to get up at nine. We then take a ride on horseback till eight o'clock, when we return, and all<sup>9</sup> the family assemble<sup>10</sup> to breakfast. But what a breakfast we eat<sup>11</sup>! for our ride gives us such an appetite, that a Londoner would be quite astonished to see such mountains of food<sup>12</sup> disappear [in nothing]. After breakfast we form<sup>13</sup> different amusements<sup>14</sup> for the morning; some go hay making, others go shooting, others ride [over] to the town to make purchases — in fact<sup>15</sup> the time is always pleasantly occupied until dinner-time, [which is] at one o'clock. After dinner we take a ride in the carriage or go [and] fish in (an) the lake, or take a bath, if it is warm, or play at billiards, or read or write until (bis zum) tea-[time], which is at six, and after tea I go sometimes to a cricket-club I belong to. Sometimes the young ladies play, and we manage to get up<sup>16</sup> a little dance<sup>17</sup>, or some one reads a book aloud<sup>18</sup> until nine o'clock, when we sup<sup>19</sup>. Then we retire<sup>20</sup> to rest, generally all of us well pleased<sup>21</sup> with what we have done during the day. I think, you<sup>22</sup>

would like it better (hier) than [the life of] London, and if you would come and make the trial, I shall be but too happy<sup>23</sup> [to see you].

Yours for ever<sup>24</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> treiben. <sup>2</sup> unterhalten. <sup>3</sup> giebt oder find? <sup>4</sup> erzählen. <sup>5</sup> urteilen.  
<sup>6</sup> sehr. <sup>7</sup> Such. <sup>8</sup> Mühe. <sup>9</sup> all oder ganz? <sup>10</sup> sich versammeln (sing.).  
<sup>11</sup> zu sich nehmen. <sup>12</sup> das Essen. <sup>13</sup> planen. <sup>14</sup> Beschäftigung. <sup>15</sup> wirklich  
 (in die Mitte des Satzes). <sup>16</sup> zustande zu bringen suchen. <sup>17</sup> Tänzchen.  
<sup>18</sup> vorlesen aus. <sup>19</sup> bis zum Abendessen um. <sup>20</sup> sich zurückziehen zu (s).  
<sup>21</sup> zufrieden. <sup>22</sup> es. <sup>23</sup> sich sehr darüber freuen. <sup>24</sup> immer die Deine.

6.

*Dear Emma.*

At last the much longed for<sup>1</sup> holidays have come. We had our anniversary examination<sup>2</sup> yesterday, and to day is the first holiday<sup>3</sup>. How glad I am, that winter with its gloomy<sup>4</sup> and cold days is over, and sweet<sup>5</sup> spring invites us again out into the fields. To be sure spring-time is the finest time, which God has granted<sup>6</sup> us; it calls the flowers forth<sup>7</sup> from the ground<sup>8</sup>, gives grass and herbs<sup>9</sup> to the flocks<sup>10</sup>, makes<sup>11</sup> the young lambs frisk<sup>12</sup> about and the birds sing. I joyfully<sup>13</sup> remember the pleasure, which I enjoyed<sup>14</sup> in your company on my last year's visit at your lovely<sup>15</sup> village, when we met the shepherd with his flock in the fresh green meadows and stroked<sup>16</sup> the young lambs; and do you remember how eagerly<sup>17</sup> we looked for violets<sup>18</sup> in the hedges<sup>19</sup>, and were overjoyed<sup>20</sup>, when we found the first, and playfully<sup>21</sup> you thanked the white-thorn-bushes<sup>22</sup> for (dafür daß) having covered<sup>23</sup> the [unsheltered] violets with their yellow withered<sup>24</sup> leaves against the frost of the winter? And the young goslings<sup>25</sup>, the little things<sup>26</sup>, looked too pretty in their yellow babyish downy-coats<sup>27</sup>, as they waddled<sup>28</sup> behind their cackling<sup>29</sup> mamas, and splashed<sup>30</sup> into the brook to take their first lesson in swimming<sup>31</sup>. And the nest in the bush with the tiny<sup>32</sup> blue eggs, and the antics<sup>33</sup> of the squirrel<sup>34</sup> in the wood, and how we chased<sup>35</sup> the beautiful butterflies<sup>36</sup>. You see, how much I enjoy<sup>37</sup> the recollection of (an) that good dear<sup>38</sup> time. How happy I should be to enjoy country-life<sup>39</sup> again in this

spring and to spend<sup>40</sup> a few days at your hospitable parsonage<sup>41</sup>. My parents have no objection<sup>42</sup> and I only want<sup>43</sup> the permission<sup>44</sup> of yours. Please ask them, if they will allow me to come and write me soon [word].

Yours truly<sup>45</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> lang ersehnt. <sup>2</sup> Jahresprüfung. <sup>3</sup> der Ferientag. <sup>4</sup> trüb. <sup>5</sup> lieb, hold. <sup>6</sup> schenken. <sup>7</sup> hervor aus. <sup>8</sup> der Boden. <sup>9</sup> das Kraut 2. <sup>10</sup> die Herde. <sup>11</sup> lassen. <sup>12</sup> umherspringen. <sup>13</sup> mit Freude. <sup>14</sup> wie vergnügt ich war. <sup>15</sup> freundlich. <sup>16</sup> streicheln. <sup>17</sup> eifrig. <sup>18</sup> Weisheit. <sup>19</sup> Gede. <sup>20</sup> überglücklich. <sup>21</sup> scherzend. <sup>22</sup> der Weißdornbusch. <sup>23</sup> schützend decken. <sup>24</sup> weiß, dürr. <sup>25</sup> junge Gänse. <sup>26</sup> Dinger. <sup>27</sup> Kinder-Flaumröschchen. <sup>28</sup> watscheln. <sup>29</sup> schnattern. <sup>30</sup> plätschen. <sup>31</sup> Schwimmübung. <sup>32</sup> niedlich. <sup>33</sup> die Kletterkünste. <sup>34</sup> das Eichhörnchen. <sup>35</sup> nachjagen. <sup>36</sup> der Schmetterling. <sup>37</sup> sich freuen bei. <sup>38</sup> liebe schön. <sup>39</sup> das schöne Vandleben genießen. <sup>40</sup> zubringen. <sup>41</sup> das gastliche Pfarrhaus. <sup>42</sup> nichts dagegen. <sup>43</sup> bedürfen (gen.). <sup>44</sup> die Erlaubnis. <sup>45</sup> Deine Dich liebende Freundin.

## 7. Answer.

*Dear Bertha.*

If I could be angry with<sup>1</sup> you, your letter would have made me so (böse). Please tell me, is it right, that the daughter of an old friend of my father's should ask, if her visit would be welcome<sup>2</sup> to us? When I read<sup>3</sup> your letter to papa, do you know, what he said? No, it is not right, that dear Bertha behaves so ceremoniously with<sup>4</sup> us. Give her directly our kind regards<sup>5</sup>, and tell the migratory<sup>6</sup> girl (daß sie) to come without delay<sup>7</sup> and stay with us to the<sup>8</sup> end of her holidays, her visit will be welcome to us at any<sup>9</sup> time.

I am glad to hear, that you enjoyed yourself<sup>10</sup> so well here last year, though we cannot offer much change<sup>11</sup> to our visitors<sup>12</sup>. Spring has returned in all its splendour<sup>13</sup>. The cherry trees in the Lemening valley are in full blossom; a real<sup>14</sup> sea of blossoms delights<sup>15</sup> the eye when (wenn man) beholding them from the opposite<sup>16</sup> hill-side. Yesterday afternoon I was with some young friends in the forest to gather<sup>17</sup> lilies of the valley<sup>18</sup>. We found an immense number<sup>19</sup>. When we had filled our baskets<sup>20</sup> we arranged<sup>21</sup> a nice<sup>22</sup> game, which I will describe<sup>23</sup> you. We made<sup>24</sup> a crown of lilies, primroses<sup>25</sup>, sprigs of beech<sup>26</sup>, anemones etc.

With this wreath<sup>27</sup> our clergyman's fair daughter<sup>28</sup> Mary was crowned, she was to be<sup>29</sup> queen of the May<sup>30</sup>. Another girl, her name was Ottilia, was decked out all over<sup>31</sup> with lilies, wherever<sup>32</sup> there was room<sup>33</sup> for them, she was to personify<sup>34</sup> Lily of the valley. All of us then joined hands<sup>35</sup> to make a round<sup>36</sup>, Ottilia in the centre<sup>37</sup> of it, and danced round her<sup>38</sup>, singing: Lily of the valley tell us, why you wear those fragrant<sup>39</sup> white little bells<sup>40</sup>? Ottilia then sang in reply to<sup>41</sup> this question: Queen of May will arrive to day, and I must hastily announce<sup>42</sup> to all the flowers in the forests and valleys by my ringing<sup>43</sup> bells, to (daß sie) array<sup>44</sup> themselves in their gaudy<sup>45</sup> colours to see her pass<sup>46</sup>. At this summons<sup>47</sup> all the girls decorated<sup>48</sup> themselves with flowers as well as they could, to go and meet<sup>49</sup> the approaching<sup>50</sup> queen May, to bid her a welcome<sup>51</sup> due to her dignity<sup>52</sup>. The queen of May, Mary, then appeared<sup>53</sup> in her crown of flowers, and all the girls rendered her (ihm) homage<sup>54</sup>, each addressing<sup>55</sup> her in a speech<sup>56</sup> suggested<sup>57</sup> by the solemn<sup>58</sup> moment.

How funny<sup>59</sup> it was to hear all these addresses, and the replies the queen deigned<sup>60</sup> to give.

So<sup>61</sup> I expect you [to be] here to morrow night. My brother will drive to the station of N. with our chesnut<sup>62</sup>, where we shall meet<sup>63</sup> you to take<sup>64</sup> you here. But provide<sup>65</sup> yourself sufficiently<sup>66</sup> with clothes for 4 weeks, as we do not allow you this time to return home sooner.

Good bye<sup>67</sup> for to day, my dear friend.

Affectionately yours.

<sup>1</sup> böse über. <sup>2</sup> angenehm. <sup>3</sup> vorlesen. <sup>4</sup> fremd thun gegen. <sup>5</sup> freundlich grüßen. <sup>6</sup> wanderlustig. <sup>7</sup> der Verzug. <sup>8</sup> bis zum. <sup>9</sup> zu jeder. <sup>10</sup> gefallen. <sup>11</sup> Abwechslung. <sup>12</sup> der Besuch. <sup>13</sup> die Pracht. <sup>14</sup> wahr. <sup>15</sup> entzücken. <sup>16</sup> gegenüber liegend. <sup>17</sup> suchen, pflücken. <sup>18</sup> Maiblume. <sup>19</sup> ungeheuer viel, Menge. <sup>20</sup> Rörbchen. <sup>21</sup> erinnern (a, o), veranstalten. <sup>22</sup> nett. <sup>23</sup> beschreiben. <sup>24</sup> flechten (o, o). <sup>25</sup> die Primel. <sup>26</sup> der Buchenzweig. <sup>27</sup> der Kranz. <sup>28</sup> das blonde Pfarrersstöchterlein. <sup>29</sup> vorstellen. <sup>30</sup> der König Mai. <sup>31</sup> über und über schmücken. <sup>32</sup> wo nur. <sup>33</sup> Plätzchen. <sup>34</sup> in Person sein. <sup>35</sup> sich bei den Händen fassen. <sup>36</sup> einen Kreis bilden. <sup>37</sup> in dessen Mitte. <sup>38</sup> um sie herum. <sup>39</sup> duftend. <sup>40</sup> Glöckchen. <sup>41</sup> in Antwort auf. <sup>42</sup> eiligst ankündigen. <sup>43</sup> klingen. <sup>44</sup> aufstellen. <sup>45</sup> bunt. <sup>46</sup> vorüberziehen. <sup>47</sup> auf diese Aufforderung hin. <sup>48</sup> schmücken. <sup>49</sup> entgegen gehen. <sup>50</sup> nahebd. <sup>51</sup> bewillkommen. <sup>52</sup> seiner Würde gemäß. <sup>53</sup> er-



scheinen (ie, ie). <sup>54</sup> huldigen. <sup>55</sup> anreden. <sup>56</sup> mit Worten, die. <sup>57</sup> ein-  
geben. <sup>58</sup> feierlich. <sup>59</sup> nett. <sup>60</sup> würdigen. <sup>61</sup> also (nach dem Verb).  
<sup>62</sup> der Fuchs. <sup>63</sup> abholen. <sup>64</sup> bringen. <sup>65</sup> versehen. <sup>66</sup> hinreichend.  
<sup>67</sup> Sebe wohl, adieu.

8.

*My very dear<sup>1</sup> friend.*

I wish, I could tell you what a great comfort<sup>2</sup> your hearty sympathy<sup>3</sup> as well as your kind offer<sup>4</sup> was to me in my affliction<sup>5</sup>. Since (der) death took away from me my ever memorable<sup>6</sup> dear mother, and I became an entire<sup>7</sup> orphan<sup>8</sup> by this dreadful loss, much heartfelt<sup>9</sup> sympathy was expressed<sup>10</sup> to me from all sides, but nobody offered<sup>11</sup> me, as you did, a home<sup>12</sup> in my loneliness<sup>13</sup>. Accept<sup>14</sup> my sincerest<sup>15</sup> thanks for this (your) kindness of yours; may God, the father of orphans, reward you for it.

For [the] present, my dear Julia, I have found a home in the family of a relation<sup>16</sup>, but do not know for how long, nor can I clearly see now, what my future course of life<sup>17</sup> will be<sup>18</sup>, but look forward to<sup>19</sup> it with little joy. I therefore am not at present in a (der) position<sup>20</sup> to accept your kind offer, but earnestly beseech<sup>21</sup> you to keep<sup>22</sup> your kind heart open [to] me. You may perhaps later find an occasion to show your kindness to the daughter of him, who once saved<sup>23</sup> your life.

With repeated thanks (indem ich) for your sympathy in my affliction.

Yours faithfully.

<sup>1</sup> innig geliebt. <sup>2</sup> ungemein wohlthuend. <sup>3</sup> die Teilnahme. <sup>4</sup> das Anerbieten. <sup>5</sup> die Betrübnis, Trauer. <sup>6</sup> unvergesslich. <sup>7</sup> ganz. <sup>8</sup> Waise. <sup>9</sup> herzlich, warm. <sup>10</sup> zu teil werden. <sup>11</sup> anbieten (o, o). <sup>12</sup> das Heim. <sup>13</sup> Vereinsamung. <sup>14</sup> hinnehmen. <sup>15</sup> aufrichtigst, herzlichst. <sup>16</sup> die Verwandte. <sup>17</sup> zukünftiges Leben. <sup>18</sup> sich gestalten. <sup>19</sup> darauf hinblicken. <sup>20</sup> die Lage. <sup>21</sup> bringend bitten. <sup>22</sup> halten. <sup>23</sup> retten.

9. Journey by sea<sup>1</sup>.

*My dear Jane.*

I am at last at Boulogne, for I really thought, we should never get<sup>2</sup> there. We had a very bad<sup>3</sup> passage<sup>4</sup> indeed, I was ill<sup>5</sup> nearly all the way<sup>6</sup>, and was so giddy<sup>7</sup>

with the movement<sup>8</sup> of the boat, that for<sup>9</sup> several days after<sup>10</sup> it appeared to me, as if every thing was going round<sup>11</sup>. You know, we started from London at eight o'clock in the morning and ought to have been at Boulogne at seven in the evening, whereas<sup>12</sup> we were not here till<sup>13</sup> twelve o'clock. We got in sight<sup>14</sup> [of] Boulogne at about six, but on account of [there] not being enough<sup>15</sup> water in the harbour, we were obliged to wait till twelve. You of course have experienced<sup>16</sup> what sea-sickness is; I never had (sic), and I sincerely<sup>17</sup> hope, I never may again (sic bekommen). On<sup>18</sup> landing [there] was all that custom-house ceremony<sup>19</sup> to go through<sup>20</sup>, and all together<sup>21</sup>, when I arrived at the hotel, I felt ready<sup>22</sup> to drop<sup>23</sup>. However a good supper soon restored<sup>24</sup> me, and I was no sooner<sup>25</sup> in bed, than (so) I fell fast (auch) asleep. I took a delicious<sup>26</sup> sea-bath this morning, which<sup>27</sup>, as you said, is a great luxury<sup>28</sup>. The sea-air here is delightful<sup>29</sup>, and I am quite prepared<sup>30</sup> to enjoy my stay<sup>31</sup> here very much<sup>32</sup> indeed. Regretting<sup>33</sup> you are not with me, believe me to remain<sup>34</sup>

your sincere<sup>35</sup> friend.

<sup>1</sup> zur See. <sup>2</sup> kommen. <sup>3</sup> böse, stürmisch. <sup>4</sup> die Überfahrt. <sup>5</sup> see-frank. <sup>6</sup> die Zeit. <sup>7</sup> schwindlig. <sup>8</sup> von der Bewegung. <sup>9</sup> noch. <sup>10</sup> nachher. <sup>11</sup> mit mir herumginge (why subj.?). <sup>12</sup> wohingegen, während. <sup>13</sup> vor. <sup>14</sup> in Sicht bekommen. <sup>15</sup> zu niedrig. <sup>16</sup> erfahren (u. a.). <sup>17</sup> von Herzen. <sup>18</sup> als. <sup>19</sup> Zollamt-Förmlichkeiten. <sup>20</sup> durchmachen. <sup>21</sup> nach dem allem. <sup>22</sup> so fertig, daß. <sup>23</sup> hinfinken mögen. <sup>24</sup> herstellen. <sup>25</sup> kaum. <sup>26</sup> herrlich. <sup>27</sup> was oder welches? <sup>28</sup> Erquickung, Genuß. <sup>29</sup> köstlich, herrlich. <sup>30</sup> bereit sein, vorhaben. <sup>31</sup> der Aufenthalt. <sup>32</sup> recht genießen. <sup>33</sup> bedauern. <sup>34</sup> verbleiben. <sup>35</sup> aufrichtig, treu.

10.

London, Regent Street.

*My dear J.*

I am now arrived in London, the city which I so much wished to see and of which I had heard so much. Myself and aunt have taken lodgings<sup>1</sup> in Regent Street, a very pearl of the town at the West End. I have as yet<sup>2</sup> seen nothing of sights<sup>3</sup>, as we only<sup>4</sup> arrived here last night. The first [thing] though<sup>5</sup> that struck<sup>6</sup> me was the quantity<sup>7</sup> of smoke, which seemed to be every where. In fact

it appeared like<sup>8</sup> going into a wall<sup>9</sup>, when we entered<sup>10</sup> London. When you<sup>11</sup> are in Hyde Park, which is very large, I was told, it is often so dense<sup>12</sup>, even<sup>13</sup> on a very clear day in summer, that you can not see the beauty of groups of trees<sup>14</sup> at some distance. I was much pleased with the wideness<sup>15</sup> of the streets and with the pavement<sup>16</sup>, which you find every where. But what a thundering noise<sup>17</sup> there is from the constant<sup>18</sup> rolling<sup>19</sup> of carriages! I think, it must be dangerous, if possible at all<sup>20</sup> for me, to cross<sup>21</sup> a street. To morrow I shall commence going to see the sights<sup>3</sup> and visiting all the places of amusement<sup>22</sup> with my aunt or some of her friends, to whom she will introduce<sup>23</sup> me, and perhaps you may be amused<sup>24</sup>, by my (wenn ich) writing to tell<sup>25</sup> you of all I have seen. I shall do so about twice a week. I have no more time or I would write more, as I am afraid, I am<sup>26</sup> too late for the post.

[Believe me] to remain<sup>27</sup>

yours truly<sup>28</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> einquartieren. <sup>2</sup> bis jetzt noch. <sup>3</sup> Sehenswürdigkeiten. <sup>4</sup> erst. (warum?) <sup>5</sup> jedoch. <sup>6</sup> auffallen (s.). <sup>7</sup> Rasse. <sup>8</sup> als wenn. <sup>9</sup> durch eine Rauchwand bringen (warum subj.?). <sup>10</sup> beim Eintritt in. <sup>11</sup> man. <sup>12</sup> dicht. <sup>13</sup> sogar. <sup>14</sup> Baumgruppe. <sup>15</sup> die Breite. <sup>16</sup> das Trottoir. <sup>17</sup> donnerndes Getöse. <sup>18</sup> beständig. <sup>19</sup> das Rollen. <sup>20</sup> überhaupt. <sup>21</sup> kreuzen. <sup>22</sup> Vergnügungsorte. <sup>23</sup> einführen bei. <sup>24</sup> Freude machen. <sup>25</sup> in meinen Briefen erzähle. <sup>26</sup> es ist. <sup>27</sup> Ich verbleibe. <sup>28</sup> Deine aufrichtige Freundin.

11.

*Dear N.*

The queen held her birthday drawing-room<sup>1</sup> yesterday. Of course we were desirous<sup>2</sup> to see the procession<sup>3</sup> and hastened to St. James' Park, where we paid a man a few pence to allow<sup>4</sup> us to mount<sup>5</sup> [on] a chair (bären) he had (hither) brought for the purpose<sup>6</sup>, and saw the sight<sup>7</sup> to perfection<sup>8</sup>. This drawing-room is generally more fully attended<sup>9</sup> than any other, and it was indeed a brilliant<sup>10</sup> assembly<sup>11</sup>, — the ladies vying<sup>12</sup> with each other in the splendour<sup>13</sup> of their costumes<sup>14</sup>, and the officers all in full military dress<sup>15</sup>, and the band<sup>16</sup> playing all the time, and the young court beauties presented<sup>17</sup> to her majesty<sup>18</sup> for the first time and looking full of anxiety<sup>19</sup>, and all the

carriages and horses prancing<sup>20</sup> as though<sup>21</sup> they were aware<sup>22</sup> of the grandeur of the scene<sup>23</sup>, and the servants<sup>24</sup> with enormous<sup>25</sup> bouquets in their button-holes, and then the concourse<sup>26</sup> of persons<sup>27</sup> anxious to be lookers-on<sup>28</sup> at least and to give<sup>29</sup> a hearty cheer<sup>30</sup> to their queen as she approaches<sup>31</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> der Geburtstags-Empfang. <sup>2</sup> begierig. <sup>3</sup> der Zug. <sup>4</sup> für die Erlaubnis — zu dürfen. <sup>5</sup> bestaunen. <sup>6</sup> für diesen Zweck. <sup>7</sup> der Zug. <sup>8</sup> ausgezeichnet. <sup>9</sup> zahlreicher besucht. <sup>10</sup> glänzend. <sup>11</sup> Gesellschaft, Versammlung. <sup>12</sup> wettsiefern. <sup>13</sup> der Glanz. <sup>14</sup> der Anzug, die Toilette. <sup>15</sup> die Gala-uniform. <sup>16</sup> ein Musikchor. <sup>17</sup> vorstellen (s.). <sup>18</sup> die Majestät. <sup>19</sup> mit erwartungsvollen Blicken. <sup>20</sup> in stolzer Haltung. <sup>21</sup> als wenn. <sup>22</sup> bewußt. <sup>23</sup> der Auszeichnung, des feierlichen Augenblicks. <sup>24</sup> der Bediente. <sup>25</sup> ungeheuer. <sup>26</sup> das Zusammenströmen. <sup>27</sup> Menschen. <sup>28</sup> Zuschauer. <sup>29</sup> ausbringen. <sup>30</sup> das Hoch. <sup>31</sup> bei ihrem Erscheinen.

12.

*My dearest little girl.*

Though you are already a letter in my debt<sup>1</sup>, and though I hope so soon to see you again, I can not help<sup>2</sup> writing to you to day, to tell you, we all wish many happy returns<sup>3</sup> of your birthday; that we shall have a great plum-pudding in (zu) honour of you, as usual and drink your health afterwards; and that your brothers mean to fire<sup>4</sup> their new brass-cannon<sup>5</sup> nine times, as a further<sup>6</sup> token<sup>7</sup> of rejoicing. But as perhaps you may not be quite satisfied<sup>8</sup> with *our* eating good things on (bei) this happy (fest) occasion<sup>9</sup>, I have caused an iced<sup>10</sup> plum-cake<sup>11</sup> to be made, which (und) I hope you and your cousins may be prevailed upon<sup>12</sup> to taste. We have ordered it to be left<sup>13</sup>, directed for you<sup>14</sup>, at the inn, where your aunt will be so good [as] to send for<sup>15</sup> it. Besides the cake, the box<sup>16</sup> contains an elegant writing-desk<sup>17</sup>, which your uncle Frederic<sup>18</sup> sends you; a book of plants drawn and coloured<sup>19</sup> after nature, with descriptions<sup>20</sup> annexed<sup>21</sup>, the production of your brother Robert; and several turnery<sup>22</sup> articles, such as a silk-winder a pin-case<sup>24</sup> etc., the handy-work<sup>25</sup> of Edward. As for your papa not knowing, what present would be most acceptable<sup>26</sup> to his little daughter, he has put in a five Mark piece.

I assure you, I have felt very lonely<sup>27</sup> all this time (über) without (having) my little girl to teach and to chat<sup>28</sup> with, as I sit at work of a morning; but I have amused myself as well as I could with laying<sup>29</sup> plans of things (was) to be done, when you come home. Both you and I must be diligent this winter, I can tell you, for there are plenty of things to be done. Besides reading and writing and arithmetic<sup>30</sup>, which are never to be neglected, I wish you to work a pretty handkerchief for your aunt. I have got the muslin, and drawn the pattern<sup>31</sup> already. Then you must help me with (an) some fire-screens<sup>32</sup> and flower-stands<sup>33</sup>, with which I mean to ornament<sup>34</sup> the drawing-room<sup>35</sup>, and which will be very nice idle<sup>36</sup> work. Besides all this we shall have our French and dancing to attend to (treiben), and your uncle Frederic is so good<sup>37</sup> as to say<sup>38</sup>, that he will give you lessons in drawing<sup>39</sup>.

Bless me<sup>40</sup>, it is five o'clock; and here come Robert and Edward to read their French to me. I really must not [stay] chatting with you any longer. Your papa, uncle and brothers, all join in tenderest<sup>41</sup> love.

That every succeeding<sup>42</sup> birthday find you wiser and better than the last, and more the pride<sup>43</sup> and joy of your family and friends, is the fervent<sup>44</sup> wish and daily prayer<sup>45</sup> of your fondly affectionate<sup>46</sup> mother.

<sup>1</sup> noch — schuldig. <sup>2</sup> unterlassen. <sup>3</sup> Glück zu. <sup>4</sup> vorhaben abzuschließen.  
<sup>5</sup> Messinglanone. <sup>6</sup> weiter. <sup>7</sup> das Zeichnen. <sup>8</sup> befriedigen. <sup>9</sup> das Ereignis.  
<sup>10</sup> mit einem Guß. <sup>11</sup> der Kofinensuchen. <sup>12</sup> sich bewegen lassen. <sup>13</sup> ab-  
geben. <sup>14</sup> adressieren an. <sup>15</sup> holen lassen. <sup>16</sup> Rippen. <sup>17</sup> das Schreib-  
lästchen, Briefmappe. <sup>18</sup> Friedbrich. <sup>19</sup> kolorieren. <sup>20</sup> die Beschreibung.  
<sup>21</sup> dabei. <sup>22</sup> Drechslerarbeit. <sup>23</sup> Seidenwinde. <sup>24</sup> Büsche. <sup>25</sup> die Hand-  
arbeit. <sup>26</sup> angenehm. <sup>27</sup> es einsam finden. <sup>28</sup> plaudern. <sup>29</sup> machen.  
<sup>30</sup> Rechnen. <sup>31</sup> das Muster. <sup>32</sup> der Ofenschirm. <sup>33</sup> Ständer. <sup>34</sup> schmücken.  
<sup>35</sup> das Besuchzimmer. <sup>36</sup> in Ruhestunden. <sup>37</sup> gefällig. <sup>38</sup> versprechen.  
<sup>39</sup> Zeichenkunde. <sup>40</sup> wahrlich. <sup>41</sup> auf's herzlichste mit mir grüßen. <sup>42</sup> folgend.  
<sup>43</sup> der Stolz. <sup>44</sup> heiß. <sup>45</sup> das Gebet. <sup>46</sup> Dich zärtlich liebend.

*My dear Mary.*

As it is the first of January, I believe I ought to begin my letter with wishing many happy new years<sup>1</sup>, which [I am] sure I do with<sup>2</sup> all my heart. A merry<sup>3</sup> Christmas

I suppose<sup>4</sup> you have had and so have<sup>5</sup> we, though we have not had<sup>6</sup> parties, nor been out visiting<sup>7</sup> much, for you know, we have very few neighbours, with whom we have intercourse<sup>8</sup>. None<sup>9</sup> of us thinks<sup>10</sup> much of running through the snow a mile for the sake<sup>11</sup> of spending<sup>12</sup> two or three hours with a friend (plur.). We have all been joining<sup>13</sup> to build up<sup>14</sup> a man of snow in our garden, and I wish you could seem him. He is much taller than any of us, and makes a very formidable<sup>15</sup> figure<sup>16</sup>, (baš) I can assure you. We call him Woodman<sup>17</sup>, and he has a hatchet<sup>18</sup> in his hand and a pipe in his mouth. Every morning after breakfast we carry out the crumbs<sup>19</sup> for the robins<sup>20</sup> and other poor little birds, who begin to be very much distressed<sup>21</sup> for want of food<sup>22</sup>. They come in great flocks<sup>23</sup>, and are growing quite tame (žahm), and there are several of (unter) them, who have been to visit us so often, that we have become quite acquainted with them and have given them names.

Little Tom Vincent is spending his holidays with us, and I like him very much indeed, for he is so good-humoured<sup>24</sup>, and loves us all so dearly. Then one pities him so<sup>25</sup>! He was (ift) born in Jamaica, which you know is one of the West India<sup>26</sup> islands; there his parents died, and he was sent over to be educated<sup>27</sup>. Captain<sup>28</sup> Vincent, his uncle, would certainly have had him home<sup>29</sup> to his own house, but he was out at sea<sup>30</sup>; so poor Tom had not friends to go to, but must have been left all the holidays at school, if papa had not brought him here. He can not run about in the snow as we do, for there is no such thing as frost known in the warm country, that he comes from, and he had never seen snow, nor heard of it; but the first time it snowed here, he called out: Look, what a shower<sup>31</sup> of feathers! where do they come from? So he is very chilly<sup>32</sup> and tender, and almost lame<sup>32a</sup>, poor fellow<sup>33</sup>, with chilblains<sup>34</sup>.

Pray, send me word<sup>35</sup> in your next, what you are reading, and whether you have any pretty work in hand<sup>36</sup>, and then I will tell you, what I am about<sup>36</sup>. I have not left room<sup>37</sup> in this letter to write more.

<sup>1</sup> Glückswünsche zum neuen Jahr. <sup>2</sup> von. <sup>3</sup> frühlich. <sup>4</sup> vermuten.  
<sup>5</sup> auch. <sup>6</sup> geben. <sup>7</sup> Besuche machen. <sup>8</sup> verkehren. <sup>9</sup> leins. <sup>10</sup> Wert legen  
auf. <sup>11</sup> um. <sup>12</sup> zubringen. <sup>13</sup> zusammen. <sup>14</sup> machen. <sup>15</sup> fürchtbar.  
<sup>16</sup> aussehen. <sup>17</sup> Waldmann. <sup>18</sup> die Art. <sup>19</sup> die Brotkrümchen. <sup>20</sup> das  
Rotkehlchen. <sup>21</sup> Rot leiden. <sup>22</sup> Mangel an Nahrung. <sup>23</sup> die Schär.  
<sup>24</sup> munter. <sup>25</sup> er dauert einen. <sup>26</sup> weisindisch. <sup>27</sup> zu seiner Ausbildung.  
<sup>28</sup> Rapiän. <sup>29</sup> zu sich. <sup>30</sup> auf der See. <sup>31</sup> Regen. <sup>32</sup> frohlig. <sup>33a</sup> lahm.  
<sup>33</sup> der Junge. <sup>34</sup> vor lauter Froßbeulen. <sup>35</sup> wissen lassen. <sup>36</sup> an etwas  
sein. <sup>37</sup> keinen Raum mehr übrig.

14.

*My dear friend.*

I observed last night, and not without some degree of<sup>1</sup> envy, the pleasure you experienced<sup>2</sup> in being able to partake<sup>3</sup> of [and join in] the conversation of (mit) the German ladies, whom I had the pleasure of meeting<sup>4</sup> at your house.

Tell me, by what means you have acquired<sup>5</sup> such a facility<sup>6</sup> in speaking and understanding every thing you hear. I have studied the language for some<sup>7</sup> time, and can read, translate and — I flatter myself — write it tolerably<sup>8</sup> well; but I always find myself embarrassed<sup>9</sup>, when I attempt to converse<sup>10</sup> with Germans, not only to express myself<sup>11</sup>, but also to understand them. It is clear<sup>12</sup>, that our methods<sup>13</sup> must be very different, or that I am excessively<sup>14</sup> stupid<sup>15</sup>.

No doubt, much may depend<sup>16</sup> on the choice<sup>17</sup> of a master, as I have been told (man), that one good practical<sup>18</sup> lesson is worth (so viel als) a whole week's theoretical<sup>19</sup> study<sup>20</sup>. However, be it as it may<sup>21</sup>, I am determined<sup>22</sup> to conquer<sup>23</sup> all difficulties<sup>24</sup>, pursue<sup>25</sup> the study without intermission<sup>26</sup>, and let no day pass without practice<sup>27</sup>, [such as] reading, copying and translating. As to<sup>28</sup> speaking, I will thank<sup>29</sup> you to (wenn) give me some advice, how to set about it<sup>30</sup>.

Adieu till Sunday, when I expect (to have) the pleasure of your company to dinner<sup>31</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> einig. <sup>2</sup> machen. <sup>3</sup> teilnehmen (s.). <sup>4</sup> treffen (a, o). <sup>5</sup> erlangen.  
<sup>6</sup> die Beiständigkeit. <sup>7</sup> länger. <sup>8</sup> ziemlich. <sup>9</sup> in Verlegenheit sein. <sup>10</sup> sich  
unterhalten. <sup>11</sup> sich ausdrücken. <sup>12</sup> klar. <sup>13</sup> die Methode. <sup>14</sup> außerordent-  
lich. <sup>15</sup> dumm. <sup>16</sup> abhängen von. <sup>17</sup> die Wahl. <sup>18</sup> praktisch. <sup>19</sup> theo-  
retisch. <sup>20</sup> das Studium. <sup>21</sup> wolle. <sup>22</sup> entschließen (o, o). <sup>23</sup> überwinden.  
<sup>24</sup> die Schwierigkeit. <sup>25</sup> fortsetzen. <sup>26</sup> unermülich. <sup>27</sup> üben in. <sup>28</sup> was  
betrifft. <sup>29</sup> dankbar sein. <sup>30</sup> es anfangen. <sup>31</sup> Dich bei uns zu Tisch zu sehen.

15. Answer.

*My dear friend.*

I regret<sup>1</sup> much not being able to accept<sup>2</sup> your kind invitation<sup>3</sup> for dinner<sup>4</sup>. You will remember, that my dear mother was not quite well, when we had the pleasure of seeing you at our house. Unfortunately<sup>5</sup> this indisposition<sup>6</sup> has considerably<sup>7</sup> increased<sup>8</sup>; this morning she felt<sup>9</sup> so unwell, that she could not leave her bed. The physician, we sent for, declared, that till now her illness was nothing but a bad<sup>10</sup> cold, that would be removed<sup>11</sup> in a few days. But at all events<sup>12</sup> she will not be well<sup>13</sup> again by the day after to-morrow, Sunday, and I shall be obliged to renounce<sup>14</sup> the pleasure of dining with you. I hope, that under these circumstances<sup>15</sup> you will excuse my not coming to you<sup>16</sup>.

You ask, my dear friend, my advice, as to what you are to do<sup>17</sup> to acquire a greater fluency<sup>18</sup> in speaking German. I must confess<sup>19</sup>, that this question rather puzzles<sup>20</sup> me. However I will try to answer it to the best of my abilities<sup>21</sup>.

At first<sup>22</sup> I must remind you of the old proverb: Practice<sup>23</sup> makes perfect<sup>24</sup>. If it is any where to be applied<sup>25</sup>, it is certainly in this case. Speaking a foreign language is unquestionably<sup>26</sup> the most difficult part, which is only to be acquired by much practice. Therefore speak German, whenever<sup>27</sup> an opportunity offers<sup>28</sup>. Make it a (zur) rule, to speak only German to your elder brothers and sisters<sup>29</sup>, who have all learned the German language and you will perceive with pleasure, how your ear and mouth get accustomed<sup>30</sup> to the foreign sounds<sup>31</sup> and how conversation daily becomes easier by practice.

Another means to improve<sup>32</sup> in German conversation is the continual<sup>33</sup> reading of good German books. But I advise you to choose such books, as are written in an easy conversational style<sup>34</sup>. The language of the poet is never that of common intercourse<sup>35</sup>. The easier and plainer<sup>36</sup> a book is written, the more it usually is fit<sup>37</sup> to help<sup>38</sup> in the language of every day's occurrence<sup>39</sup>. But if the reading



of German books shall really be conducive<sup>40</sup> to conversation, it is necessary, that we (man) study the books, and study<sup>41</sup> the phrases and expressions<sup>42</sup>, which occur<sup>43</sup>, so minutely<sup>44</sup>, that we can apply them again every where. That so many reap<sup>45</sup> so little profit from reading, solely comes from<sup>46</sup> their reading too superficially (oberflächlich).

Hoping that these few hints<sup>47</sup> will be of use to you,

I remain

your affectionate<sup>48</sup> friend.

<sup>1</sup> bedauern. <sup>2</sup> annehmen. <sup>3</sup> die Einladung. <sup>4</sup> zum Essen. <sup>5</sup> leider.  
<sup>6</sup> das Unwohlsein. <sup>7</sup> beträchtlich. <sup>8</sup> sich verschlimmern. <sup>9</sup> sich fühlen.  
<sup>10</sup> heftig. <sup>11</sup> vorübergehen. <sup>12</sup> jedenfalls. <sup>13</sup> hergestellt. <sup>14</sup> sich versagen.  
<sup>15</sup> die Umstände. <sup>16</sup> das Ausbleiben. <sup>17</sup> wie es anfangen. <sup>18</sup> die Geläufigkeit.  
<sup>19</sup> gestehen. <sup>20</sup> in Verlegenheit setzen. <sup>21</sup> nach besten Kräften. <sup>22</sup> vor allem.  
<sup>23</sup> Übung. <sup>24</sup> Meister. <sup>25</sup> anwenden. <sup>26</sup> ohne alle Frage. <sup>27</sup> so oft.  
<sup>28</sup> sich darbieten (o, o). <sup>29</sup> Geschwister. <sup>30</sup> sich gewöhnen. <sup>31</sup> der Klang.  
<sup>32</sup> sich vervollkommen. <sup>33</sup> fortwährend. <sup>34</sup> der Konversationsstil.  
<sup>35</sup> der Umgang. <sup>36</sup> einfach. <sup>37</sup> geeignet. <sup>38</sup> einführen. <sup>39</sup> des täglichen Lebens.  
<sup>40</sup> förderlich. <sup>41</sup> sich einprägen. <sup>42</sup> der Ausdruck i. <sup>43</sup> vornehmend.  
<sup>44</sup> vollständig. <sup>45</sup> Nutzen ziehen aus. <sup>46</sup> daher daß. <sup>47</sup> der Wink. <sup>48</sup> Ihr Sie liebender Freund.

# 16.

*My dear Frances (Franziska).*

Your long silence<sup>1</sup> highly alarms<sup>2</sup> me. Previous to<sup>3</sup> your departure you promised me, to write frequently<sup>4</sup>, and desired me, to do the same. I have written already twice without receiving an answer. I know you too well to think, that you would neglect me, and I therefore am afraid, that either my letters have been miscarried<sup>5</sup>, or that you are ill. I therefore entreat you, to answer me by return of post<sup>6</sup>, letting me know any particulars. In my opinion<sup>7</sup> you had better<sup>8</sup> inquire at the post-office, if there are any letters for you; I am sure, you would have answered me, if they had come into your hands.

I send you this letter by a lady, who promised me to deliver<sup>9</sup> it personally<sup>10</sup> to you, and as she will stay<sup>11</sup> at your place<sup>12</sup> for some time and then return here, she will willingly bring<sup>13</sup> a letter from you. But do not make me

wait long time for an answer. Should you nevertheless<sup>14</sup> do so, I should really be angry with<sup>15</sup> you.

Good bye<sup>16</sup>

your faithful friend Emily.

<sup>1</sup> das Schweigen. <sup>2</sup> beunruhigen. <sup>3</sup> vor. <sup>4</sup> häufig. <sup>5</sup> verloren gehen. <sup>6</sup> umgebend. <sup>7</sup> die Meinung. <sup>8</sup> sollen. <sup>9</sup> übergeben. <sup>10</sup> persönlich. <sup>11</sup> sich aufhalten. <sup>12</sup> dort. <sup>13</sup> mitnehmen. <sup>14</sup> dennoch. <sup>15</sup> böse (Dir). <sup>16</sup> lebe wohl.

# 17. Answer.

*My dear Emily.*

An evil spirit lately<sup>1</sup> seems to be exerting his influence<sup>2</sup> over me. There is nothing, I wish more ardently<sup>3</sup>, than preserving<sup>4</sup> and cultivating<sup>5</sup> your friendship, and I am afraid, that I have lost it by an appearance<sup>6</sup> of neglect<sup>7</sup>. On receiving your letter, I directly inquired at the post-office and was informed (man), that two letters from Paris, directed to me<sup>8</sup>, had been last month delivered<sup>9</sup> at our house at the same time with commercial letters<sup>10</sup>. Of course I asked my father, to make inquiries<sup>11</sup> at the office<sup>12</sup>, and after some search<sup>13</sup> they were found (man) in a drawer among many loose<sup>14</sup> papers.

I assure you, that I was extremely happy finding them, having previously<sup>15</sup> begun to fear, you might have forgotten me. I am sure, you will now acquit<sup>16</sup> me of the fault<sup>17</sup> of having neglected you and believe me, when I assure you again of my sincere friendship. Please excuse the brevity<sup>18</sup> of this letter (daß), but I could no longer put [it] off<sup>19</sup> and will send you a very long epistle through amiable Mrs. B., who will leave in a week.

Good bye,

your sincere friend.

<sup>1</sup> seit einiger Zeit. <sup>2</sup> seinen Schmerz treiben mit. <sup>3</sup> heiß. <sup>4</sup> Erhaltung. <sup>5</sup> Pflege. <sup>6</sup> der Schein. <sup>7</sup> Vernachlässigung. <sup>8</sup> unter meiner Adresse. <sup>9</sup> abgeben. <sup>10</sup> Geschäftsbriefe. <sup>11</sup> nachsehen lassen. <sup>12</sup> das Comptoir. <sup>13</sup> suchen. <sup>14</sup> lose. <sup>15</sup> schon. <sup>16</sup> freisprechen von. <sup>17</sup> die Schuld. <sup>18</sup> kurz. <sup>19</sup> zögern.

18.

*My dear sister.*

It is to you that I will complain<sup>1</sup> [of] my misfortune! It is to you that I must take refuge<sup>2</sup> in my distress<sup>3a</sup>! You have always been so indulgent<sup>3</sup> to me, and my father, (as) you know, is very strict, when I do not keep things in order.

What may he then<sup>4</sup> have again on [his] mind<sup>5p</sup> you will ask, when reading these lines. You shall hear it directly.

Yesterday, on my return from school, I saw on the lime-trees<sup>6</sup> behind our garden, a squirrel<sup>7</sup> hopping to and fro<sup>8</sup>. A boy of my age, especially when he has a friend<sup>9</sup> with him, cannot quietly see such a thing. So I laid my cap<sup>10</sup> and Latin<sup>11</sup> grammar<sup>11</sup> down under a tree, called<sup>13</sup> the son of our landlord<sup>14</sup> and we now chased the nimble<sup>15</sup> creature<sup>16</sup> to our heart's content<sup>17</sup> from tree to tree.

When I came back, cap and grammar were gone<sup>18</sup>. The road behind our house, you know, is not an instant free from passers-by<sup>19</sup>, and so some<sup>20</sup> dishonest fellow has taken advantage<sup>21</sup> of my thoughtlessness<sup>22</sup> and imprudence<sup>23</sup>, my cap and book were stolen.

I have replaced<sup>24</sup> the former by a new one, and the money for it must be saved<sup>25</sup> from my breakfast, but how I shall get<sup>26</sup> a new grammar, I really do not know. You have always had such a kind and affectionate<sup>27</sup> heart, would you not lend me two Marks? You will make me heartily thankful<sup>28</sup>.

Your affectionate brother.

<sup>1</sup> meine Not klagen. <sup>2</sup> Zuflucht nehmen zu. <sup>3a</sup> die Verlegenheit. <sup>3</sup> nachsichtig. <sup>4</sup> denn. <sup>5</sup> das Herz. <sup>6</sup> die Linde. <sup>7</sup> das Eichhörnchen. <sup>8</sup> hin- und herhüpfen. <sup>9</sup> Kamerad &c. <sup>10</sup> die Mütze. <sup>11</sup> lateinisch. <sup>12</sup> die Grammatik. <sup>13</sup> herbeirufen (ie, u). <sup>14</sup> der Wirt. <sup>15</sup> flink. <sup>16</sup> Tierchen. <sup>17</sup> nach Herzenslust. <sup>18</sup> fort. <sup>19</sup> der Vorübergehende. <sup>20</sup> irgend ein. <sup>21</sup> benutzen. <sup>22</sup> der Leichtsin. <sup>23</sup> die Unvorsichtigkeit. <sup>24</sup> ersetzen. <sup>25</sup> ersparen an. <sup>26</sup> kommen zu. <sup>27</sup> teilnehmend. <sup>28</sup> zu Dank verpflichten.

19.

*Dear Sir.*

I am exceedingly<sup>1</sup> sorry<sup>2</sup> to be under the necessity<sup>3</sup> of giving you unpleasant and afflicting<sup>4</sup> news regarding<sup>5</sup>

your son William. He caught a cold about a fortnight ago, and notwithstanding<sup>6</sup> all care<sup>7</sup> and attention<sup>8</sup> his indisposition<sup>9</sup> brought on<sup>10</sup> a bad<sup>11</sup> fever, under which he is now suffering severely<sup>12</sup>. He has the best medical advice<sup>13</sup>, that can be procured<sup>14</sup>, but I am sorry to tell<sup>15</sup> you, that he has become daily worse<sup>16</sup> (es), and that the doctor declared<sup>17</sup> this morning, he was in some danger. Do not be angry<sup>18</sup>, that I did not inform<sup>19</sup> you before of it. I hoped, it would lightly pass over, and the boy would have recovered<sup>20</sup>, when you received the news of his having been ill. I am however disappointed<sup>21</sup> in my hopes (nom.) and am obliged to send you this afflicting news.

Allow me to assure you, that nothing has been neglected and that he has been attended, as if he was our own child. He desires<sup>22</sup> much to see you and said<sup>23</sup>, that he wanted to tell you something. If you can come, we will willingly accommodate<sup>24</sup> you in a room, which you may occupy<sup>25</sup> as long as you like. — The physician has just paid his visit again and says, that he observes a change<sup>26</sup> for the better since this morning. I should not send [you]<sup>27</sup> this letter at all, but my responsibility<sup>28</sup> prompts<sup>29</sup> me not to put it off<sup>30</sup> any longer. I earnestly<sup>31</sup> hope however, that you will find good William much better on your arrival.

I have the honour to be

yours faithfully.

<sup>1</sup> ungemein. <sup>2</sup> Leid thun. <sup>3</sup> sich in die Notwendigkeit versetzt sehen.  
<sup>4</sup> betrübend. <sup>5</sup> in Betreff. <sup>6</sup> ungeachtet. <sup>7</sup> die Sorgfalt. <sup>8</sup> die Pflege.  
<sup>9</sup> das Unwohlsein. <sup>10</sup> ausarten in. <sup>11</sup> heftig. <sup>12</sup> sehr. <sup>13</sup> die ärztliche  
 Behandlung. <sup>14</sup> finden. <sup>15</sup> mittheilen. <sup>16</sup> schlimm. <sup>17</sup> erklären. <sup>18</sup> böse.  
<sup>19</sup> benachrichtigen. <sup>20</sup> sich erholen. <sup>21</sup> täuschen. <sup>22</sup> verlangen. <sup>23</sup> äußern.  
<sup>24</sup> einräumen. <sup>25</sup> benutzen. <sup>26</sup> die Wendung zu. <sup>27</sup> absenden. <sup>28</sup> die  
 Verantwortlichkeit. <sup>29</sup> treiben. <sup>30</sup> aufschieben. <sup>31</sup> von Herzen.

20.

*Dear Madam*<sup>1</sup>.

When you look at the signature<sup>2</sup> of this letter, I do not doubt, that you will be surprized<sup>3</sup> at its contents<sup>4</sup>; but considering<sup>5</sup> more your amiable character, than my being a relation of yours, I dare trouble<sup>6</sup> you.

My late<sup>7</sup> husband, who, as you will know, was reputed<sup>8</sup> to be in affluent circumstances<sup>9</sup>, died about six months ago. All his accounts<sup>10</sup> with his creditors<sup>11</sup> have been settled<sup>12</sup>, and in consequence<sup>13</sup> of many bad debts not above 100 £ have been left to me. I have a son, who is just fourteen years old and whom I want to bind apprentice<sup>14</sup> in some respectable<sup>15</sup> house; and a daughter of nearly seventeen years, whose education<sup>16</sup> would make her fit<sup>17</sup> to be companion to some young lady in a house, where she could expect to be treated<sup>18</sup> with kindness. In such afflicting circumstances I have presumed<sup>19</sup> to apply<sup>20</sup> to you; your long connections<sup>21</sup> with the world will, I am sure, enable<sup>22</sup> you to direct<sup>23</sup> me how to proceed<sup>24</sup>, and I do not doubt, that your generosity<sup>25</sup> will comply<sup>26</sup> with my request, dictated<sup>27</sup> by the harshness of fate<sup>28</sup>.

I am, dear Madam,

yours faithfully.

1 Berehrte Frau. 2 die Unterschrift. 3 überrascht sein von. 4 der Inhalt. 5 in Erwägung. 6 belästigen. 7 verstorben. 8 gehalten werden für. 9 wohlhabend. 10 Beziehungen zu. 11 Gläubiger. 12 ordnen. 13 Folge. 14 in die Lehre geben. 15 achubar. 16 die Erziehung. 17 geeignet zu. 18 behandeln. 19 so frei sein. 20 wenden an. 21 die Bekanntschaft. 22 in den Stand setzen. 23 raten. 24 es anfangen. 25 die Menschenfreundlichkeit. 26 gewähren. 27 veranlassen. 28 das Schicksal.

## 21. Answer.

*Dear Madam.*

The modest<sup>1</sup> account<sup>2</sup> of your affliction<sup>3</sup> has greatly touched<sup>4</sup> me, and I am happy<sup>5</sup>, that it is in my power, to assist you. You see, dear Madam, that all human hopes are vain<sup>6</sup> and attended<sup>7</sup> with disappointment; just when we think our circumstances<sup>8</sup> quite independent<sup>9</sup>, some latent<sup>10</sup> misfortune awaits us under some specious<sup>11</sup> appearance<sup>12</sup>, and this should teach us, constantly to look up<sup>13</sup> to Providence<sup>14</sup>, which superintends<sup>15</sup> all affairs of this world, and arranges<sup>16</sup> every thing to the advantage of its creatures. With regard<sup>17</sup> of your two children, I have the following scheme<sup>18</sup> to propose<sup>19</sup>.

Let the boy think of some business, for which he has a liking<sup>20</sup>, and I shall provide him with all necessities<sup>21</sup>

during his apprenticeship<sup>22</sup>; and after the expiration<sup>23</sup> of that time I will support<sup>24</sup> him, so that he can establish<sup>25</sup> himself in some business. As for<sup>26</sup> the girl, let her come directly to my house, where she will be brought up<sup>27</sup> with my daughters, and every thing will be done<sup>28</sup> to serve<sup>29</sup> her.

I expect (daß) you to let me hear<sup>30</sup> from time to time of your circumstances<sup>31</sup>, that I may have the happiness<sup>32</sup> of alleviating<sup>33</sup> any calamity<sup>34</sup> of yours.

I am

yours truly<sup>35</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> bescheiden. <sup>2</sup> die Darstellung. <sup>3</sup> drückende Lage. <sup>4</sup> tief geführt. <sup>5</sup> sich freuen. <sup>6</sup> eitel. <sup>7</sup> begleitet von. <sup>8</sup> die Verhältnisse. <sup>9</sup> unabhängig. <sup>10</sup> verborgen. <sup>11</sup> schimmernd. <sup>12</sup> die Hülle. <sup>13</sup> aufblicken zu. <sup>14</sup> die Vor-  
setzung. <sup>15</sup> leiten. <sup>16</sup> anordnen. <sup>17</sup> in Rücksicht. <sup>18</sup> der Plan. <sup>19</sup> vor-  
schlagen (inf.). <sup>20</sup> die Neigung. <sup>21</sup> das Notwendige. <sup>22</sup> die Lehrzeit.  
<sup>23</sup> der Ablauf. <sup>24</sup> unterstützen. <sup>25</sup> anfangen. <sup>26</sup> was betrifft. <sup>27</sup> erziehen  
(o, o). <sup>28</sup> geschehen. <sup>29</sup> zu ihrem Besten. <sup>30</sup> Nachricht geben. <sup>31</sup> die Lage.  
<sup>32</sup> vergönnt sein. <sup>33</sup> entgegenreten. <sup>34</sup> die Verlegenheit. <sup>35</sup> aufrichtig.

22.

*Dear Edward.*

Mamma<sup>1</sup> was very glad, that you got safe<sup>2</sup> to London, and were so well pleased<sup>3</sup> with your journey; for we imagined you to be<sup>4</sup> very dull<sup>5</sup> and miserable<sup>6</sup>, having just left home<sup>7</sup> and being quite among strangers. She will write to you herself very soon, but has not time to day. I think, we might expect (daß) you to send us at least two letters for<sup>8</sup> one, you receive from us, while you are in town; for you must have ten times as many things to write about, as we have here.

The great<sup>9</sup> talk with us is<sup>10</sup> about the terrible storm last Monday, and the mischief<sup>11</sup> it has done<sup>12</sup>. Several of our young trees in the garden have been [sadly] broken<sup>13</sup>, and two of the poplars<sup>14</sup> and the old ash torn up by the roots<sup>15</sup>. Even the large elms<sup>16</sup> in the avenue<sup>17</sup> have suffered, and what grieves<sup>18</sup> us, is that the rooks'<sup>19</sup> nests have been torn to pieces<sup>19a</sup> and a great many of the young [ones] shaken<sup>20</sup> out. It was a piteous<sup>21</sup> sight to see them lie strown<sup>22</sup> upon the ground amongst the ruins<sup>23</sup> of their nests, some killed, some with broken legs or wings, and the old

birds fluttering<sup>24</sup> about and cawing<sup>25</sup> in the greatest<sup>26</sup> distress<sup>21</sup>. We believed<sup>27</sup> the poor little things<sup>28</sup> beyond recovery<sup>29</sup> and considered<sup>29a</sup> it best to put them out<sup>30</sup> of their misery<sup>31</sup> as soon as possible. But what is much worse than this, the rain swelled<sup>32</sup> our river (nom.) to such a height as never [was known] before, and the old bridge was swept away<sup>33</sup> in the night, and the whole [of] Brook meadow<sup>34</sup> laid<sup>35</sup> under water. We went down to the water [side] in the morning, and I shall never forget the scene. Imagine<sup>36</sup> a roaring<sup>37</sup> flood, nearly a mile wide, strown<sup>38</sup> with hay, corn, pieces of timber<sup>39</sup>, and wrecks<sup>23</sup> of every kind, and here and there the tops<sup>40</sup> of trees, and the roofs of barns<sup>41</sup> and cottages rising up<sup>42</sup> above it! The fisherman's cottage was carried quite away<sup>43</sup>, the flood rushed<sup>44</sup> in so fast, that the family had no time to make their escape<sup>45</sup>, and the poor man and his wife were both drowned<sup>46</sup>. They had one little infant, who was supposed (*von welchem man glaubte, daß*) to have met with<sup>47</sup> the same sad fate<sup>48</sup>; but as farmer Thompson, who had come down<sup>49</sup> with some neighbours to give<sup>50</sup> all the help he could<sup>51</sup>, was standing by the water [side], he spied<sup>52</sup> something floating<sup>53</sup> down the stream<sup>54</sup> and presently recognized (*daß*) it to be a cradle<sup>55</sup>. While every body stood quite shocked<sup>56</sup> and not knowing what to do, he pulled off his coat and jumped into the water, and with great danger and difficulty succeeded at last in bringing it to shore<sup>57</sup>. There lay the baby alive and well, but crying dismally<sup>58</sup> as well<sup>59</sup> it might. The poor little thing<sup>60</sup> will be taken good care<sup>61</sup> of, after this wonderful escape<sup>62</sup> for there has been a large subscription<sup>63</sup> made for it, and Mamma and Emily have been [very busy] making it clothes.

Your young hound has turned out to be a very mischievous<sup>64</sup> [creature]; he has killed<sup>65</sup> three of our pretty speckled<sup>66</sup> chickens, but I hope, we have cured him of that<sup>67</sup> [trick]; for the last he killed, we tied round his neck, and made him wear it for some days. He did not seem at all pleased with the ornament, and has never (*nie mehr*) ventured to run after a chicken ever since (*seitdem*). I remember<sup>68</sup> nothing else to tell you at present, and am

sure you will not want long letters to amuse you. So good-bye<sup>69</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> die Mutter. <sup>2</sup> glücklich. <sup>3</sup> gut gehen auf. <sup>4</sup> sich fühlen. <sup>5</sup> langweilig. <sup>6</sup> unglücklich. <sup>7</sup> das elterliche Haus. <sup>8</sup> gegen. <sup>9</sup> das Tagesgespräch. <sup>10</sup> sich drehen. <sup>11</sup> das Unheil. <sup>12</sup> anrichten. <sup>13</sup> kniden. <sup>14</sup> die Pappel. <sup>15</sup> entwurzeln. <sup>16</sup> die Ullme. <sup>17</sup> die Alee. <sup>18</sup> leid thun. <sup>19</sup> die Krähe. <sup>19a</sup> zerstreuen. <sup>20</sup> fallen. <sup>21</sup> kläglich. <sup>22</sup> herumliegen. <sup>23</sup> die Trümmer. <sup>24</sup> flattern. <sup>25</sup> krächzend. <sup>26</sup> ganz. <sup>27</sup> halten für. <sup>28</sup> Tierchen. <sup>29</sup> verloren. <sup>29a</sup> denken. <sup>30</sup> erlösen von. <sup>31</sup> das Elend. <sup>32</sup> anschwellen (o, o) s. <sup>33</sup> wegreißen (i, i). <sup>34</sup> die Bachwiese. <sup>35</sup> stehen. <sup>36</sup> sich denken (dat.). <sup>37</sup> die brausende Flut. <sup>38</sup> bedecken. <sup>39</sup> Bauholz. <sup>40</sup> die Krone. <sup>41</sup> die Scheune. <sup>42</sup> empor ragen. <sup>43</sup> wegschwimmen. <sup>44</sup> rauschen. <sup>45</sup> sich retten. <sup>46</sup> ertrinken (a, u). <sup>47</sup> treffen (a, o). <sup>48</sup> das Ross. <sup>49</sup> herbei. <sup>50</sup> leisten. <sup>51</sup> möglich. <sup>52</sup> erblicken. <sup>53</sup> treiben. <sup>54</sup> der Strom. <sup>55</sup> die Wiege. <sup>56</sup> angstvoll, entsetzt. <sup>57</sup> das Land. <sup>58</sup> kläglich. <sup>59</sup> natürlich. <sup>60</sup> Geschöpf. <sup>61</sup> unterbringen (a, a) s. <sup>62</sup> Rettung. <sup>63</sup> reichlich zeichnen. <sup>64</sup> nichtsnutzig betragen. <sup>65</sup> tot heißen. <sup>66</sup> gespreizt. <sup>67</sup> abgewöhnen. <sup>68</sup> wissen. <sup>69</sup> lebe wohl.

## 23.

*My dear boy (Junge).*

Our regiment is at Portsmouth at present, and we have received orders to embark for<sup>1</sup> Menorca. I had hoped to be able to visit you, but our sailing<sup>2</sup> orders came so suddenly<sup>3</sup>, that the duties of my station<sup>4</sup> left me no time. I therefore ask you herewith, to attend<sup>5</sup> to your studies with the greatest application. Youth is so thoroughly<sup>6</sup> the time fit<sup>6a</sup> for acquiring<sup>7</sup> knowledge; and when you improve<sup>8</sup>, and bring it into practice<sup>9</sup>, you will have the greatest blessing of it in your after-life<sup>10</sup>. You do not yet know the world and may estimate<sup>11</sup> yourself happy, when you remain ignorant<sup>12</sup> of the troubles and dangers of a soldier's life. I therefore request you earnestly to think of the choice of an employment<sup>13</sup>, which will procure a respectable<sup>14</sup> subsistence<sup>15</sup> so as to (welsche) enable<sup>16</sup> you to live as independent<sup>17</sup> as possible. I have given orders<sup>18</sup> to my banker<sup>19</sup> to provide<sup>20</sup> for the expense of your education<sup>21</sup>, and though my pay<sup>22</sup> is not considerable, I will not let you want (an) anything so that you (um) may be at your ease<sup>23</sup>. Staying for a few days more here, I expect your answer.

Fare well<sup>24</sup>,

your affectionate father.



<sup>1</sup> sich einschiffen nach. <sup>2</sup> aufbrechen (s.). <sup>3</sup> plötzlich. <sup>4</sup> Dienst. <sup>5</sup> betreiben. <sup>6</sup> ganz. <sup>6a</sup> geeignet. <sup>7</sup> erwerben. <sup>8</sup> gut ausbilden. <sup>9</sup> Anwendung. <sup>10</sup> das spätere Leben. <sup>11</sup> schätzen. <sup>12</sup> unbekannt mit. <sup>13</sup> der Beruf. <sup>14</sup> unabhängig. <sup>15</sup> die Existenz. <sup>16</sup> instand setzen. <sup>17</sup> unabhängig. <sup>18</sup> der Auftrag. <sup>19</sup> Banquier. <sup>20</sup> bestreiten. <sup>21</sup> die Ausbildung. <sup>22</sup> das Gehalt. <sup>23</sup> angenehmer leben. <sup>24</sup> lebe wohl.

24.

*Dear Sir.*

I am sorry to inform you, that our mutual<sup>1</sup> friend, Mr. Bell, met<sup>2</sup> with a dreadful accident<sup>3</sup> yesterday afternoon on his way to his country-house.

As he was driving along<sup>4</sup> the highroad<sup>5</sup>, his horse took fright<sup>6</sup> from the report of a gun<sup>7</sup> and ran away<sup>8</sup> with him. He kept<sup>9</sup> his seat in the chaise for some time and used all his strength to stop<sup>10</sup> the animal, or to keep it on the road at least; but at the moment, when Mr. Bell seemed to be obtaining the mastery<sup>11</sup> over the bewildered<sup>12</sup> animal, unfortunately the reins<sup>13</sup> broke and in consequence he lost all command<sup>13a</sup>. He then tried to save himself by jumping from the chaise, and in doing so, he unfortunately broke his right leg in a dreadful way. There he lay (nun), poor man, in a deplorable<sup>14</sup> state without any one to assist<sup>15</sup> him (her). At last some workmen, who were returning home from their work, found him in the pitiful<sup>16</sup> condition<sup>17</sup>; with some difficulty, they procured<sup>18</sup> a chair to carry him home, where he was forced to undergo<sup>19</sup> an operation to have his leg set<sup>20</sup>.

He passed<sup>21</sup> a restless night, as you may think, but appears to be a little better this morning. He asked several times after you and expressed<sup>22</sup> a wish to see you. Please come here as soon as possible; I know, that some consoling words from you will ease<sup>23</sup> him and alleviate<sup>24</sup> his pain.

Yours faithfully.

<sup>1</sup> gegenseitig. <sup>2</sup> zu stoßen (ie, o) s. <sup>3</sup> das Unglück. <sup>4</sup> entlang. <sup>5</sup> die Landstraße. <sup>6</sup> scheuen. <sup>7</sup> der Flintenschuß. <sup>8</sup> durchgehen. <sup>9</sup> sich halten auf. <sup>10</sup> zum Stehen bringen. <sup>11</sup> die Herrschaft erlangen. <sup>12</sup> wild. <sup>13</sup> der Zügel. <sup>13a</sup> alle Gewalt über das Tier. <sup>14</sup> beklagenswert. <sup>15</sup> beistehen (a, a). <sup>16</sup> bedauernswert. <sup>17</sup> die Lage. <sup>18</sup> herbeischaffen. <sup>19</sup> unterziehen. <sup>20</sup> einrichten. <sup>21</sup> verbringen. <sup>22</sup> ausdrücken. <sup>23</sup> beruhigen. <sup>24</sup> lindern.

25.

*Dear Richard.*

In consequence of some considerable losses, which my father lately suffered<sup>1</sup>, I am resolved<sup>2</sup> to find<sup>3</sup> a place to provide for myself. Knowing you to be a thorough<sup>4</sup> man of business, I thought<sup>5</sup> it possible, that you might hear of a place that would suit<sup>6</sup> me. Allow me to inform<sup>7</sup> you of my ideas on this subject<sup>8</sup>; if you find, that they are reasonable<sup>9</sup>, you will I hope assist<sup>10</sup> me, to bring them into execution<sup>11</sup>; if you think<sup>5</sup>, (daß) they are not practicable<sup>12</sup>, I beg you will advise me according<sup>13</sup> to your better experience.

You know, that I have always kept<sup>14</sup> my father's books, and in this way<sup>15</sup> I have obtained<sup>16</sup> a perfect knowledge of book-keeping<sup>17</sup>, single entry<sup>18</sup> as well as double entry. I have also learned French and English for some years and can converse<sup>19</sup> with fluency<sup>20</sup> in the two languages. My wish is now to find a place in some English commercial house, where I can make use<sup>21</sup> of my knowledge and at the same time accomplish<sup>22</sup> myself in business<sup>23</sup> in general, and in English business in particular<sup>24</sup>. I scarcely need say, that I should prefer a house, which has German correspondence, being able to take this branch<sup>25</sup> entirely upon<sup>26</sup> myself.

I have not yet informed<sup>7</sup> my father of my intention<sup>27</sup>, knowing him (daß) to be so attached<sup>28</sup> to his children, that the mere<sup>29</sup> thought of my going to England would frighten<sup>30</sup> him. But when he sees, that I have found a place and that the way is paved<sup>31</sup>, he will no doubt submit<sup>32</sup> to my wishes.

Having candidly<sup>33</sup> informed<sup>7</sup> you of what I want, I once more request you to tell me your opinion on this subject<sup>8</sup> and to do in my interest<sup>34</sup>, what is in your power. When you write to me, please direct<sup>35</sup> your letter poste restante<sup>36</sup>, as I will not tell my father of my plan, before I heard of you.

Yours truly.

<sup>1</sup> erleiden (i, i). <sup>2</sup> sich entschließen (o, o). <sup>3</sup> suchen. <sup>4</sup> ganz. <sup>5</sup> halten für. <sup>6</sup> passen für. <sup>7</sup> mittheilen. <sup>8</sup> der Gegenstand. <sup>9</sup> vernünftig. <sup>10</sup> be-

hülflich sein. <sup>11</sup> zur Ausführung. <sup>12</sup> ausführbar. <sup>13</sup> gemäß. <sup>14</sup> führen.  
<sup>15</sup> die Weise. <sup>16</sup> sich erwerben (a, o). <sup>17</sup> die Buchhaltung. <sup>18</sup> einfache.  
<sup>19</sup> sich unterhalten. <sup>20</sup> geläufig. <sup>21</sup> verwerten. <sup>22</sup> vervollkommen. <sup>23</sup> die  
 Geschäftsführung. <sup>24</sup> insbesondere. <sup>25</sup> der Zweig. <sup>26</sup> übernehmen. <sup>27</sup> die  
 Absicht. <sup>28</sup> hängen an. <sup>29</sup> bloß. <sup>30</sup> erschrecken. <sup>31</sup> ebenen. <sup>32</sup> sich fügen.  
<sup>33</sup> offen. <sup>34</sup> das Interesse. <sup>35</sup> adressieren. <sup>36</sup> postlagernd.

26.

*Dear Sir.*

I was extremely glad to hear of your return, and still more of your having made a considerable fortune. You knew me, when my circumstances were not only good, but even affluent<sup>1</sup>, and you will no doubt remember, that I never let an opportunity pass to assist my friends. But alas, my position<sup>2</sup> is quite different<sup>3</sup> now. In consequence of the loss of a ship from Jamaica I found myself under the necessity<sup>4</sup> of stopping payment<sup>5</sup> and give up<sup>6</sup> my whole property<sup>7</sup> to my creditors<sup>8</sup>, who generously<sup>9</sup> left me a small annual income<sup>10</sup>. When that event<sup>11</sup> so fatal for me had come to pass<sup>12</sup>, I retired<sup>13</sup> into the country with my wife and children and devoted<sup>14</sup> my whole time to the education<sup>15</sup> of the latter.

The bearer<sup>16</sup> of this letter, my eldest son, is just twenty years old and very desirous to go to the East-Indies, but my circumstances are not such<sup>17</sup> as to enable<sup>18</sup> me to assist<sup>19</sup> him in any way<sup>20</sup>, and I do not know at all, how to proceed<sup>21</sup> in this important affair. The former friendship, which existed<sup>22</sup> between us, before you left England, gives me some encouragement<sup>23</sup> to hope, that your benevolent<sup>24</sup> sentiments<sup>25</sup> have remained the same, and I therefore entreat you, kindly<sup>26</sup> to assist<sup>27</sup> my son in finding (baß) a place.

I have given him a good education, his morals<sup>28</sup>, to my knowledge, are pure and I do not doubt will always give satisfaction<sup>29</sup>. Be therefore as kind as to take him under your guidance<sup>30</sup>, or to instruct<sup>31</sup> him, what he has to do to obtain<sup>32</sup> his purpose<sup>33</sup>. You will by your kindness confer<sup>34</sup> a lasting<sup>35</sup> obligation<sup>36</sup> on an affectionate<sup>37</sup> father.

I am

yours truly.

<sup>1</sup> glänzend. <sup>2</sup> die Sage. <sup>3</sup> anders. <sup>4</sup> sich genötigt sehen. <sup>5</sup> Zahlungen einfließen. <sup>6</sup> überlassen. <sup>7</sup> das Vermögen. <sup>8</sup> Gläubiger. <sup>9</sup> edelmütiger Weise. <sup>10</sup> das Einkommen. <sup>11</sup> das Ereignis. <sup>12</sup> eintreten (a, e). <sup>13</sup> sich zurückziehen. <sup>14</sup> widmen. <sup>15</sup> die Erziehung. <sup>16</sup> Überbringer. <sup>17</sup> der Art. <sup>18</sup> in'stand setzen. <sup>19</sup> unterstützen. <sup>20</sup> die Weise. <sup>21</sup> sich helfen. <sup>22</sup> befehlen. <sup>23</sup> ermutigen. <sup>24</sup> wohlwollend. <sup>25</sup> die Gesinnung. <sup>26</sup> gütigst. <sup>27</sup> beistehen. <sup>28</sup> sittliche Grundsätze. <sup>29</sup> befriedigen. <sup>30</sup> die Leitung. <sup>31</sup> anweisen. <sup>32</sup> reichen. <sup>33</sup> der Zweck. <sup>34</sup> verpflichten. <sup>35</sup> dauernd. <sup>36</sup> der Dank. <sup>37</sup> liebevoll.

## 27. Answer.

*My dear friend.*

On reading your favour<sup>1</sup> I scarcely knew, whether I should be more distressed<sup>2</sup> at the news of your unfortunate circumstances or feel ashamed of having been in London for three months and never having inquired<sup>3</sup> after a man, who not only always treated me with great humanity<sup>4</sup>, but even kindly assisted me on my first voyage to the Indies. Your house has been a refuge<sup>5</sup> to me, when I was quite destitute<sup>6</sup>, and I should thoroughly<sup>7</sup> detest<sup>8</sup> myself, if I lost<sup>9</sup> a moment in fulfilling your request regarding<sup>10</sup> the amiable young man, who delivered me your letter. I have just been to day with him to the directors of the Company, and they have engaged<sup>11</sup> him for Bengal<sup>12</sup>. If the climate<sup>13</sup> agrees with his health<sup>14</sup>, there is no doubt, that he will in a short time gain a considerable fortune<sup>15</sup>. I have at the same time given him a check<sup>16</sup> of 150 £, and this sum, as you know, is more than what I had, when I first embarked<sup>17</sup>. I should in my eyes, however, act inefficiently<sup>18</sup>, if, whilst caring for the son, I should entirely forget his aged parents. The ships for India do not sail before March, so your son therefore will be able to stay with you another three months, before setting out<sup>19</sup>. He will leave<sup>20</sup> to morrow by the stage-coach<sup>21</sup> and I have taken the liberty, to deliver<sup>22</sup> a trifle<sup>23</sup> for your own use. I intend spending next month a few days with you, and be convinced<sup>24</sup>, that I shall do all in my power, to ease<sup>25</sup> your life as much as I can. I have not forgotten the principles<sup>26</sup> of a virtuous education, and look with indifference<sup>27</sup> at the unequal<sup>28</sup> distribution<sup>29</sup> of earthly<sup>30</sup> goods.

Fare well and preserve<sup>31</sup> me your friendship.

I am<sup>32</sup>

yours very truly<sup>33</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> geehrte Aufschrift. <sup>2</sup> bedauern. <sup>3</sup> sich erkundigen. <sup>4</sup> Freundlichkeit.  
<sup>5</sup> der Fußsichsort. <sup>6</sup> hilflos. <sup>7</sup> höchlich. <sup>8</sup> verabscheuen. <sup>9</sup> abgern.  
<sup>10</sup> in Betreff. <sup>11</sup> engagieren. <sup>12</sup> Bengalen. <sup>13</sup> das Klima. <sup>14</sup> vertragen,  
 bekommen. <sup>15</sup> ein Vermögen machen. <sup>16</sup> der Wechsel. <sup>17</sup> dorthin ein-  
 schiffen. <sup>18</sup> unbillig. <sup>19</sup> die Abreise. <sup>20</sup> abgehen. <sup>21</sup> Eilwagen. <sup>22</sup> über-  
 geben. <sup>23</sup> Kleinigkeit. <sup>24</sup> überzeugt. <sup>25</sup> angenehm machen. <sup>26</sup> der Grund-  
 satz 1. <sup>27</sup> die Gleichgültigkeit. <sup>28</sup> ungleich. <sup>29</sup> die Verteilung. <sup>30</sup> irdisch.  
<sup>31</sup> bewahren. <sup>32</sup> verbleiben. <sup>33</sup> mit herzlichem Gruß Ihr.

28.

*Dear Sir.*

A young friend of mine, Mr. N., is about<sup>1</sup> to go to Dresden for a year or so to accomplish<sup>2</sup> himself in drawing and painting, for (zu) which he has great talent. Being a young man of education<sup>3</sup>, pleasant manners<sup>4</sup> and moral principles<sup>5</sup>, I think, he will prove himself<sup>6</sup> an acceptable<sup>7</sup> acquisition<sup>8</sup> to the circle<sup>9</sup> of your acquaintances. He is entirely a stranger<sup>10</sup> at Dresden, and especially<sup>11</sup> in the beginning might sometimes want a friend's advice or assistance<sup>12</sup>. Should such be the case, I hope, you will interest<sup>13</sup> yourself in his behalf<sup>14</sup> and promote<sup>15</sup> his views<sup>16</sup> as far as it is in your power. You will greatly oblige<sup>17</sup> me, if you can open<sup>18</sup> him an opportunity of exercising his art in a lucrative way<sup>19</sup>; for although his connections and family are highly respectable<sup>20</sup>, some misfortune<sup>21</sup> the latter has met with<sup>22</sup>, compel him to rely<sup>23</sup> upon his brush<sup>24</sup> as a means<sup>25</sup> of subsistence<sup>26</sup>. I have given him a letter to you, which he will deliver<sup>27</sup> on his arrival. I do not doubt, that any favour<sup>28</sup> done<sup>29</sup> to him will be amply repaid<sup>30</sup> not only by his merits<sup>31</sup> in his profession<sup>32</sup>, but also by the pleasure, that his company will afford<sup>33</sup>. I remain etc.

<sup>1</sup> im Begriff sein. <sup>2</sup> vervollkommen. <sup>3</sup> gebildet. <sup>4</sup> gefälliges Benehmen. <sup>5</sup> solide. <sup>6</sup> sich erweisen. <sup>7</sup> angenehm. <sup>8</sup> die Zugabe. <sup>9</sup> der Kreis. <sup>10</sup> fremd. <sup>11</sup> besonders. <sup>12</sup> der Beistand. <sup>13</sup> sich interessieren. <sup>14</sup> für. <sup>15</sup> fördern. <sup>16</sup> die Absicht. <sup>17</sup> verbinden. <sup>18</sup> bieten. <sup>19</sup> verwerten. <sup>20</sup> achtungswert. <sup>21</sup> Unglücksfälle. <sup>22</sup> betreffen (a, o). <sup>23</sup> sich verlassen. <sup>24</sup> der Pinsel. <sup>25</sup> Mittel zu. <sup>26</sup> die Existenz. <sup>27</sup> überreichen. <sup>28</sup> die Gefälligkeit. <sup>29</sup> erzeigen. <sup>30</sup> vergelten. <sup>31</sup> Leistung. <sup>32</sup> das Fach. <sup>33</sup> gewähren.

29.

*Dear Cousin.*

I am just going to set out for B., and have not the time to say as much as I should like<sup>1</sup> about the object of my letter.

I hear, that Mr. D. and you have lately<sup>2</sup> formed<sup>3</sup> such an intimacy<sup>4</sup>, that you are scarcely ever<sup>5</sup> apart<sup>6</sup>, and knowing, that his morals<sup>7</sup> are not [of] the best and his circumstances doubtful, I am afraid, he will make you experience<sup>8</sup>, that he knows better, what he does in<sup>9</sup> cultivating<sup>10</sup> your acquaintance<sup>11</sup>, than you do in keeping up<sup>12</sup> his.

I am far<sup>13</sup> from wishing to restrict<sup>14</sup> any necessary or harmless<sup>15</sup> liberty or to advise you in the choice of a friend, nor<sup>16</sup> have I any objection<sup>17</sup> to your being obliging<sup>18</sup> to<sup>19</sup> strangers. But I think it my duty, to caution<sup>20</sup> you. You know, that your acquaintance with this gentleman is scarcely a month old, and yet you are as intimate<sup>21</sup> with him, as if you had known him for<sup>22</sup> years. It is not wise of you, to treat<sup>23</sup> a man, whose intercourse<sup>24</sup> is pleasant to you, directly as a friend. Of all friendships those, that are hastily<sup>25</sup> formed<sup>3</sup>, promise the least duration<sup>26</sup> and satisfaction<sup>27</sup>, as they generally arise<sup>28</sup> on one side from an ignoble<sup>29</sup> intention<sup>30</sup>, on the other from weakness<sup>31</sup>. True friendship must be the result<sup>32</sup> of a long and mutual<sup>33</sup> acquaintance and respect. To cement<sup>34</sup> it, there should be an equality of the age, a similarity<sup>35</sup> of the circumstances and of station<sup>36</sup>. But an over-great frankness<sup>37</sup> to a stranger generally carries<sup>38</sup> with it strong marks of thoughtlessness<sup>39</sup> and finishes with repentance<sup>40</sup>.

For<sup>41</sup> these reasons I recommend you to be on your guard<sup>42</sup>, and to go on<sup>43</sup> cautiously<sup>44</sup> with your new connection<sup>45</sup>. Mr. D. has enough vivacity<sup>46</sup> and humour<sup>47</sup> to please any one that is light-minded<sup>48</sup>; but if I were to pass<sup>49</sup> my opinion<sup>50</sup> about him, I should say, he is more fit<sup>51</sup> for the tea-table than for business. He is lively, but very superficial<sup>52</sup>, and treats<sup>53</sup> all serious objects with a contempt<sup>54</sup> only too natural to a bad mind<sup>55</sup>. I know more than one young man, of whose good nature<sup>56</sup> he has taken advantage<sup>57</sup>, and whom he made wiser, though at his own expense, than he found him.

The caution, which I give you here, is the purest result of my experience in life, of some knowledge of your new companion<sup>58</sup>, and of my affection to you. The use, which you will make of it, will show, if you deserve this regard<sup>59</sup>  
of your affectionate cousin N.

<sup>1</sup> gern mögen. <sup>2</sup> in der letzten Zeit. <sup>3</sup> schließen (o, o). <sup>4</sup> Vertrautheit. <sup>5</sup> fast nie. <sup>6</sup> von einander getrennt. <sup>7</sup> die Solidität. <sup>8</sup> erfahren. <sup>9</sup> indem. <sup>10</sup> pflegen. <sup>11</sup> die Bekanntschaft. <sup>12</sup> unterhalten. <sup>13</sup> weit davon entfernt. <sup>14</sup> beschränken. <sup>15</sup> harmlose. <sup>16</sup> auch nicht. <sup>17</sup> dagegen. <sup>18</sup> freundlich. <sup>19</sup> gegen. <sup>20</sup> warnen. <sup>21</sup> vertraut. <sup>22</sup> seit. <sup>23</sup> behandeln. <sup>24</sup> Unterhaltung. <sup>25</sup> voreilig. <sup>26</sup> die Dauer. <sup>27</sup> Befriedigung. <sup>28</sup> entstehen aus. <sup>29</sup> unedel. <sup>30</sup> die Absicht. <sup>31</sup> die Schwäche. <sup>32</sup> das Ergebnis. <sup>33</sup> gegenseitig. <sup>34</sup> befestigen. <sup>35</sup> Ähnlichkeit. <sup>36</sup> der Stand. <sup>37</sup> Offenheit. <sup>38</sup> an sich tragen. <sup>39</sup> Unbesonnenheit. <sup>40</sup> die Neue. <sup>41</sup> aus. <sup>42</sup> die Gut. <sup>43</sup> fortschreiten (s.). <sup>44</sup> vorsichtig. <sup>45</sup> Verbindung. <sup>46</sup> Lebhaftigkeit. <sup>47</sup> der Witz. <sup>48</sup> leichten Sinnes sein. <sup>49</sup> abgeben. <sup>50</sup> das Urteil. <sup>51</sup> passend. <sup>52</sup> oberflächlich. <sup>53</sup> behandeln. <sup>54</sup> Verachtung. <sup>55</sup> das Gemüt. <sup>56</sup> die Gutmütigkeit. <sup>57</sup> sich zu nutz machen. <sup>58</sup> Gesellschafter. <sup>59</sup> die Rücksicht.

30.

*My dear son.*

I am glad to hear, that you safely and cheerfully<sup>1</sup> returned from your journey. I know, that you find pleasure in studying<sup>2</sup>, and take for granted<sup>3</sup>, that you have resumed<sup>4</sup> your studies, for time is precious and life so short, that we must not leave a single minute unavailed of<sup>5</sup>. A man of sense knows how to employ his time the most advantageously<sup>6</sup>, he is never idle<sup>7</sup>, but always<sup>8</sup> busy either in amusement<sup>9</sup> or in study. People say: Idleness<sup>10</sup> is the mother of all vices; at least idleness I am sure is the inheritance<sup>11</sup> of fools, and nothing is so despicable<sup>12</sup>, as an idler. Cato, the great Roman, a very virtuous and wise man, used to say, that he repented<sup>13</sup> only three of his actions<sup>14</sup>, one of which was, that he had passed one day in idleness<sup>15</sup>. — If I consider<sup>16</sup> the way<sup>17</sup>, in which you employ your time, I must own<sup>18</sup>, that I envy<sup>19</sup> you the pleasure you will enjoy<sup>20</sup>, when you find, that you know more than other young men and even such as are older than you. What an honour will this do<sup>21</sup> you! What a distinction<sup>22</sup> to meet with applause<sup>23</sup> every where! You must own, that this can only give you satisfaction<sup>24</sup>. To excel<sup>25</sup> others in merit<sup>26</sup> and ability<sup>27</sup> is (ein) very laudable ambition<sup>28</sup>, whereas<sup>29</sup> the endeavour<sup>30</sup> to outshine<sup>31</sup> by station<sup>32</sup>, extravagance<sup>33</sup> and in dress is a foolish<sup>34</sup> vanity<sup>35</sup>, that<sup>36</sup> makes man only ridiculous. Good bye.

<sup>1</sup> wohlgemut. <sup>2</sup> das Lernen. <sup>3</sup> voraussetzen (s.). <sup>4</sup> aufnehmen (s.). <sup>5</sup> unbenutzt. <sup>6</sup> vorteilhaft. <sup>7</sup> müßig. <sup>8</sup> beständig. <sup>9</sup> Vergnügungen.

<sup>10</sup> der Müßiggang. <sup>11</sup> das Erbteil. <sup>12</sup> verächtlich. <sup>13</sup> bereue. <sup>14</sup> die Handlung. <sup>15</sup> Müßiggehen. <sup>16</sup> bedenken. <sup>17</sup> in welcher Art. <sup>18</sup> gesehen. <sup>19</sup> beneiden um. <sup>20</sup> empfinden. <sup>21</sup> sein. <sup>22</sup> Auszeichnung. <sup>23</sup> Anerkennung finden. <sup>24</sup> Befriedigung gewähren. <sup>25</sup> übertreffen. <sup>26</sup> das Verdienst. <sup>27</sup> die Geschicklichkeit, Tüchtigkeit. <sup>28</sup> der Ehrgeiz. <sup>29</sup> wohingegen. <sup>30</sup> das Bestreben. <sup>31</sup> sich auszeichnen (s.). <sup>32</sup> der Stand. <sup>33</sup> der Aufwand. <sup>34</sup> thöricht. <sup>35</sup> die Eitelkeit. <sup>36</sup> wodurch man.

### 31. Letter of recommendation<sup>1</sup>.

*Dear Sir.*

Permit [me] to introduce<sup>2</sup> to you my counting-house colleague<sup>3</sup> and intimate acquaintance<sup>4</sup>, Mr. Robert F., and to claim for him<sup>5</sup> a very kind<sup>6</sup> and friendly reception<sup>7</sup> (inf.).

Mr. F. is a talented<sup>8</sup> young man, who, principally<sup>9</sup> by his own unaided<sup>10</sup> exertions<sup>11</sup>, has made himself a thorough master<sup>12</sup> of several languages. His health having been for some time in a delicate state<sup>13</sup>, owing<sup>14</sup> to a too ardent<sup>15</sup> [pursuit] of his studies, the physicians have recommended him to travel<sup>16</sup> for a few months on the continent, and as soon as his strength (plur.) is sufficiently<sup>17</sup> recruited<sup>18</sup> to admit<sup>19</sup> of his returning to business, to fix<sup>20</sup> his residence<sup>21</sup> in some seaport for a few years. With (in) this view my friend intends visiting France, Flanders and Holland, on his way to Hamburg, where he wishes to obtain a mercantile situation.

Well acquainted with Mr. F.'s character, I can with justice bear testimony in his favour<sup>22</sup>, and the more so<sup>23</sup> as I know, that his conduct<sup>24</sup>, during the nine years, he spent<sup>25</sup> in our counting-house, has been such as<sup>26</sup> to give entire satisfaction<sup>27</sup> to his principals, who regret<sup>27a</sup> (daß) the circumstances compelling<sup>28</sup> him to quit their employ<sup>29</sup>. I therefore most earnestly<sup>30</sup> entreat you to afford<sup>31</sup> him every assistance in your power for accomplishing his object<sup>32</sup>. I confess<sup>33</sup>, I expect more from your friendly exertions<sup>34</sup> in his behalf<sup>35</sup>, than from the letters the house has furnished<sup>36</sup> him with.

(I am) fully persuaded<sup>37</sup>, that you will show Mr. F. every kindness<sup>38</sup> and attention, and endeavour<sup>39</sup> to make his residence at Hamburg as agreeable (to him) as possible, and [beg to] assure you, that I shall consider myself highly



obliged<sup>40</sup>, and shall be<sup>41</sup> most happy to have<sup>42</sup> an opportunity of serving you in return<sup>43</sup>.

Believe me, dear Sir,

yours most faithfully.

<sup>1</sup> Empfehlung. <sup>2</sup> einführen bei. <sup>3</sup> Comptoir-College. <sup>4</sup> Freund.  
<sup>5</sup> bitten (a, e). <sup>6</sup> herzlich. <sup>7</sup> aufnehmen. <sup>8</sup> talentvoll. <sup>9</sup> hauptsächlich.  
<sup>10</sup> ohne fremde Hilfe. <sup>11</sup> Anstrengung. <sup>12</sup> sich gründlich aneignen. <sup>13</sup> an-  
gegriffen. <sup>14</sup> infolge. <sup>15</sup> eifrig. <sup>16</sup> bereisen. <sup>17</sup> hinlänglich. <sup>18</sup> herstellen.  
<sup>19</sup> gestatten. <sup>20</sup> nehmen. <sup>21</sup> der Aufenthalt. <sup>22</sup> empfehlen. <sup>23</sup> das um so  
mehr. <sup>24</sup> die Führung. <sup>25</sup> arbeiten. <sup>26</sup> so daß. <sup>27</sup> die volle Anerkennung  
erwerben. <sup>27a</sup> bebauern. <sup>28</sup> nötigen. <sup>29</sup> die Stelle. <sup>30</sup> nachdrücklich.  
<sup>31</sup> gewähren. <sup>32</sup> seinen Zweck erreichen. <sup>33</sup> gesehen. <sup>34</sup> Bemühung. <sup>35</sup> für  
ihn. <sup>36</sup> versehen. <sup>37</sup> überzeugt. <sup>38</sup> Freundlichkeit. <sup>39</sup> sich bemühen.  
<sup>40</sup> dankbar sein. <sup>41</sup> sich glücklich schätzen. <sup>42</sup> wenn sich bietet. <sup>43</sup> einen  
Gegendienst leisten.

## 79. Tales, fables etc.

### 1. The shepherdboy<sup>1</sup>.

Once upon a time there lived<sup>2</sup> a little shepherdboy, that was celebrated<sup>3</sup> far and near<sup>4</sup> for (wegen) the wise answers he gave to every question. The king of the country could not believe, what he heard of him, and sent for<sup>5</sup> him. He then said to him: If you can answer the three questions, I am going to put<sup>6</sup> to you, I will look upon<sup>7</sup> you as my own child, and you shall come and live with me in my palace. The little boy asked, what the three questions were. The king said: The first is<sup>8</sup>, how many drops<sup>9</sup> of water are there in the ocean<sup>10</sup>? The little shepherdboy answered: O (Herr) king, order<sup>11</sup> all the rivers of the earth to be stopped<sup>12</sup> up, so that no more water may flow into the ocean; then I will count the drops and tell you, how many drops it contains<sup>13</sup>. The king then said: The next question is, how many stars<sup>14</sup> are<sup>15</sup> there in the heavens? The little shepherdboy answered: Give me a large sheet of white paper. Upon this he made so many fine dots<sup>16</sup> with a pen, that they were (man) scarcely discernible<sup>17</sup> and almost impossible<sup>18</sup> to be counted, so that it dazzled<sup>19</sup> the eyes to look at them (wenn man). He then said: There are as many stars in the heavens, as there are dots upon this paper; now count them. But no one was able [to do] so<sup>20</sup>.

The third question, said the king, is: How many seconds are there<sup>20</sup> in eternity<sup>21</sup>? To this the little shepherdboy answered: In Pomerania<sup>22</sup> lies the Diamond-Mountain, (it has) a mile in height, a mile in breadth, and a mile in depth; every hundred years a little bird comes there and whets<sup>23</sup> his little bill<sup>24</sup> on it, and when the whole mountain is ground away<sup>25</sup>, then will the first second of eternity be passed<sup>26</sup>.

The king said: You have answered these three questions like<sup>27</sup> a sage and henceforth<sup>28</sup> you shall live with me in my palace, and I will look upon you as my own child.

<sup>1</sup> Girtensbülein. <sup>2</sup> es war einmal. <sup>3</sup> berühmt. <sup>4</sup> breit. <sup>5</sup> holen lassen. <sup>6</sup> vorlegen. <sup>7</sup> ansehen. <sup>8</sup> lauten. <sup>9</sup> Tropfen. <sup>10</sup> Weltmeer. <sup>11</sup> lassen. <sup>12</sup> verstopfen. <sup>13</sup> enthalten. <sup>14</sup> der Stern 1. <sup>15</sup> stehen. <sup>16</sup> der Punkt 1. <sup>17</sup> unterscheiden. <sup>18</sup> fast gar nicht. <sup>19</sup> blenden. <sup>20</sup> haben. <sup>21</sup> die Ewigkeit. <sup>22</sup> Pommern. <sup>23</sup> wehen. <sup>24</sup> der Schnabel. <sup>25</sup> abwehen (s.). <sup>26</sup> vorüber. <sup>27</sup> wie. <sup>28</sup> fortan. <sup>29</sup> es.

## 2. The wise<sup>1</sup> mouse.

A mouse came out of her hole and saw a trap set<sup>2</sup>. Ha, said she, that is a trap! What clever people<sup>3</sup>! They stand a heavy brick<sup>4</sup> upon three little pieces of wood (Hölzchen), and on one of them they fasten<sup>5</sup> a bit of bacon<sup>6</sup>. And that they call a mouse-trap! As if we mice were not too clever<sup>7</sup> [for that]! We know well [that], when any one (man) eats<sup>8</sup> the bacon, down falls the brick, and strikes the glutton<sup>9</sup> dead<sup>10</sup>. No, no, I know your cunning tricks<sup>11</sup>. But, continued the mouse, one may [venture] to smell at it. The trap can not fall<sup>12</sup> from mere<sup>13</sup> smelling. And I dearly love the smell of bacon. I must smell it a little. The mouse ran to the trap, and smelt the bacon; but the trap was set very loosely<sup>14</sup> and the mouse had scarcely touched<sup>15</sup> it with her nose<sup>16</sup> — slap<sup>17</sup>! down the trap fell, and the greedy<sup>18</sup> mouse was crushed to death<sup>19</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> klug. <sup>2</sup> aufstellen. <sup>3</sup> Menschen. <sup>4</sup> Ziegelstein. <sup>5</sup> befestigen. <sup>6</sup> der Speck. <sup>7</sup> klüger. <sup>8</sup> fressen (a, e). <sup>9</sup> der Räucher. <sup>10</sup> tot schlagen. <sup>11</sup> die List. <sup>12</sup> aufallen (s.). <sup>13</sup> bloß. <sup>14</sup> lose. <sup>15</sup> berühren. <sup>16</sup> die Nase, Räschen. <sup>17</sup> klapps. <sup>18</sup> lüßern. <sup>19</sup> zerquetschen.

## 3. The lion and<sup>1</sup> other beasts hunting.

A wolf, a bear<sup>2</sup> and a fox went hunting with the lion in the wood. Here they caught<sup>3</sup> a stag<sup>4</sup>, and divided<sup>5</sup> it

into four parts. Then the lion said: You know, that one part belongs to me, because I am your partner<sup>6</sup>. A second appertains to me as the king of the beasts. I will have the third, because I am stronger than you, and I have run farther, and had more trouble than all [of] you. And whoever<sup>7</sup> will have the fourth must take it by force<sup>8</sup>. So for all their trouble they had the pleasure of seeing him devouring the stag.

<sup>1</sup> mit. <sup>2</sup> der Bär 4. <sup>3</sup> fangen (i. a). <sup>4</sup> der Hirsch. <sup>5</sup> teilen.  
<sup>6</sup> der Genosse. <sup>7</sup> wer von euch. <sup>8</sup> die Gewalt.

#### 4. The town-mouse and the field-mouse.

A town-mouse went one day to take a walk, and she came to [visit] a field-mouse, who regaled<sup>1</sup> her with acorns<sup>2</sup>, nuts, barley-corns<sup>3</sup>, and every thing, she could set<sup>4</sup> before her. But the town-mouse said: You are a poor mouse, why should (will) you live here any longer in poverty<sup>5</sup>? Come with me into the town. I have plenty<sup>6</sup> of the best provisions<sup>7</sup> there, enough for you and me. So<sup>8</sup> the field-mouse went with him to town, to a beautiful house. There the town-mouse lived. They entered the larder<sup>9</sup>, where there was every thing in abundance<sup>10</sup>, bread, meat, bacon, sausages, cheese and many other [things]. Then said the town-mouse: Now eat and enjoy yourself<sup>11</sup>. I have plenty<sup>12</sup> of such fare every day. Meantime<sup>13</sup> the cook came and rattled<sup>14</sup> at the door with the keys<sup>15</sup>. The mice were frightened<sup>16</sup> and ran away. The town-mouse soon found her hole, but the field-mouse did not know, where to flee<sup>17</sup> (wohin sie). She ran up and down<sup>18</sup> the wall and thought herself<sup>19</sup> lost. When the cook was gone<sup>20</sup>, the town-mouse said: The danger is over<sup>21</sup> now, let us go on<sup>22</sup> eating and be merry<sup>23</sup>. The field-mouse answered: It is very good for you<sup>24</sup> to talk [so]; you knew well to find your hole, but I was near dead with terror<sup>25</sup>. I will tell you, what I think. You (Du) may stay and be a rich town-mouse, and eat sausage and bacon, but I will remain a poor field-mouse and eat my acorns. You are never secure<sup>26</sup> a moment from the cook, or the cat, or the mouse-traps, and no one in the house can bear<sup>27</sup> you. But I have none of all this

to fear in my poor little hole in the field, where I am safe and secure<sup>28</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> bewirken. <sup>2</sup> die Eichel. <sup>3</sup> das Gerstentorn 2. <sup>4</sup> vorsetzen (s.).  
<sup>5</sup> die Armut. <sup>6</sup> in Menge. <sup>7</sup> die köstlichsten Speisen. <sup>8</sup> also. <sup>9</sup> die  
 Speisekammer. <sup>10</sup> vollauf. <sup>11</sup> laß dir's wohl sein. <sup>12</sup> im Überfluß.  
<sup>13</sup> währenddem. <sup>14</sup> raffeln. <sup>15</sup> der Schlüssel. <sup>16</sup> erschrecken (a, o).  
<sup>17</sup> flüchten. <sup>18</sup> auf und ab. <sup>19</sup> sich halten für. <sup>20</sup> fort. <sup>21</sup> vorüber.  
<sup>22</sup> wieder. <sup>23</sup> lustig. <sup>24</sup> du hast gut. <sup>25</sup> vor Schrecken. <sup>26</sup> sicher vor.  
<sup>27</sup> leiden. <sup>28</sup> ungeführt.

### 5. The hungry Arab.

An Arab had lost his way<sup>1</sup> in the desert. For<sup>2</sup> two days he had nothing to eat and was in danger of perishing by hunger<sup>3</sup>, as he at length met with<sup>4</sup> one of the wells, at which the travellers give their camels to drink<sup>5</sup>. Here he saw lying in the sand a small leathern<sup>6</sup> sack. God be praised, said he, as he lifted<sup>7</sup> the bag and felt it over<sup>8</sup>, there are, I believe, dates<sup>9</sup> or nuts, how I will refresh<sup>10</sup> myself with them. In this hope he opened the sack, and seeing what it contained, exclaimed<sup>11</sup> sadly: Ah (aß) they are only pearls!

<sup>1</sup> sich verirren. <sup>2</sup> lang. <sup>3</sup> verhungern. <sup>4</sup> antreffen (a, o). <sup>5</sup> tränken.  
<sup>6</sup> ledern. <sup>7</sup> aufheben (o, o) s. <sup>8</sup> befühlen. <sup>9</sup> die Dattel. <sup>10</sup> sich erquicken  
 an. <sup>11</sup> ausrufen (ie, u) s.

### 6. The carpenter<sup>1</sup> and the ax<sup>2</sup>.

A carpenter let his ax fall in a deep stream<sup>3</sup>, and prayed<sup>4</sup> passionately<sup>5</sup> to the river-god to give it back to him; for he was poor. The river-god was merciful<sup>6</sup>, dived<sup>7</sup>, and rose<sup>8</sup> with a golden ax in his hand. That is not mine, said the carpenter quite calmly. The spirit<sup>9</sup> dived again, and brought up one of silver. And this is not mine either<sup>10</sup>, said the poor man. For the third time the god produced<sup>11</sup> an iron ax with a wooden handle<sup>12</sup>. That is the right one, that is it! cried the workman<sup>13</sup> joyfully<sup>14</sup>. Well, I see, that you are as honest and truthful<sup>15</sup> as you are poor, said the pitying<sup>16</sup> god, as a (zur) reward, take them all three.

This story was known in the neighbourhood, and a rascal<sup>17</sup> who heard of it, took upon himself<sup>18</sup> to try, if the river-god would be as merciful towards him. He let his ax fall on purpose<sup>19</sup> into the stream, prayed to the god, and

soon had the pleasure of seeing him rise. He told him of his loss, and the spirit brought him, as he had (done) before, a gold ax. Is it this, my son? Yes, yes, it is that, replied the liar, and held out<sup>20</sup> his hand for<sup>21</sup> the ax. Halt, despicable man<sup>22</sup>! cried the voice<sup>23</sup> of the angry<sup>24</sup> spirit, do you think to deceive him, who can look into the depths<sup>25</sup> of the soul? As punishment for your deceit and falsehood<sup>26</sup>, you shall lose also that, which was your own. And without his ax the rogue<sup>27</sup> returned home.

<sup>1</sup> der Zimmermann. <sup>2</sup> die Axt 1. <sup>3</sup> der Strom 1. <sup>4</sup> beten zu.  
<sup>5</sup> inbrünstig. <sup>6</sup> gnädig. <sup>7</sup> untertauchen (s.). <sup>8</sup> emportommen. <sup>9</sup> der Geist 2. <sup>10</sup> auch nicht. <sup>11</sup> zum Vorschein bringen. <sup>12</sup> der Stiel 1. <sup>13</sup> der Arbeitsmann. <sup>14</sup> freudig. <sup>15</sup> wahrhaft. <sup>16</sup> mitleidig. <sup>17</sup> der Schall.  
<sup>18</sup> sich vornehmen (s.). <sup>19</sup> absichtlich. <sup>20</sup> ausstrecken (s.). <sup>21</sup> nach. <sup>22</sup> Nichtswürdiger. <sup>23</sup> die Stimme. <sup>24</sup> erzürnt. <sup>25</sup> das Innere, die Tiefe. <sup>26</sup> Lug und Trug. <sup>27</sup> der Schurke.

## 7. Three friends.

Trust<sup>1</sup> no friends, whom thou hast not tried<sup>2</sup>; at the table of the feast<sup>3</sup> there are more [to be met with] than at the door of the prison<sup>4</sup>.

A man had three friends; two of them he loved dearly, but the third only indifferently<sup>5</sup>, although he was the most sincere<sup>6</sup> of them all. Once he was summoned<sup>7</sup> before [the] tribunal<sup>8</sup>, when he was unjustly<sup>9</sup> but bitterly<sup>10</sup> accused<sup>11</sup>. Who among you, said he, will go with me and speak<sup>12</sup> for me? For I am hardly accused and the king is in wrath with<sup>13</sup> me. The first of the friends immediately excused himself from (daß nicht) accompanying him on account of other business. The second accompanied him to the door of the tribunal, and there turned away<sup>14</sup> and went back out of fear of the angry<sup>15</sup> judge<sup>16</sup>. But the third, on whom he had counted the least, went in, spoke for him and proved<sup>17</sup> so clearly his innocence, that the judge set him free<sup>18</sup> and rewarded him.

Man has three friends in this world; how do they act<sup>19</sup> in the hour of death, when God calls him to judgment? Money, his best friend, leaves him first, and does not go with him. His friends and relations<sup>20</sup> accompany him to the door of the grave<sup>21</sup> and then return to their homes<sup>22</sup>.

The third, whom in life he most frequently forgets, is (find) his good works. They alone accompany him to the judge's throne, go before him<sup>23</sup>, plead<sup>24</sup> for him, and find mercy<sup>25</sup> and favour<sup>26</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> trauen (dat.). <sup>2</sup> erproben. <sup>3</sup> das Gastmahl. <sup>4</sup> der Kerker. <sup>5</sup> gleichgültig sein. <sup>6</sup> reblich. <sup>7</sup> fordern. <sup>8</sup> das Gericht l. <sup>9</sup> ungerecht. <sup>10</sup> bitter, hart. <sup>11</sup> verflagen. <sup>12</sup> zeugen, sprechen. <sup>13</sup> erzürnt sein über. <sup>14</sup> sich weg wenden (a, a). <sup>15</sup> zornig. <sup>16</sup> Richter. <sup>17</sup> beweisen (ie, ie). <sup>18</sup> frei lassen. <sup>19</sup> sich betragen, handeln. <sup>20</sup> der Verwandte. <sup>21</sup> das Grab 2. <sup>22</sup> Haus. <sup>23</sup> vorangehen (s.). <sup>24</sup> sprechen. <sup>25</sup> die Barmherzigkeit. <sup>26</sup> die Gnade.

### 8. The desert island.

1. A rich, benevolent<sup>1</sup> man wished to make one of his slaves happy; he gave him his freedom and fitted him out<sup>2</sup> a ship with merchandise<sup>3</sup>. Go, said he then, sail<sup>4</sup> with this to a foreign land; trade<sup>5</sup> with these wares, and all the profit<sup>6</sup> shall be thine. The slave set sail<sup>7</sup>, but scarcely had he been any time at sea, when (so) a violent storm arose<sup>8</sup> and cast the vessel against a rock and it was wrecked<sup>9</sup>. The precious freight<sup>10</sup> sank into the sea; all his companions were drowned<sup>11</sup>, and he himself reached with difficulty the shore<sup>12</sup> of an island. Hungry, naked<sup>13</sup> and helpless, he wandered farther inland<sup>14</sup> and wept<sup>15</sup> over his misfortune, when (da) in the distance he perceived a large city, from which a crowd<sup>16</sup> of the inhabitants<sup>17</sup> hastened to meet<sup>18</sup> him with cries of joy. Hail<sup>19</sup> to our king, cried<sup>20</sup> they, and they set him in a splendid<sup>21</sup> carriage and led him into the city, to a royal palace, where they clothed<sup>22</sup> him in a purple<sup>23</sup> mantle, bound a diadem round his brows<sup>24</sup> and made him ascend a golden throne. The nobles<sup>25</sup> advanced before him, fell down at his feet and took the oath<sup>26</sup> of allegiance<sup>27</sup> in the name of all the people.

At first the new king looked upon (halten für) this splendour<sup>28</sup> as a beautiful dream<sup>29</sup>, until the continuation<sup>30</sup> of his happiness no longer allowed<sup>31</sup> him to doubt, that this strange occurrence<sup>32</sup> was actually true. I do not know, said he to himself, what can have bewitched<sup>33</sup> the eyes of this strange<sup>34</sup> people to choose a naked stranger for (zu) their king. They know not, who I am, they ask not, whence I come, and set me on their throne. What a strange

custom<sup>35</sup> is this. So he thought and was curious<sup>36</sup> to know the cause of his elevation<sup>37</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> wohlwollend. <sup>2</sup> ausklüften (s.). <sup>3</sup> Waren. <sup>4</sup> segeln. <sup>5</sup> handeln.  
<sup>6</sup> der Augen. <sup>7</sup> absegeln. <sup>8</sup> sich erheben (o, o). <sup>9</sup> scheitern. <sup>10</sup> die Ladung.  
<sup>11</sup> ertrinken (a, u). <sup>12</sup> das Ufer. <sup>13</sup> nach. <sup>14</sup> tiefer ins Land. <sup>15</sup> weinen.  
<sup>16</sup> die Menge. <sup>17</sup> der Einwohner. <sup>18</sup> entgegen eilen. <sup>19</sup> Heil. <sup>20</sup> zurufen  
 (ie, u) s. <sup>21</sup> prächtig. <sup>22</sup> bekleiden mit. <sup>23</sup> Purpurmantel. <sup>24</sup> die Stirn.  
<sup>25</sup> die Vornehmen. <sup>26</sup> den Eid leisten. <sup>27</sup> die Treue. <sup>28</sup> die Herrlichkeit.  
<sup>29</sup> der Traum l. <sup>30</sup> die Fortdauer. <sup>31</sup> lassen (ie, a). <sup>32</sup> wunderbare Be-  
 gebenheit. <sup>33</sup> bezaubern. <sup>34</sup> wunderbar. <sup>35</sup> seltsame Sitte. <sup>36</sup> neugierig.  
<sup>37</sup> die Erhebung.

2. At length he resolved<sup>1</sup> to ask one of the nobles of his court<sup>2</sup>, who seemed to be a wise man, the solution<sup>3</sup> of the enigma<sup>4</sup>. Vizier<sup>5</sup>, said he, why have you all made me your king? How did you know, that I had arrived at your island? And what will become of<sup>6</sup> me at last? Sire<sup>7</sup>, answered the vizier, this island is inhabited<sup>8</sup> by spirits. Long ago they prayed<sup>9</sup> the Almighty<sup>10</sup> to send them yearly<sup>11</sup> a son of Adam (um) to reign<sup>12</sup> over them. The Almighty accepted<sup>13</sup> their petition<sup>14</sup>, and every year on the same day sends a man ashore<sup>15</sup> on this island (gen.). The inhabitants hasten, as thou hast seen, to meet him joyfully<sup>16</sup>, and acknowledge<sup>17</sup> him for their sovereign; but his reign only lasts for one year. When his time is expired<sup>18</sup> and the appointed<sup>19</sup> day arrived, he is deprived<sup>20</sup> of his dignity<sup>21</sup>, stripped<sup>22</sup> of his royal trappings<sup>23</sup> and dressed<sup>24</sup> (man) in common clothes. His servants carry him to the shore, where he is laid in a vessel built for the purpose<sup>25</sup>, and carried<sup>26</sup> to another island. This island is waste<sup>27</sup> and desert; he who a few days before was a king, arrives there naked and finds neither subjects<sup>28</sup> nor friends. No one sympathizes<sup>29</sup> with his sorrow, and he must lead a sad and sorrowful<sup>30</sup> life upon this island, if he has not well employed<sup>31</sup> his [allotted] year. After the banishment of the old king the people hasten to receive<sup>32</sup> the new king, whom the providence of the Almighty sends them every year, without an exception<sup>33</sup>, in the same manner<sup>34</sup>, and they receive him with the same pleasure as the former one<sup>35</sup>. This, Sire, is the eternal law of the kingdom, which no king during his reign can change.

Were my predecessors<sup>36</sup>, demanded the king, acquainted with the short existence<sup>37</sup> of their greatness? None of them, replied the vizier, was ignorant of this law of transitoriness<sup>38</sup>; but some of them allowed themselves to be blinded<sup>39</sup> by the splendour<sup>39a</sup>, that surrounded<sup>40</sup> their throne; they forgot the mournful<sup>41</sup> future<sup>42</sup>, and passed through<sup>43</sup> the year without being wise. Others intoxicated themselves<sup>44</sup> in the sweetness<sup>45</sup> of their enjoyment<sup>46</sup>. They did not trust themselves<sup>47</sup> to think upon the desert island from fear of embittering<sup>48</sup> the pleasures<sup>49</sup> of the moment<sup>50</sup>, and so they staggered<sup>51</sup> like drunken [men] from one delight<sup>52</sup> to another, until the time came for them (wo fie) to be cast into the ship.

<sup>1</sup> sich entschließen (o, o). <sup>2</sup> einen der Vornehmsten seines Hofes. <sup>3</sup> Lösung. <sup>4</sup> das Rätsel. <sup>5</sup> Regier. <sup>6</sup> aus. <sup>7</sup> Herr. <sup>8</sup> bewohnen. <sup>9</sup> bitten (a, e). <sup>10</sup> der Allmächtige. <sup>11</sup> jährlich. <sup>12</sup> herrschen. <sup>13</sup> annehmen (a, o) s. <sup>14</sup> die Bitte. <sup>15</sup> an die Küste. <sup>16</sup> freudig. <sup>17</sup> anerkennen als (a, a) s. <sup>18</sup> um. <sup>19</sup> bestimmt. <sup>20</sup> berauben. <sup>21</sup> die Würde. <sup>22</sup> entleiden. <sup>23</sup> der Schmutz. <sup>24</sup> anziehen (o, o) s. <sup>25</sup> zu dem Zweck. <sup>26</sup> bringen. <sup>27</sup> Ide. <sup>28</sup> der Unterthan s. <sup>29</sup> teil nehmen. <sup>30</sup> kummervoll. <sup>31</sup> anwenden s. <sup>32</sup> entgegen eilen. <sup>33</sup> die Ausnahme. <sup>34</sup> (auf) die Weise. <sup>35</sup> der frühere. <sup>36</sup> der Vorgänger. <sup>37</sup> der Bestand. <sup>38</sup> die Vergänglichkeit. <sup>39</sup> blenden. <sup>39a</sup> der Glanz. <sup>40</sup> umgeben. <sup>41</sup> traurig. <sup>42</sup> die Zukunft. <sup>43</sup> verbringen (a, a). <sup>44</sup> sich berauschen. <sup>45</sup> die Süßigkeit. <sup>46</sup> das Glück. <sup>47</sup> sich getrauen. <sup>48</sup> sich verbittern. <sup>49</sup> der Genuß. <sup>50</sup> gegenwärtig. <sup>51</sup> taumeln. <sup>52</sup> die Lust.

3. When the unfortunate day arrived, they began to bewail<sup>1</sup> and to lament<sup>2</sup> their infatuation<sup>3</sup>; but then it was too late, and they were given<sup>4</sup> at once<sup>5</sup> to the misery<sup>6</sup>, that awaited them, and which they had not chosen to avert<sup>7</sup> by wisdom.

This tale of the spirit filled<sup>8</sup> the king with fear; he trembled<sup>9</sup> at the fate<sup>10</sup> of the former kings and wished to escape their unhappiness. He saw with terror<sup>11</sup>, that some weeks of his time were already flown<sup>12</sup>, and that he must hasten<sup>13</sup> to employ the remaining<sup>14</sup> days of his reign the better<sup>15</sup>. Wise vizier, said he, thou hast revealed<sup>16</sup> to me my future<sup>17</sup> fate and the short duration<sup>18</sup> of my power; but pray tell me also, what I must do to avoid<sup>19</sup> the misery of my predecessors. Remember, Sire, replied the spirit, that thou art come naked to this island, and in the same state wilt thou be again cast<sup>20</sup> from it, (um) never to return.



There is however one possible means<sup>21</sup> of avoiding<sup>22</sup> the want<sup>23</sup>, that threatens<sup>24</sup> you in this land of exile, (wenn du) namely<sup>25</sup> to make it fruitful and to fill<sup>26</sup> it with inhabitants. This is permitted by our laws, and thy subjects are so perfectly<sup>27</sup> obedient to thee, that they will go wherever<sup>28</sup> thou sendest them. Then<sup>29</sup> send a number of labourers over there and let them transform<sup>30</sup> the waste fields into fruitful land, build towns and storehouses<sup>31</sup> and provide<sup>32</sup> them with every [thing] necessary [in the way of] provisions<sup>33</sup>. In (mit) one word, prepare<sup>34</sup> thyself a new kingdom, whose inhabitants will receive thee with joy after thy banishment. But hasten, let no moment<sup>35</sup> slip<sup>36</sup> unoccupied<sup>37</sup>; for the time is short, and the more thou doest for the cultivation (der Anbau) of thy future habitation, the<sup>38</sup> more happy will thy residence<sup>39</sup> be then. Think, that thy year may be expired to morrow, and use thy freedom like<sup>40</sup> a wise fugitive<sup>41</sup> who flies<sup>42</sup> from destruction<sup>43</sup>. If thou dispise my counsel or hesitate<sup>44</sup> and become idle, thou art lost and long misery will be thy fate.

The king was a wise man, and the speech of the spirit gave wings to his resolution<sup>45</sup> and his activity<sup>46</sup>. He at once dispatched<sup>47</sup> a number of emigrants, who departed with joy and set to<sup>48</sup> work with zeal. The island began to improve<sup>49</sup>; and before six months were gone by<sup>50</sup>, cities stood among its smiling fields<sup>51</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> beklagen. <sup>2</sup> befeugen. <sup>3</sup> die Verblendung. <sup>4</sup> übergeben. <sup>5</sup> sofort. <sup>6</sup> das Elend. <sup>7</sup> vorbeugen (dat.). <sup>8</sup> erfüllen. <sup>9</sup> zittern, schauern vor. <sup>10</sup> das Schicksal. <sup>11</sup> der Schrecken. <sup>12</sup> verfließen (o, o). <sup>13</sup> eilen. <sup>14</sup> übrig. <sup>15</sup> um so besser. <sup>16</sup> offenbaren. <sup>17</sup> künstlich. <sup>18</sup> die Dauer. <sup>19</sup> vermeiden (ie, ie). <sup>20</sup> verlassen. <sup>21</sup> das Mittel. <sup>22</sup> vorbeugen (s.). <sup>23</sup> der Mangel. <sup>24</sup> bedrohen. <sup>25</sup> nämlich. <sup>26</sup> besetzen. <sup>27</sup> vollkommen. <sup>28</sup> wohin — auch. <sup>29</sup> also. <sup>30</sup> umwandeln. <sup>31</sup> Vorrathshaus. <sup>32</sup> versehen. <sup>33</sup> die Lebensbedürfnisse l. <sup>34</sup> bereiten. <sup>35</sup> der Augenblick. <sup>36</sup> vorbeiziehen. <sup>37</sup> unbenutzt. <sup>38</sup> je mehr — desto glücklicher. <sup>39</sup> der Aufenthalt. <sup>40</sup> wie. <sup>41</sup> der Flüchtling. <sup>42</sup> entfliehen (dat.). <sup>43</sup> das Verderben. <sup>44</sup> zaudern. <sup>45</sup> der Entschluß l. <sup>46</sup> die Thätigkeit. <sup>47</sup> absenden (a, a). <sup>48</sup> sich machen an. <sup>49</sup> sich verschönern. <sup>50</sup> vergehen. <sup>51</sup> lachende Fluren.

4. Notwithstanding this<sup>1</sup> the king did not relax<sup>2</sup> in his work, he continued to send over more and more inhabitants, and these latter were more joyful yet than the former [were]; for they found a cultivated<sup>3</sup> land, inhabited

by their friends and relations. Meantime<sup>4</sup> the end of the year approached<sup>5</sup>. The former kings had trembled [to meet] the moment in which<sup>6</sup> they were obliged to resign<sup>7</sup> their transitory<sup>8</sup> splendour; but this one on the contrary longed for it<sup>9</sup> with impatience<sup>10</sup>; for he was bound<sup>11</sup> for a country, where he had prepared himself a permanent<sup>12</sup> home by his own activity. The appointed day at length arrived; the king was seized<sup>13</sup> in his palace, robbed of his diadem and his royal robes, and placed on [board] the ship, that was to bear him to his destination<sup>14</sup>. But he had scarcely landed on the shore, when (so) the inhabitants hastened joyfully to meet him, and received him with the greatest honour; and instead of the diadem, whose splendour endured only a year, they adorned<sup>15</sup> his brow with a wreath<sup>16</sup> of unfading<sup>17</sup> flowers. The Almighty rewarded his wisdom, gave him immortality<sup>18</sup> of his subjects, and appointed<sup>19</sup> him their king for ever.

The rich benevolent man is God, the slave sent forth by his master is man at his birth<sup>20</sup>; the island, on which he lands, is the world; the inhabitants, who meet him so joyously, are the parents, who take care<sup>21</sup> of the weeping child. The vizier, who instructs<sup>21a</sup> him of the sorrowful fate awaiting him, is wisdom. The year of his reign is the course<sup>22</sup> of human life, and the desert island, where he is conducted, the future world. The workpeople, whom he sends there, are the good works, which he performs<sup>23</sup> during his life. The kings, who preceded<sup>24</sup> him, without ever giving a thought to the sorrow that awaited them, are the greater number<sup>25</sup> of mankind, who occupy themselves with their temporal<sup>26</sup> affairs<sup>27</sup>, without thinking on the life beyond<sup>28</sup> the grave; they are punished with sorrow<sup>29</sup> and misery, because they appear<sup>30</sup> before the throne of the Almighty with hands empty<sup>31</sup> of good works.

<sup>1</sup> dessen ungeachtet. <sup>2</sup> nachlassen. <sup>3</sup> anbauen. <sup>4</sup> unterdessen. <sup>5</sup> herannahen (s.). <sup>6</sup> wo. <sup>7</sup> entsagen (dat.). <sup>8</sup> vergänglich. <sup>9</sup> sich sehnen nach. <sup>10</sup> die Ungeduld. <sup>11</sup> gehen. <sup>12</sup> dauernd. <sup>13</sup> ergreifen (i, i). <sup>14</sup> der Verbannungsort. <sup>15</sup> schmücken. <sup>16</sup> der Kranz l. <sup>17</sup> unverwundlich. <sup>18</sup> die Unsterblichkeit. <sup>19</sup> machen zu. <sup>20</sup> die Geburt. <sup>21</sup> sorgen. <sup>21a</sup> unterrichten. <sup>22</sup> der Lauf. <sup>23</sup> verrichten. <sup>24</sup> vorausgehen. <sup>25</sup> die Mehrzahl. <sup>26</sup> irdisch. <sup>27</sup> die Angelegenheit. <sup>28</sup> jenseits (gen.). <sup>29</sup> der Mangel. <sup>30</sup> erscheinen (ie, ie). <sup>31</sup> leer an.

### 9. The two tubs<sup>1</sup>.

One morning, as the wise Diogenes rose<sup>2</sup> out of his tub, to watch the sun rise<sup>3</sup> over the sea, he remarked, that the morning sun shone upon two tubs instead of one. A youth of noble<sup>4</sup> birth had also formed<sup>5</sup> the resolution of becoming a philosopher like the despised Diogenes, and during the night had rolled his tub towards<sup>6</sup> Cenchraea. It is well, my son, said the old man, I see, that wisdom has gained a follower<sup>7</sup> in you. The youth smiled with pleasure<sup>8</sup> at the praise of the venerable<sup>9</sup> man. But Diogenes took his tub, rolled<sup>10</sup> it to the brink<sup>11</sup> of the waves<sup>12</sup>, and cast it into the water, and away it floated<sup>13</sup> over the flood<sup>14</sup>. The youth was astonished<sup>15</sup>. Then said Diogenes: I have at length found a worthy<sup>16</sup> scholar in (an) you. Now perfect<sup>17</sup> your victory over yourself. Renounce<sup>18</sup> your possessions<sup>19</sup> in my favour (mir), I will take them and give them to the poor. The youth replied: I have still something to put<sup>20</sup> in order at home; and so saying, he left his tub and took leave<sup>21</sup>. Then Diogenes smiled and said: How ridiculous is mankind! They think, they have<sup>22</sup> enough with the tub; but they deceive<sup>23</sup> themselves, how can they be sincere<sup>24</sup> toward others? Having thus spoken, he betook<sup>25</sup> himself to his new tub. But the noble youth remained at home, and acknowledged<sup>26</sup> with shame<sup>27</sup>, that he had only made the first step<sup>28</sup> towards wisdom.

<sup>1</sup> die Tonne. <sup>2</sup> sich erheben (o, o). <sup>3</sup> emporsteigen. <sup>4</sup> vornehm. <sup>5</sup> fassen. <sup>6</sup> gen. <sup>7</sup> der Jünger. <sup>8</sup> zufrieden lächeln. <sup>9</sup> ehrwürdig. <sup>10</sup> rollen. <sup>11</sup> der Rand. <sup>12</sup> die Welle. <sup>13</sup> schwanken dahin. <sup>14</sup> die Flut, die Woge. <sup>15</sup> erstaunen. <sup>16</sup> würdig. <sup>17</sup> vollenden. <sup>18</sup> verjahren. <sup>19</sup> das Gut. <sup>20</sup> bringen. <sup>21</sup> Abschied. <sup>22</sup> es sei. <sup>23</sup> sich täuschen. <sup>24</sup> aufrichtig. <sup>25</sup> sich begeben. <sup>26</sup> bekennen (a, a). <sup>27</sup> die Scham. <sup>28</sup> der Schritt.

### 10. The reward.

The Caliph Harun al Rashid met out hunting an old man, who was planting a nut-tree. What a fool this old man is! said the caliph to his followers<sup>1</sup>; he is doing, as if he were still a youth and hoped to enjoy the fruit<sup>2</sup> of this tree. And as his suite<sup>3</sup> also laughed at the old man, the caliph went up to him and asked, how old he was. Above eighty, Sir, was the answer, but thank Allah, as

healthy as one of thirty. How much longer do you hope to live then, enquired the caliph further, that you plant<sup>4</sup> young trees at such an age, which will bear fruit so late? Sir, said the old man, I am contented to have planted the trees, without ever troubling<sup>5</sup> myself, whether I or others shall enjoy the fruit. It is good for us<sup>6</sup> to do as our fathers did. They planted the trees whose fruit we eat, and as we have enjoyed<sup>7</sup> our fathers' work, why should we be more selfish<sup>8</sup> towards<sup>9</sup> our descendants<sup>10</sup> than they were towards us? I think, [that] what the father can not enjoy, the son will surely harvest<sup>11</sup>. The generous<sup>12</sup> Harun, who was pleased with this answer, gave the old man a handful of gold-pieces. Who can say, continued the cheerful old man, that I have worked in vain<sup>13</sup> to day, when the young tree that I planted bears such rich fruit the first day already? And so it is true, that he who does good, is always amply rewarded.

<sup>1</sup> der Begleiter. <sup>2</sup> die Früchte (plur.). <sup>3</sup> das Gefolge. <sup>4</sup> pflanzen. <sup>5</sup> sich bekümmern. <sup>6</sup> billig, daß wir. <sup>7</sup> genießen (o, o). <sup>8</sup> selbstisch. <sup>9</sup> gegenüber. <sup>10</sup> der Nachkomme. <sup>11</sup> ernten. <sup>12</sup> freigebig. <sup>13</sup> vergebens.

# 11. All for the best<sup>1</sup>.

Man should always accustom<sup>2</sup> himself to think: What God sends is right, however<sup>3</sup> wrong it may appear to him. — A poor pilgrim<sup>4</sup> came to a town, whose gates were closed<sup>5</sup>; no one would let him in; hungry and thirsty, as he was, he was obliged to pass<sup>6</sup> the night in the open air<sup>7</sup>. What God sends is good, said he, and laid himself down<sup>8</sup> to sleep. Near him browsed<sup>9</sup> his ass, and at his side was a burning lantern<sup>10</sup> on account of the insecurity<sup>11</sup> of the neighbourhood<sup>11a</sup>. But a storm arose and extinguished<sup>12</sup> the light; a lion came and devoured<sup>13</sup> his ass. He awoke<sup>14</sup>, found himself alone<sup>15</sup>, and said: What God sends is good! And he calmly awaited the morning. When he came to the town, he found the gates open, the houses broken into<sup>16</sup>, robbed<sup>17</sup> and plundered. A troop of robbers<sup>17a</sup> had attacked<sup>18</sup> it in the night, and carried<sup>19</sup> the inhabitants away prisoners<sup>20</sup> or killed. He had been spared<sup>21</sup>. Did I not say, said he, that whatever God sends is good? We generally

find out<sup>22</sup> only in the morning, why he refused<sup>23</sup> us something over-night<sup>24</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> zum Guten. <sup>2</sup> sich gewöhnen. <sup>3</sup> wie — auch. <sup>4</sup> der Pilger.  
<sup>5</sup> schließen (o, o). <sup>6</sup> zubringen (s.). <sup>7</sup> unter freiem Himmel. <sup>8</sup> nieder.  
<sup>9</sup> weiden. <sup>10</sup> die Laterne. <sup>11</sup> die Unsicherheit. <sup>11a</sup> die Gegend. <sup>12</sup> aus-  
 lösen (s.). <sup>13</sup> zerreißen (i, i). <sup>14</sup> erwachen. <sup>15</sup> allein. <sup>16</sup> verwüsten.  
<sup>17</sup> berauben. <sup>17a</sup> Räuberbande. <sup>18</sup> angreifen (i, i) s. <sup>19</sup> wegführen (s.). <sup>20</sup> ge-  
 fangen. <sup>21</sup> verschont bleiben. <sup>22</sup> erkennen. <sup>23</sup> versagen. <sup>24</sup> des Abends.

## 12. The seven sticks<sup>1</sup>.

A peasant had seven sons, who often quarrelled among themselves, and in dispute<sup>2</sup> and strife<sup>3</sup> neglected their work. Some wicked people took advantage<sup>4</sup> of this discord<sup>5</sup> among the sons, and laid<sup>6</sup> plans to cheat them out of their property<sup>7</sup> after their father's death. Therefore their father, who fore-saw<sup>8</sup> this, one day ordered all his sons to come to him, and laid before them seven sticks firmly bound together, saying: I will richly reward the one of you, who can break this bundle of sticks. One after the other made his best efforts<sup>9</sup> in trying it, but in vain, all found it impossible [to do]. And yet, said the father, nothing is easier. He then untied<sup>10</sup> the bundle<sup>11</sup> and broke one of the sticks after the other with the greatest ease<sup>12</sup>. Why, cried<sup>13</sup> the sons, it is easy enough so, a little boy might do it. The father said: As it is with these sticks, so it is with you, my sons: As long as you remain firmly united<sup>14</sup> together, you will be strong and no one will be able to overcome<sup>15</sup> you. But when once the band of union<sup>16</sup>, that holds you together, is broken, it will happen<sup>17</sup> to you as to the sticks, that lie here broken on the ground<sup>18</sup>.

Discord weakens<sup>19</sup>, concord makes strong.

<sup>1</sup> der Stab 1. <sup>2</sup> Zank. <sup>3</sup> Streit. <sup>4</sup> benutzen. <sup>5</sup> die Zwietracht.  
<sup>6</sup> machen. <sup>7</sup> das Eigentum. <sup>8</sup> voraussehen. <sup>9</sup> die Kräfte anstrengen.  
<sup>10</sup> lösen. <sup>11</sup> das Bündel. <sup>12</sup> die Leichtigkeit. <sup>13</sup> rufen (ie, u). <sup>14</sup> fest  
 zusammenhalten. <sup>15</sup> etwas anhaben. <sup>16</sup> die Eintracht. <sup>17</sup> gehen. <sup>18</sup> der  
 Boden. <sup>19</sup> schwächen.

## 13. The cuckoo<sup>1</sup>.

The cuckoo, who [comes to] visit us in spring and summer, may serve as [an] example, how kindly providence adopts<sup>2</sup> all forsaken<sup>3</sup> and orphan<sup>4</sup> creatures<sup>5</sup> in the world

and cares for them, even<sup>6</sup> the young cuckoo. The hen-cuckoo, who lays her eggs at<sup>7</sup> long intervals<sup>8</sup>, about every week one egg, can not hatch<sup>9</sup> them herself, but lays them in the nests of other smaller birds, and these latter are not only pleased with it, but [will] carefully<sup>10</sup> sit on the eggs and afterwards feed<sup>11</sup> the young birds, when they are hatched. When a young cuckoo first flies from the nest and sits on a tree or bush, crying<sup>12</sup> for hunger, every small bird in the neighbourhood brings him food<sup>13</sup>, one puts a fly<sup>14</sup>, another a butterfly<sup>15</sup>, a third a caterpillar<sup>16</sup> or a worm<sup>17</sup> into the little orphan's beak<sup>18</sup>, so that often he can not open it fast enough, and scarcely knows towards which of the officious<sup>19</sup> birds to turn<sup>20</sup> first. Thus very often those apparently<sup>21</sup> the most neglected are the most cared for (ist oft für), and yet it is hard to make mankind believe<sup>22</sup> this.

<sup>1</sup> der Ruck. <sup>2</sup> sich annehmen (gen.) (a, o) s. <sup>3</sup> verlassen. <sup>4</sup> verwaist. <sup>5</sup> das Geschöpf l. <sup>6</sup> sogar. <sup>7</sup> in. <sup>8</sup> der Zwischenraum l. <sup>9</sup> ausbrüten. <sup>10</sup> sorglich. <sup>11</sup> füttern. <sup>12</sup> schreien vor. <sup>13</sup> das Futter. <sup>14</sup> die Fliege. <sup>15</sup> der Schmetterling. <sup>16</sup> die Raupe. <sup>17</sup> der Wurm. <sup>18</sup> der Schnabel. <sup>19</sup> dienstfertig. <sup>20</sup> wenden. <sup>21</sup> scheinbar. <sup>22</sup> begreiflich.

#### 14. The fall of the Rhine.

I had left Zurich early, had passed over the wooden bridge of the Rhine at Eglisau and was approaching<sup>1</sup> towards noon the village of Neuhausen. Long before I reached it, the wind brought<sup>2</sup> a low rushing sound<sup>3</sup> to my ear, which grew stronger, as I approached the village. At length I stood before the fall, full of astonishment<sup>4</sup> and admiration of (über) the power<sup>5</sup> of the Almighty. An enormous<sup>6</sup> mass of water rushes<sup>7</sup> sixty feet high over a wall of rock<sup>8</sup>, foaming<sup>9</sup> and rushing<sup>10</sup> around (the) various<sup>11</sup> prominent<sup>12</sup> blocks, and spreading<sup>13</sup> a cloud of vapours<sup>14</sup> round them, as it falls in the seething<sup>15</sup> depth below. It is quite overpowering<sup>16</sup> to watch<sup>17</sup> the constant<sup>18</sup> rush and spray<sup>19</sup> and the endless<sup>20</sup> foaming and evaporation<sup>21</sup> of the water, and to hear the thundering noise<sup>22</sup>, that accompanies its fall; even after a long contemplation<sup>23</sup> my soul retained<sup>24</sup> its excitement<sup>25</sup>. I was rowed across in a boat to the foot of the hill, upon which the castle of Laufen is situated, and

stood on the scaffolding<sup>26</sup>, which is built close upon the edge<sup>26a</sup> of the river, coping<sup>27</sup> over the fall. The expression<sup>28</sup> made upon me can not be expressed<sup>29</sup> in (mit) words. The scaffolding trembled under my feet, the rocks seemed to shake<sup>30</sup>, the fine spray wetted me through<sup>31</sup>. I stood more than half an hour on this spot<sup>32</sup>; how can I describe<sup>33</sup> the rapidity<sup>34</sup> exceeding all imagination<sup>35</sup>, with which those waters<sup>36</sup> fell in an uncessing flood<sup>37</sup>! how describe the varied<sup>38</sup> roaring<sup>39</sup>, hissing<sup>40</sup> and rushing<sup>41</sup> of the hurrying<sup>42</sup> waves and the thundering roar<sup>43</sup> of the down-falling masses of water! Silent and adoring<sup>44</sup> man stands before this wonder-work of his creator<sup>45</sup>.

As the light boat<sup>46</sup> once more landed me on the other bank, it was already dusk<sup>47</sup>. I sat down on a bench and once more contemplated<sup>48</sup> the whole breadth and different divisions<sup>49</sup> of the fall. The moon had already risen<sup>50</sup> and its rays<sup>51</sup> fell upon the gleaming<sup>52</sup> water-floods. The light broke<sup>53</sup> in a thousand reflections<sup>54</sup> on the bubbling<sup>55</sup> drops<sup>56</sup>, which glittered like white spots<sup>57</sup> over the fall, and its image<sup>58</sup> rocked<sup>59</sup> up and down upon the undulating<sup>60</sup> billows. Here I spent one of the happiest evenings of my whole life.

<sup>1</sup> sich nähern. <sup>2</sup> zuführen (s.). <sup>3</sup> ein dumpfes Brausen. <sup>4</sup> haunend.  
<sup>5</sup> die Größe. <sup>6</sup> ungeheuer. <sup>7</sup> stürzen. <sup>8</sup> die Felswand. <sup>9</sup> schäumen.  
<sup>10</sup> brausen. <sup>11</sup> verschieben. <sup>12</sup> hervorragend. <sup>13</sup> umhüllen mit. <sup>14</sup> der  
Dunst l. <sup>15</sup> sprudelnd. <sup>16</sup> überwältigen. <sup>17</sup> beobachten. <sup>18</sup> beständig.  
<sup>19</sup> das Spritzen. <sup>20</sup> endlos. <sup>21</sup> Schäumen und Verdunsten. <sup>22</sup> das Getöse.  
<sup>23</sup> Betrachtung. <sup>24</sup> noch bleiben. <sup>25</sup> Aufregung. <sup>26</sup> das Gerüst. <sup>26a</sup> dicht  
am Rande. <sup>27</sup> schwebend. <sup>28</sup> der Eindruck. <sup>29</sup> ausdrücken, wiedergeben.  
<sup>30</sup> beben. <sup>31</sup> durchdringen. <sup>32</sup> die Stelle. <sup>33</sup> beschreiben. <sup>34</sup> Schnelligkeit.  
<sup>35</sup> alle Gedanken übersteigend. <sup>36</sup> die Wassermasse. <sup>37</sup> in unaufhörlichem  
Fluten. <sup>38</sup> mannigfaltig. <sup>39</sup> Getöse. <sup>40</sup> das Rischen. <sup>41</sup> das Rauschen.  
<sup>42</sup> eilend. <sup>43</sup> Brausen. <sup>44</sup> anbeten. <sup>45</sup> der Schöpfer. <sup>46</sup> der Rachen.  
<sup>47</sup> dämmerig. <sup>48</sup> betrachten. <sup>49</sup> die Abtheilung. <sup>50</sup> aufgehen (s.). <sup>51</sup> der  
Strahl l. <sup>52</sup> glitzern. <sup>53</sup> sich brechen. <sup>54</sup> tausendfach. <sup>55</sup> aufsprühend.  
<sup>56</sup> der Tropfen. <sup>57</sup> der Punkt l. <sup>58</sup> das Bild. <sup>59</sup> schaukeln. <sup>60</sup> hinrollen.

### 15. The thief<sup>1</sup>.

In a neighbouring village there was an anniversary festival<sup>2</sup> and fair<sup>3</sup>, and on this account every body from the village was gone there to make purchases<sup>4</sup>, to be merry<sup>5</sup> and to dance. And so it was very quiet there in the even-

ing, no one was to be seen or heard. Then (da) round the end<sup>6</sup> of the barn<sup>7</sup> came a man, he stole<sup>8</sup> softly<sup>9</sup> and timidly<sup>10</sup> along<sup>11</sup> the wall, where it was darkest. Meanwhile<sup>12</sup> he looked anxiously<sup>13</sup> round him on<sup>14</sup> every side, to see if no one was there, (der) to observe him. But when he believed himself quite secure, he climbed up the wall, and crept<sup>15</sup> thence on all fours like a cat to the spot, where the wall joined<sup>16</sup> the house, and swung<sup>17</sup> himself into<sup>18</sup> a window, which he found open. When he had slipped<sup>19</sup> through the window he found<sup>20</sup> himself in an empty room; close to this<sup>21</sup> was the bed-room of the proprietor<sup>22</sup>; a door, which led into this, was not close (zu), but ajar<sup>23</sup>. The thief knew well, that the people were gone to the fair, but he thought, that possibly<sup>24</sup> some one might be in the room, so he laid<sup>25</sup> his ear against the door and listened<sup>26</sup>. He heard a child speaking, and when he looked through the key-hole<sup>27</sup>, he saw in the twilight<sup>28</sup>, that a child was sitting all alone on his bed with folded<sup>29</sup> hands and was saying the Lord's prayer<sup>30</sup> aloud as usual, before he (es) slept<sup>31</sup>. Already the thief was considering<sup>32</sup>, how best to carry out<sup>33</sup> his robbery<sup>34</sup>, when (da) he heard the child with a clear loud voice say the words: and lead us not into temptation<sup>35</sup>, but deliver<sup>36</sup> us from evil. This went to the man's heart, and his conscience<sup>37</sup> awoke. He felt, how heavy a sin it was, he was about<sup>38</sup> to commit<sup>39</sup>. And he too folded his hands and prayed earnestly<sup>40</sup> to (für) himself: Lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil; and the good<sup>41</sup> God heard<sup>42</sup> him. By (auf) the same way, he had come, he stole back again to his own little chamber<sup>43</sup>. Here he repented<sup>44</sup> with (von) his whole heart his former life, prayed to God for pardon, and thanked him for the protection<sup>45</sup>, which he had vouchsafed<sup>46</sup> to him by the mouth of a poor little child. After this he grew an industrious and orderly<sup>47</sup> man.

<sup>1</sup> der Dieb. <sup>2</sup> die Kirchweih. <sup>3</sup> der Jahrmart. <sup>4</sup> der Einkauf 1.  
<sup>5</sup> sich belustigen. <sup>6</sup> die Ecke. <sup>7</sup> die Scheune. <sup>8</sup> sich schleichen (i, i). <sup>9</sup> leise.  
<sup>10</sup> ängstlich. <sup>11</sup> entlang (acc.). <sup>12</sup> dabei. <sup>13</sup> sehen. <sup>14</sup> nach. <sup>15</sup> kriechen  
(o, o). <sup>16</sup> stoßen an (ie, o). <sup>17</sup> sich schwingen (a, u). <sup>18</sup> zum — hinein.  
<sup>19</sup> schlüpfen. <sup>20</sup> sich befinden. <sup>21</sup> dicht daneben. <sup>22</sup> der Eigentümer. <sup>23</sup> an-  
gelehnt. <sup>24</sup> möglicher Weise. <sup>25</sup> halten (ie, a). <sup>26</sup> hören. <sup>27</sup> das  
Schlüsselloch 2. <sup>28</sup> das Zwielicht. <sup>29</sup> falten. <sup>30</sup> das Vaterunser. <sup>31</sup> ein-



schlafen (ie, a) s. <sup>32</sup> überlegen. <sup>33</sup> ausführen (s.). <sup>34</sup> der Diebstahl.  
<sup>35</sup> die Versuchung. <sup>36</sup> erlösen. <sup>37</sup> das Gewissen. <sup>38</sup> im Begriff sein.  
<sup>39</sup> begehen. <sup>40</sup> inbrünstig. <sup>41</sup> lieb. <sup>42</sup> erheben. <sup>43</sup> Rämmerlein. <sup>44</sup> be-  
 reuen. <sup>45</sup> der Schuß. <sup>46</sup> gewähren. <sup>47</sup> ordentlich.

# 16. The peasant's son as captain of horse<sup>1</sup>.

In the regiment of the celebrated General Ziethen was a cavalry-captain by name<sup>2</sup> Kurzhagen. He was clever, brave and childlike in mind<sup>3</sup>. His parents were peasants<sup>4</sup>, that lived near Parchim, a Mecklenburg (adj.) town. Decorated<sup>5</sup> with the order of merit<sup>6</sup>, he entered Parchim after the seven years' war. His parents had come from their village to the town to meet<sup>7</sup> their son after so many years' absence, and they waited for him in the market-place. As soon as he perceived them, he sprang down from his horse and embraced<sup>8</sup> them with (unter) tears of joy<sup>9</sup>. Soon after, they had to remove<sup>10</sup> to him. They always dined with him at his table, even when [there] were noble<sup>11</sup> guests<sup>12</sup> present<sup>13</sup>. One day an officer laughed at the fact<sup>14</sup> of peasants dining with a cavalry-captain. And why should I not be grateful to the first benefactors<sup>15</sup> of my life? was his reply. Before I was the king's<sup>16</sup> captain, I was their child. The brave General Ziethen heard of this occurrence<sup>17</sup>, and invited himself<sup>18</sup> after some time with other officers to dine with (bei) the captain. The parents of the latter did not wish this time to appear at table, because it would cause them embarrassment<sup>19</sup>. As they were about<sup>20</sup> to seat themselves, the general said: But Kurzhagen, where are your parents? I think, they always dine with you? The captain smiled and knew not what to reply for the moment. Upon this Ziethen rose and fetched them himself; they were obliged to sit on each side of the general, and he conversed with<sup>21</sup> them in (auf) the most friendly manner<sup>22</sup>. When the others began to drink<sup>23</sup> healths, he lifted<sup>24</sup> his glass and said: Gentlemen, I drink to the good fortune<sup>25</sup> of these honest<sup>26</sup> parents of a deserving<sup>27</sup> son, who has proved<sup>28</sup>, that a grateful son is of more worth than a haughty cavalry-captain.

Later the general found an opportunity to relate to the king the filial affection<sup>29</sup>, which the captain had shown<sup>30</sup>

his father, and Frederic the Second was much pleased<sup>51</sup> at it. Once, when Kurzhagen came to Berlin, he was bidden<sup>52</sup> to the royal table<sup>53</sup>. Listen, captain, said the king, from what family are you descended? Who are your parents? Your majesty<sup>54</sup>, replied<sup>55</sup> Kurzhagen without confusion<sup>56</sup>, I am descended from a peasant's house, and my parents are peasants, with whom I share<sup>57</sup> the good fortune your majesty bestows<sup>58</sup> on me. That is right, said the king overjoyed, he who honours his parents is an honourable<sup>59</sup> man; he who neglects them, does not deserve to have been born.

Honour thy father and mother, which is the first commandment<sup>40</sup> with promise<sup>41</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Rittmeister. <sup>2</sup> namens. <sup>3</sup> hatte ein kindliches Gemüt. <sup>4</sup> Bauersleute. <sup>5</sup> geschnüß. <sup>6</sup> Verdienstfunden. <sup>7</sup> wieder sehen. <sup>8</sup> umarmen. <sup>9</sup> Freudenthränen. <sup>10</sup> ziehen. <sup>11</sup> vornehm. <sup>12</sup> der Gast. <sup>13</sup> gegenwärtig. <sup>14</sup> darüber daß. <sup>15</sup> der Wohltäter. <sup>16</sup> königlich. <sup>17</sup> der Vorfall. <sup>18</sup> sich ansagen lassen zu. <sup>19</sup> sich verlegen fühlen. <sup>20</sup> eben. <sup>21</sup> sich unterhalten mit. <sup>22</sup> aufs freundlichste. <sup>23</sup> ausbringen (s.). <sup>24</sup> erheben (o, o). <sup>25</sup> auf das Wohl. <sup>26</sup> reichthümlich. <sup>27</sup> verdienstvoll. <sup>28</sup> beweisen (te, ie). <sup>29</sup> kindliche Liebe. <sup>30</sup> erzeigen. <sup>31</sup> erfreut. <sup>32</sup> gebeten. <sup>33</sup> die Tafel. <sup>34</sup> die Majestät. <sup>35</sup> erwidern. <sup>36</sup> Verwirrung. <sup>37</sup> teilen. <sup>38</sup> verbannten. <sup>39</sup> ehrenwert. <sup>40</sup> das Gebot. <sup>41</sup> das Verheißung hat.

### 17. The peaches<sup>1</sup>.

A countryman brought with [him] from the town five peaches, the finest, that one could behold. But his children saw this fruit for the first time. On this account<sup>2</sup> they were astonished and pleased<sup>3</sup> with<sup>4</sup> the beautiful apples, their red cheeks<sup>5</sup> and tender down<sup>6</sup>. The father divided them among his four boys, and the mother received one. In the evening, when the children went to bed, their father asked them, how they (had) liked the pretty apples. Very much, dear father, replied the eldest, it is a delicious fruit, so acid<sup>7</sup> and soft<sup>8</sup> in (von) taste. I took out the stone carefully to grow<sup>9</sup> a tree from it. Good, replied the father, that is (nenne ich) being economical and careful<sup>10</sup> for the future, as is proper<sup>11</sup> for a husbandman. I ate mine directly, said the youngest, and threw away the stone, and mother gave me the half<sup>12</sup> of hers. Oh, that was so sweet, and melted<sup>13</sup> in [my] mouth. Well, said the father, you

certainly have not acted wisely, but yet very naturally<sup>20</sup> and like a child; and there is room<sup>14</sup> for wisdom in your life. Then the second son began: The stone, which my brother threw away, I took and broke it open<sup>15</sup>. There was a kernel<sup>16</sup> inside it, that tasted<sup>17</sup> as sweet as a nut; but my peach I sold and got so much money for it, that when I go to town, I can buy twelve [more] for it. The father shook<sup>18</sup> his head and said: That is certainly prudent, but not childlike<sup>19</sup> and natural<sup>20</sup>. God forbid<sup>21</sup>, that you should be a merchant. And you Edmund? he asked. Frankly<sup>22</sup> and simply<sup>23</sup> Edmund replied: I took my peach to our neighbour's son George, who is ill with<sup>24</sup> the fever<sup>25</sup>. He would not take it; so I put it on his bed and went away.

Well, said the father, who has (wohl) made the best use of his peach? The three cried out together: Brother Edmund has (done it). But Edmund was silent and his mother kissed<sup>26</sup> him with a tear in her eye.

<sup>1</sup> die Pfirsich 1. <sup>2</sup> deswegen. <sup>3</sup> erfreut. <sup>4</sup> über. <sup>5</sup> der Dackel.  
<sup>6</sup> der Klam. <sup>7</sup> säuerlich. <sup>8</sup> süß. <sup>9</sup> ziehen. <sup>10</sup> sorglich. <sup>11</sup> sich gebühren.  
<sup>12</sup> die Hälfte. <sup>13</sup> zerschmelzen (o, o). <sup>14</sup> der Raum. <sup>15</sup> aufklopfen (s.).  
<sup>16</sup> der Kern 1. <sup>17</sup> schmecken. <sup>18</sup> schütteln. <sup>19</sup> kindlich. <sup>20</sup> natürlich.  
<sup>21</sup> verhüten. <sup>22</sup> unbefangen. <sup>23</sup> offen. <sup>24</sup> krank liegen an (dat.). <sup>25</sup> das Fieber. <sup>26</sup> küssen.

### 18. Strange ride<sup>1</sup>.

A man rode home on a donkey and let his son go on foot by his side. A traveller came by<sup>2</sup> and said: That is not right, my good man, that you ride and let your son walk, you have stronger limbs<sup>3</sup>. Thereupon the father got off the donkey and let his son ride. And (da) another traveller came by and said: That is not right, [my] lad<sup>4</sup>, that you ride and let your father walk. You have younger legs. Upon this both mounted<sup>5</sup> and rode a short distance<sup>6</sup>. And a third traveller came by and said: How unreasonable<sup>7</sup> [that is], two men on one weak animal! You deserve, that one should take (subj.) a stick and beat you both off<sup>8</sup>. They then both dismounted and went all three on foot, right and left the father and son, and in the middle<sup>9</sup> the donkey. A fourth traveller came by and said: You are three curious<sup>10</sup> companions<sup>11</sup>. Is it not enough, if two of

you walk? Would it not be better, when one of you rides (subj.)? Then the father tied the donkey's front-legs<sup>12</sup> together, and the son its hind-legs<sup>13</sup>, drew<sup>14</sup> a strong wooden prop<sup>15</sup>, which stood on the way, through [them], and carried the donkey home on their shoulders<sup>16</sup>.

So it is<sup>17</sup>, when one tries<sup>18</sup> to please<sup>19</sup> every body.

<sup>1</sup> seltsamer Spazierritt. <sup>2</sup> begegnen (dat.). <sup>3</sup> das Glied 2, das Bein 1. <sup>4</sup> der Dursche. <sup>5</sup> aufsteigen (ie, ie) s. <sup>6</sup> die Strecke. <sup>7</sup> unvernünftig. <sup>8</sup> herunterprügeln. <sup>9</sup> die Mitte. <sup>10</sup> furios. <sup>11</sup> der Gefelle. <sup>12</sup> der Vorderfuß. <sup>13</sup> der Hinterfuß. <sup>14</sup> ziehen (o, o). <sup>15</sup> der Pfahl 1. <sup>16</sup> die Schulter. <sup>17</sup> gehen. <sup>18</sup> wollen. <sup>19</sup> es recht machen.

### 19. The police-man<sup>1</sup> in the rat-trap.

In one of the garrison<sup>2</sup>-towns, which lies between the Rhine and the Danube, dwelt an honest tailor and his journeymen<sup>3</sup>. In the holiday-evenings<sup>4</sup> the workmen would not always stay at home. Now the master<sup>5</sup> could not give each a separate<sup>6</sup> key, but one among (für) them all. This they laid in a hole in the wall under the door, and the one, who came home first, opened the door and entered<sup>7</sup>, and then replaced the key in the hole from inside<sup>8</sup>. But the master had often been fined<sup>9</sup> by the police for having his door open in the night. The master warned<sup>10</sup> his workmen again and again, and exhorted<sup>11</sup> them to be more orderly<sup>12</sup>; but they persisted<sup>13</sup>, that they always locked<sup>14</sup> the door, and one of them said: I think, the police-man has discovered the hiding-place<sup>15</sup> of the key and opens the door himself, so as (um) to claim<sup>16</sup> the reward for himself; now then (nun) we will see, if I can not get one for myself (auch). So he set<sup>17</sup> to work in the hole, where the key was generally hid<sup>18</sup>. That evening they all staid at home; and at the ghostly hour<sup>19</sup> of midnight they heard some one whimpering<sup>20</sup> pitifully<sup>21</sup> below. The master and his apprentices looked out of the (zum) window, and discovered the police-man, caught by his left hand in the rat-trap, which the cunning<sup>22</sup> apprentice had laid<sup>23</sup> [for] him. All the neighbours hurried to the spot, and the prisoner was not released<sup>24</sup>, until he had promised to refund<sup>25</sup> all the fines he had received.

<sup>1</sup> Polizeidiener. <sup>2</sup> die Garnison. <sup>3</sup> der Gefelle. <sup>4</sup> Feierabend.

<sup>5</sup> Meister. <sup>6</sup> eigen. <sup>7</sup> eintreten (a, e) s. <sup>8</sup> innen. <sup>9</sup> zu Selbststrafen verurtheilen. <sup>10</sup> verwarnen. <sup>11</sup> ermahnen. <sup>12</sup> ordentlich. <sup>13</sup> bestehen auf. <sup>14</sup> zuschließen (o, o) s. <sup>15</sup> das Versteck. <sup>16</sup> beanspruchen. <sup>17</sup> sich zu schaffen machen an. <sup>18</sup> verstecken. <sup>19</sup> die Geisterstunde. <sup>20</sup> wimmern. <sup>21</sup> erbärmlich. <sup>22</sup> listig. <sup>23</sup> stellen. <sup>24</sup> freigeben. <sup>25</sup> zurück erstatten.

## 20. Frederic the Great and the miller.

When Frederic the Second of Prussia built the palace of Sans-Souci, there happened to be<sup>1</sup> a mill near it<sup>2</sup>, which greatly limited<sup>3</sup> him in the execution<sup>4</sup> of his plan; and he desired to know, how much the miller<sup>5</sup> would take<sup>6</sup> for it. The miller replied, that for (seit) a long series<sup>7</sup> of years his family had possessed<sup>8</sup> the mill, which had passed<sup>9</sup> from father to (auf) son, and that he would not sell it. The king used<sup>10</sup> solicitations, offered<sup>11</sup> to build him a mill in a better place<sup>12</sup> and pay him besides any sum he might demand; but the obstinate<sup>13</sup> miller still persisted<sup>14</sup> in his determination<sup>15</sup> to preserve<sup>16</sup> the inheritance<sup>17</sup> of his ancestors. The king, irritated at his resistance<sup>18</sup>, sent for him and said in an angry tone: Why do you refuse<sup>19</sup> to sell your mill, notwithstanding all the advantages<sup>20</sup> I have offered<sup>21</sup> you? The miller repeated all his reasons<sup>22</sup>. Do you know, continued<sup>23</sup> the king, that I could take it, without giving you a farthing? Yes, replied the miller, if [it] were not [for] the chamber of justice<sup>24</sup> at Berlin. The king was extremely flattered<sup>25</sup> with this answer, which showed, that he was thought incapable<sup>26</sup> of an act of injustice<sup>27</sup>. He dismissed<sup>28</sup> the miller without further entreaty<sup>29</sup>, and changed the plan of his gardens.

<sup>1</sup> stehen (a, a). <sup>2</sup> eine Mühle in der Nähe. <sup>3</sup> hindern. <sup>4</sup> die Ausführung. <sup>5</sup> der Müller. <sup>6</sup> haben. <sup>7</sup> die Reihe. <sup>8</sup> besitzen (a, e). <sup>9</sup> kommen. <sup>10</sup> anwenden. <sup>11</sup> sich erbieten (o, o). <sup>12</sup> die Stelle. <sup>13</sup> eigensinnig. <sup>14</sup> beharren bei. <sup>15</sup> der Entschluß. <sup>16</sup> behalten. <sup>17</sup> das Erbe. <sup>18</sup> der Widerstand. <sup>19</sup> sich weigern. <sup>20</sup> der Vorteil. <sup>21</sup> anbieten (s.). <sup>22</sup> der Grund. <sup>23</sup> fortfahren (u, a) s. <sup>24</sup> das Kammergericht. <sup>25</sup> schmeicheln (dat.). <sup>26</sup> für unfähig halten (gen.). <sup>27</sup> die Ungerechtigkeit. <sup>28</sup> entlassen. <sup>29</sup> weiter in ihn bringen.

## 21. An awkward situation<sup>1</sup>.

The scene<sup>2</sup> of the following adventure<sup>3</sup> was on the low flat shores<sup>4</sup> in Hampshire, opposite the isle of Wight, the hero of it a wild fowl shooter. [Mounted] on<sup>5</sup> his

mud-pattens<sup>6</sup> he was traversing<sup>7</sup> one of the mud-land plains<sup>8</sup> in quest of ducks<sup>9</sup>; and only intent on his game<sup>10</sup>, he suddenly found, the water, which had been brought forward<sup>11</sup> with uncommon rapidity<sup>12</sup> by some particular circumstance of tide<sup>13</sup>, had made an alarming<sup>14</sup> progress<sup>15</sup> around<sup>16</sup> him. To whatever part<sup>17</sup> he ran, he found himself invested<sup>18</sup> by the tide<sup>19</sup>. A thought struck<sup>20</sup> him, as the only hope of safety<sup>21</sup>; he retired<sup>22</sup> to that part<sup>23</sup>, which was yet uncovered with water, and sticking the barrel<sup>24</sup> of his gun<sup>25</sup>, which, as a duck-gun, was very long, deep into the mud, he resolved<sup>26</sup> to hold fast<sup>27</sup> by it<sup>28</sup>, as [a] support<sup>29</sup> against the waves, and to wait<sup>30</sup> thus the ebbing of the tide<sup>31</sup>. A common tide, he had reason to believe, could not in that place, have reached above his middle<sup>32</sup>, but this was a spring tide [and] brought forward<sup>33</sup> by a strong westerly wind<sup>34</sup>. The water had now reached him, it covered the ground, on which he stood; it rippled<sup>35</sup> over his feet, it gained his knees<sup>36</sup>, his waistcoat<sup>37</sup>. Button after button was swallowed up<sup>38</sup>, till at length it advanced<sup>39</sup> over his very<sup>40</sup> shoulders. With [a] palpitating<sup>41</sup> heart, he gave himself up<sup>42</sup> for lost. Still however he held fast by his anchor<sup>43</sup>, his eye eagerly<sup>44</sup> bent in search<sup>45</sup> of some boat, which might take its course<sup>46</sup> that way<sup>47</sup>, but none appeared. A solitary<sup>48</sup> head, sometimes covered by a wave, was no object<sup>49</sup> to be descried<sup>50</sup> from the shore, at (in) the distance of half a league<sup>51</sup>. Whilst he was making up his mind<sup>52</sup> to the terrors of destruction, his attention was called<sup>53</sup> to a new object. He thought, he saw the uppermost<sup>54</sup> button of his coat begin to reappear. No mariner<sup>55</sup> could behold a cape (Rap) at sea<sup>56</sup> with greater transport<sup>56a</sup>, than he [did] the uppermost button of his coat! But the fluctuation<sup>57</sup> of the water was such<sup>58</sup>, that is was<sup>59</sup> some time before he durst venture to assure himself<sup>60</sup>, that the button was fairly<sup>61</sup> above the level<sup>62</sup> of the flood. At length however, a second button appearing at intervals<sup>63</sup>, his sensations<sup>64</sup> may be rather conceived<sup>65</sup> than described; and his joy gave him spirits<sup>66</sup> and resolution<sup>67</sup> to support<sup>68</sup> his uneasy<sup>69</sup> situation four or five hours longer, till the waters had fully<sup>70</sup> retired.

<sup>1</sup> mißliche Lage. <sup>2</sup> die Scene. <sup>3</sup> das Abenteuer. <sup>4</sup> die Rufe. <sup>5</sup> in  
<sup>6</sup> Schlammstöße. <sup>7</sup> durchschreiten (i, i). <sup>8</sup> die Fläche. <sup>9</sup> um Enten auf-  
 zufuchen. <sup>10</sup> an das Wild denken. <sup>11</sup> steigen (ie, ie). <sup>12</sup> Schnelligkeit. <sup>13</sup> be-  
 sondere Flutverhältnisse. <sup>14</sup> beunruhigen. <sup>15</sup> Fortschritte. <sup>16</sup> um — herum.  
<sup>17</sup> Richtung. <sup>18</sup> umringen. <sup>19</sup> die Flut. <sup>20</sup> einfallen (ie, a) s. <sup>21</sup> Rettung.  
<sup>22</sup> sich zurückziehen (o, o) s. <sup>23</sup> Stelle. <sup>24</sup> der Lauf. <sup>25</sup> die Klinte.  
<sup>26</sup> sich entschließen (o, o), beschließen. <sup>27</sup> sich festhalten. <sup>28</sup> damit. <sup>29</sup> zur  
 Stütze. <sup>30</sup> abwarten. <sup>31</sup> die Ebbe. <sup>32</sup> die Mitte seines Körpers. <sup>33</sup> voran  
 treiben (ie, ie). <sup>34</sup> der Westwind. <sup>35</sup> rieseln. <sup>36</sup> das Knie erreichen. <sup>37</sup> die  
 Weste. <sup>38</sup> verschlingen (a, u). <sup>39</sup> gehen. <sup>40</sup> selbst. <sup>41</sup> klopfen. <sup>42</sup> sich  
 halten. <sup>43</sup> der Anker. <sup>44</sup> begierig. <sup>45</sup> ausspähen nach. <sup>46</sup> kommen.  
<sup>47</sup> Richtung. <sup>48</sup> einzeln. <sup>49</sup> der Gegenstand. <sup>50</sup> bemerken. <sup>51</sup> Stunde.  
<sup>52</sup> sich gefast machen auf. <sup>53</sup> sich lenken auf. <sup>54</sup> oberst. <sup>55</sup> Seemann.  
<sup>56</sup> zur Sec. <sup>57</sup> das Entzücken. <sup>58</sup> die wellenförmige Bewegung. <sup>59</sup> der-  
 art. <sup>60</sup> dauern. <sup>61</sup> gewiß sein. <sup>62</sup> wirklich. <sup>63</sup> über. <sup>64</sup> zeitweise.  
<sup>65</sup> Empfindung. <sup>66</sup> begreifen. <sup>67</sup> der Mut. <sup>68</sup> Entschlossenheit. <sup>69</sup> ertragen.  
<sup>70</sup> unbecquem. <sup>71</sup> obflig.

## 22. The choice<sup>1</sup>.

A Quaker<sup>2</sup>, residing<sup>3</sup> at Paris, was waited on<sup>4</sup> by four  
 of his workmen in order to make<sup>5</sup> their compliments<sup>6</sup> and  
 to ask for<sup>7</sup> their usual new year's gifts<sup>8</sup>. Well, my friends,  
 said the Quaker, here are your gifts; choose fifteen francs,  
 or the bible. I do not know how to read, said the first,  
 so I take the fifteen francs. I can read, said the second,  
 but I have pressing wants (bringenbe Bedürfnisse). He took  
 the fifteen francs. The third also made<sup>9</sup> the same choice.  
 He now came to the last, a young lad of about thirteen  
 or fourteen. The Quaker looked at<sup>10</sup> him with an air of  
 goodness<sup>11</sup>. Will you too take these three pieces, which  
 you may obtain<sup>12</sup> at any time by your labour and industry?  
 As you say, the book is good, I will take it and read<sup>13</sup>  
 from it to my mother, replied the boy. He took the bible,  
 opened it, and found between the leaves a gold-piece of  
 forty francs. The others hung down<sup>14</sup> their heads, and the  
 Quaker told them, he was sorry, they had not made a  
 better choice.

<sup>1</sup> die Wahl. <sup>2</sup> Quäker. <sup>3</sup> wohnen. <sup>4</sup> kommen. <sup>5</sup> darbringen  
 (a, a) s. <sup>6</sup> die Gratulation. <sup>7</sup> in Empfang nehmen. <sup>8</sup> das Geschenk 1.  
<sup>9</sup> treffen (a, o). <sup>10</sup> ansehen (a, e) s. <sup>11</sup> gutmütig, wohlwollend. <sup>12</sup> ver-  
 dienen. <sup>13</sup> vorlesen. <sup>14</sup> hängen lassen (ie, a).

## 23. The pains<sup>1</sup> of idleness<sup>2</sup>.

I think, I will take a ride<sup>3</sup>, said the little Lord Linger  
 after breakfast. Bring me my boots, and let my horse be

brought to the door<sup>4</sup>. The horse was saddled<sup>5</sup>, and his Lordship's<sup>6</sup> spurs<sup>7</sup> were put on.

No, said he, I'll have my low chaise and the ponies<sup>8</sup> and take a drive<sup>9</sup> round<sup>10</sup> the park. The horse was led back, and the ponies were almost harnessed<sup>11</sup>, when his Lordship sent his valet to countermand<sup>12</sup> them. He would walk into the cornfield and see, how the new pointer<sup>13</sup> worked<sup>14</sup> (subj.).

After all<sup>15</sup>, says he, I think, I will stay at home, and play a game<sup>16</sup> or two at billiards. He played half a game, but could not make a stroke<sup>17</sup> to please him. His tutor, who was present<sup>18</sup> now, thought<sup>19</sup> it a good opportunity, to ask his Lordship, if he would read a little.

Why, I think I will<sup>20</sup>, for I am tired of doing nothing. What shall we have<sup>20</sup>? Your Lordship left off last time in one of the finest passages of the Aeneid. Suppose<sup>20a</sup> we finish it?

Well aye, but no, I had rather<sup>21</sup> go on<sup>22</sup> with Hume's history. Or suppose we do some geography?

With all my heart. The globe<sup>23</sup> is on the study<sup>24</sup> table.

They went to the study<sup>25</sup>, and the little Lord, leaning<sup>26</sup> on his elbow<sup>27</sup>, looked at the globe, then twirled<sup>27a</sup> it round two or three times and listened<sup>28</sup> patiently, while the tutor explained some of its parts<sup>29</sup>. But whilst he was in the midst of a problem<sup>30</sup>, come, said his Lordship, now [for] a little Virgil.

The book was brought<sup>31</sup>, and the pupil, with a good deal of help<sup>32</sup>, got through<sup>33</sup> twenty lines.

Well, said he, ringing the bell<sup>34</sup>, I think, we have done a good deal. Tom! bring me my bow<sup>35</sup> and arrows<sup>36</sup>.

The fine London-[made] bow in its green case<sup>37</sup> and the quiver<sup>38</sup> with all its appertenances<sup>39</sup> were brought, and his Lordship went down to the place, where the shooting butts<sup>40</sup> were erected<sup>41</sup>. He aimed<sup>42</sup> a few shafts at the target<sup>43</sup>, but not coming near it<sup>44</sup>, he shot all the remainder at random<sup>45</sup> and then ordered out<sup>46</sup> his horse.

He sauntered<sup>47</sup> with a servant at his heels<sup>48</sup> for a mile or two through the lanes<sup>49</sup>, and came just, as the clock (es) struck twelve, to a village green<sup>50</sup>, close by which<sup>51</sup>



a school was [kept]. A door flew open, and out burst<sup>53</sup> a shoal<sup>53</sup> of boys, who spread<sup>54</sup> over the green with immoderate<sup>55</sup> vociferation<sup>56</sup> and instantly began a variety<sup>57</sup> of sports. Some fell<sup>58</sup> to marbles<sup>59</sup>, some to [trap]-ball, some to leap-frog<sup>60</sup>. [In] short, not one of the whole crew, but (der nicht) was eagerly<sup>61</sup> employed<sup>62</sup>. Everything was noise, motion<sup>63</sup> and pleasure. Lord Linger riding slowly up, espied<sup>64</sup> one of his tenant's<sup>65</sup> sons, who had been formerly his play-fellow<sup>66</sup> and called him up<sup>72</sup>. Jack, said he, how do you like school? O pretty well, my Lord. What, have<sup>67</sup> you a good deal of play? O no, we have<sup>68</sup> only from twelve till two for playing and eating our dinners; and then an hour before supper. That is very little indeed. But we play heartily<sup>69</sup>, when we do play, and work, when we work. Good-bye, my Lord, it is my turn<sup>70</sup> to go in at trap<sup>71</sup>. So saying, Jack ran off. I wish, I was a schoolboy, said the little Lord to himself.

<sup>1</sup> die Qual. <sup>2</sup> Faulheit. <sup>3</sup> der Spazierritt. <sup>4</sup> vorführen. <sup>5</sup> satteln.  
<sup>6</sup> der kleine Lord. <sup>7</sup> Sporen. <sup>8</sup> Pferdchen. <sup>9</sup> die Fahrt. <sup>10</sup> durch.  
<sup>11</sup> schirren. <sup>12</sup> abbestellen. <sup>13</sup> Hühnerhund. <sup>14</sup> sich anlassen. <sup>15</sup> wenn ich  
 mir's recht überlege. <sup>16</sup> eine Partie Billard. <sup>17</sup> der Stoß. <sup>18</sup> zugegen.  
<sup>19</sup> halten. <sup>20</sup> nun ja. <sup>20a</sup> wie wäre es, wenn. <sup>21</sup> möchte lieber. <sup>22</sup> fort-  
 fahren. <sup>23</sup> der Globus. <sup>24</sup> Studiertisch. <sup>25</sup> Studierzimmer. <sup>26</sup> sich stützen.  
<sup>27</sup> der Ellbogen. <sup>27a</sup> herumdrehen. <sup>28</sup> zuhören (s.). <sup>29</sup> daran. <sup>30</sup> der  
 Satz. <sup>31</sup> herbeibringen. <sup>32</sup> Nachhülfe. <sup>33</sup> übersetzen. <sup>34</sup> schellen. <sup>35</sup> der  
 Bogen. <sup>36</sup> der Pfeil 1. <sup>37</sup> das Futteral. <sup>38</sup> der Räder. <sup>39</sup> das Zubehör.  
<sup>40</sup> der Schießstand 1. <sup>41</sup> aufstellen (s.). <sup>42</sup> abschießen (o, o) s. <sup>43</sup> die  
 Scheibe. <sup>44</sup> fehl schießen. <sup>45</sup> aufs Geratewohl. <sup>46</sup> befehlen (a, o). <sup>47</sup> schlen-  
 dern. <sup>48</sup> hinter sich. <sup>49</sup> Feldweg. <sup>50</sup> der Ager. <sup>51</sup> in dessen Nähe.  
<sup>52</sup> herausstürzen. <sup>53</sup> die Schar. <sup>54</sup> sich verbreiten. <sup>55</sup> unbändig. <sup>56</sup> das  
 Geschrei. <sup>57</sup> ihre verschiedenen. <sup>58</sup> spielen. <sup>59</sup> der Märbel. <sup>60</sup> der Frosch-  
 sprung. <sup>61</sup> eifrig. <sup>62</sup> beschäftigen. <sup>63</sup> Leben. <sup>64</sup> erblicken. <sup>65</sup> der Pächter.  
<sup>66</sup> Spielfamerad. <sup>67</sup> dürfen. <sup>68</sup> frei haben. <sup>69</sup> mit ganzer Seele. <sup>70</sup> an  
 der Reihe sein. <sup>71</sup> das Mal. <sup>72</sup> heran.

## 24. Female courage and fidelity.

A half-idiot<sup>1</sup> was employed<sup>2</sup> by a grocer<sup>3</sup>, who also sold gunpowder<sup>4</sup>. He was told on the morning of the 5<sup>th</sup> of November to go to the coffer<sup>5</sup>, where the gunpowder was kept and bring some down and put it into the drawer to supply<sup>6</sup> the consumption<sup>7</sup> of the evening. The man forgot the order<sup>8</sup>, till it grew dusk; when (dann) he took a

lighted candle<sup>9</sup> in his hand, which he inserted<sup>10</sup> in the loose<sup>11</sup> powder and, filling the measure, walked away. He could not speak intelligibly, although he understood, what was said to him; he made his meaning known<sup>11a</sup> by signs. Scarcely had he emptied<sup>12</sup> the powder into the drawer, when (so) suddenly recollecting, what he had 'done; the terrified creature<sup>13</sup> made<sup>14</sup> a terrible noise, displaying<sup>15</sup> every mark<sup>16</sup> of horror<sup>17</sup> and dismay, and soon made<sup>18</sup> his master clearly understand, that he had left a burning candle fixed in the gunpowder! The danger was so appalling<sup>19</sup>, that most of the inmates<sup>20</sup> fled; but a servant girl entreated her master, not to alarm his sick wife; and going direct to the chamber<sup>21</sup> as gently<sup>22</sup> as possible, approached the burning candle. Closing the fingers of her hand, she formed<sup>23</sup> a kind of candlestick, and lifting<sup>24</sup> the candle safely<sup>25</sup> out of the powder, returned it to her master, fainting away<sup>26</sup> the moment, she reached the shop.

<sup>1</sup> blödsinnig. <sup>2</sup> in Dienst stehen bei. <sup>3</sup> Spezereihändler. <sup>4</sup> das Schießpulver. <sup>5</sup> der Raften. <sup>6</sup> decken. <sup>7</sup> der Bedarf. <sup>8</sup> der Auftrag. <sup>9</sup> die Kerze. <sup>10</sup> stecken. <sup>11</sup> locker. <sup>11a</sup> sich verständlich machen. <sup>12</sup> schütten. <sup>13</sup> der erschrockene Mensch. <sup>14</sup> erheben (o, o). <sup>15</sup> von sich geben. <sup>16</sup> alle möglichen Zeichen. <sup>17</sup> das Entsetzen. <sup>18</sup> geben. <sup>19</sup> furchtbar. <sup>20</sup> Hausbewohner. <sup>21</sup> die Kammer. <sup>22</sup> vorsichtig. <sup>23</sup> bilden. <sup>24</sup> herausheben (o, o) s. <sup>25</sup> glücklich. <sup>26</sup> in Ohnmacht fallen.

## 25. French wit<sup>1</sup> and English common sense<sup>2</sup>.

The President<sup>3</sup> Montesquieu and Lord Chesterfield became acquainted<sup>4</sup> as they were travelling to Italy. On the road<sup>5</sup> they began to dispute about the merits<sup>7</sup> of their two nations. My (der) Lord allowed<sup>6</sup>, that the French had more wit than the English, but said, they had no common sense. The president agreed<sup>8</sup> to this, but they could not settle<sup>9</sup> the difference<sup>10</sup> between wit and common sense. Before the dispute<sup>11</sup> was ended, they arrived at Venice<sup>12</sup>. Here the president went about<sup>13</sup> every where, saw every thing, asked<sup>14</sup> questions, and talked to every one; and at night noted down his observations<sup>15</sup>.

An hour or two<sup>16</sup> after, a Frenchman, shabbily<sup>17</sup> dressed, came into his room and addressed<sup>18</sup> him thus<sup>19</sup>: Sir, I am a country-man of yours. I have lived here these twenty

years, but I have always kept up<sup>30</sup> my friendship towards (für) my country-men, and I always think<sup>31</sup> myself happy, when I have an opportunity of serving them, as [I have] (bei) you to day. You may do any thing in this country, except<sup>32</sup> meddle<sup>33</sup> with affairs of state. One thoughtless<sup>34</sup> word costs a person<sup>35</sup> his head, and you have already spoken a thousand. The state inquisitors have their eyes upon you, their spies<sup>36</sup> follow you every where, they note down<sup>37</sup> your plans, and they know, that you are going to write a book. To my certain knowledge<sup>38</sup> they intend to pay<sup>39</sup> you a visit to day or to morrow. Consider<sup>40</sup>, Sir, if you have actually written anything, that an innocent line misinterpreted<sup>41</sup> may cost your life. This is all I have to say and I now take my leave<sup>42</sup>. The only recompense which I ask<sup>43</sup> for a service, which I think of some importance<sup>44</sup>, is that if you meet me in the streets (sing.), you [will] not recognize me, and that in case it is too late to save you from being taken, you will not inform against<sup>45</sup> me. So saying, he disappeared<sup>46</sup>, leaving the president in great alarm<sup>47</sup>. His first [movement] was to run (daß er) to his secretary<sup>48</sup>, snatch<sup>49</sup> the papers and throw them into the fire. Scarcely was that done, when in came<sup>50</sup> Lord Chesterfield. He soon saw, that his friend was in trouble<sup>51</sup> and asked him, what [could] have happened<sup>52</sup>. The president related, what had happened (indic.), said that he had burnt his papers and ordered a post-chaise<sup>53</sup> to be ready (für) at three o'clock in the morning, that he might (um) quickly<sup>54</sup> leave a place<sup>55</sup>, where a longer stay<sup>56</sup> might be fatal<sup>57</sup>. Lord Chesterfield listened<sup>58</sup> calmly to all this and then said: This is all very<sup>59</sup> well, my dear president, but let us<sup>60</sup> sit down and examine<sup>61</sup> your adventure with [our heads] cool<sup>62</sup> and calm. You are joking<sup>63</sup>, said the president. It is impossible to be at ease, when one's head hangs only by (an) a thread<sup>64</sup>. But pray, said the Earl, who is this man, who has so generously exposed<sup>65</sup> himself to danger, to save you from it? This seems not very natural. He may be a Frenchman, but the love of one's country does not lead<sup>66</sup> men to travel<sup>67</sup> into dangers, which lie out of their way, especially for the sake of a person,

who is unknow to them. This man was not a friend of yours? No. Was he badly dressed? Yes, very badly. Did he ask<sup>57</sup> you for money? Not a farthing. Why that is still more extraordinary<sup>58</sup>; but whence did he learn<sup>59</sup> all that he told you? O, I do not know at all<sup>60</sup>, perhaps from the inquisitors themselves.

Absurd<sup>61</sup>, said the Earl, that council<sup>62</sup> is the most secret<sup>63</sup> in the world, and he is not the man to get near them. Perhaps he is one of their spies, said the president. Perhaps (auch) not, said the Earl; can one suppose<sup>64</sup>, (daß) a foreigner to be (subj.) a spy, and that spy clad like a beggar, while he is employed<sup>65</sup> in a calling<sup>66</sup>, for which he must be well paid; and again, that spy betrays his masters to you at the hazard<sup>67</sup> of being strangled<sup>68</sup>, if you inform<sup>69</sup> against him, or if he is suspected (man) of having assisted<sup>70</sup> you to escape. It is all a joke<sup>71</sup>, depend<sup>72</sup> upon it, my friend. What can it be then? said the president. I am thinking<sup>73</sup> about it, said the Earl.

Having puzzled<sup>74</sup> themselves to no purpose, the president still persisted<sup>75</sup> in leaving the place immediately<sup>76</sup>, when (da) Lord Chesterfield, after walking about<sup>77</sup> the room, apparently<sup>78</sup> in a deep study<sup>79</sup>, stopped<sup>80</sup>, and putting his hand to his forehead, as if a sudden<sup>81</sup> thought (etwas) had struck him, said very gravely: Yes, that must be the man, I have not the least doubt of it. What man? said the president; if you know, who he is, please tell me quickly. O yes, was the answer, I know him well enough. He was sent by one Lord Chesterfield, who wished to prove you by experience, that an ounce<sup>82</sup> of common sense is worth a hundred weight<sup>83</sup> of wit. The president never forgave him the joke.

<sup>1</sup> Geist. <sup>2</sup> der Mutterwitz. <sup>3</sup> Präsident. <sup>4</sup> bekannt mit. <sup>5</sup> unterwegs. <sup>6</sup> zugehen (s.). <sup>7</sup> das Verdienst l. <sup>8</sup> zugehen. <sup>9</sup> einig werden über. <sup>10</sup> der Unterschied l. <sup>11</sup> der Streit. <sup>12</sup> Venedig. <sup>13</sup> herum. <sup>14</sup> thun. <sup>15</sup> die Beobachtung. <sup>16</sup> ein paar. <sup>17</sup> schäbig. <sup>18</sup> anreden (s.). <sup>19</sup> folgendermaßen. <sup>20</sup> sich bewahren. <sup>21</sup> schätzen. <sup>22</sup> nur dürfen Sie nicht. <sup>23</sup> sich mischen. <sup>24</sup> unüberlegt. <sup>25</sup> jemand. <sup>26</sup> Spion l. <sup>27</sup> sich notieren. <sup>28</sup> ich weiß gewiß. <sup>29</sup> machen. <sup>30</sup> bedenken. <sup>31</sup> falsch auslegen. <sup>31a</sup> sich verabschieden. <sup>32</sup> fordern. <sup>33</sup> nicht für unwichtig halten. <sup>34</sup> verraten (ie, a). <sup>35</sup> verschwinden (a, u). <sup>36</sup> die Unruhe. <sup>37</sup> der Sekretär. <sup>38</sup> nehmen. <sup>39</sup> eintreten (a, e) s. <sup>40</sup> die Sorge. <sup>41</sup> vorfallen (subj.) s. <sup>42</sup> Postkaise.

<sup>43</sup> schleunigst. <sup>44</sup> der Ort. <sup>45</sup> das Bleiben. <sup>46</sup> unheilvoll. <sup>47</sup> anhören (s.).  
<sup>48</sup> ganz. <sup>49</sup> wir wollen. <sup>50</sup> prüfen. <sup>51</sup> kaltblütig. <sup>52</sup> schergen. <sup>53</sup> der  
 Faden. <sup>54</sup> aussetzen (s.). <sup>55</sup> verleiten. <sup>56</sup> sich begeben. <sup>57</sup> verlangen.  
<sup>58</sup> außerordentlich, sonderbar. <sup>59</sup> erfahren (u, a). <sup>60</sup> ganz und gar nicht.  
<sup>61</sup> Unsinn. <sup>62</sup> die Behörde. <sup>63</sup> geheim. <sup>64</sup> annehmen. <sup>65</sup> verwenden.  
<sup>66</sup> der Beruf, Dienst. <sup>67</sup> auf die Gefahr hin. <sup>68</sup> strangulieren. <sup>69</sup> auf-  
 treten (a, c). <sup>70</sup> beistehen (a, a) s., helfen (a, o). <sup>71</sup> der Scherz 1. <sup>72</sup> sich  
 verlassen. <sup>73</sup> nachdenken über. <sup>74</sup> sich den Kopf zerbrechen. <sup>75</sup> beistehen  
 auf (a, a). <sup>76</sup> sofort. <sup>77</sup> auf und ab. <sup>78</sup> scheinbar. <sup>79</sup> das Nachdenken.  
<sup>80</sup> still stehen. <sup>81</sup> plötzlich. <sup>82</sup> die Unge. <sup>83</sup> der Centner.

## 26. A voracious<sup>1</sup> shark<sup>2</sup>.

A terrible shark infested<sup>3</sup> the bay at the island of St. Vincent in [the] West-Indies. This shark made sad havock<sup>4</sup> among the negroes<sup>5</sup>, who were accustomed to bathe in the bay, as well as among the crews<sup>6</sup> of the vessels, which anchored<sup>7</sup> there, who not being aware<sup>8</sup> of so formidable an enemy, ventured to swim in the deep water. The terrible monster<sup>9a</sup> was called<sup>9</sup> the Blue Peter, and he usually lay hid behind a large rock, from whence he darted<sup>10</sup> with amazing<sup>11</sup> rapidity, whenever<sup>12</sup> a swimmer appeared<sup>13</sup> in the water. So dreadful<sup>14</sup> was the devastation made by Blue Peter, that the governor<sup>15</sup> of St. Vincent proclaimed<sup>16</sup> a reward, to be given (welche) to any one, who should destroy<sup>17</sup> him; and if Blue Peter should be destroyed by a slave, that slave with his wife and children was to be free for ever. The governor also prohibited swimming in that part of the bay, where the shark was usually seen. There is frequently a disposition<sup>18</sup> among (bei) young people to go<sup>19</sup> into unnecessary danger, and one of the sons of a gentleman, who lived near the bay, was determined<sup>20</sup> in defiance<sup>21</sup> of Blue Peter to go into the water. [It was] in vain, [that] his elder brother tried to persuade<sup>22</sup> him to keep on shore<sup>23</sup>, for this only rendered him more obstinate<sup>24</sup>. He pulled off<sup>25</sup> his clothes and leaped into the water. He had swum a considerable<sup>26</sup> distance<sup>27</sup>, when (da) he suddenly turned round and made for the shore<sup>28</sup>. His brother, who had watched<sup>29</sup> him ever since<sup>30</sup>, saw with horror, that Blue Peter had darted forward<sup>31</sup> from his place of concealment (Versteck) in pursuit<sup>32</sup> of his prey<sup>33</sup>. He gave<sup>34</sup> a loud shriek, and Mungo, a faithful black servant, the mo-

ment he was aware of the danger of his young master, sprang forward<sup>35</sup> in the bay for his rescue. Mungo reached the boy, before he was injured<sup>36</sup>, but Blue Peter openend his ravenous<sup>37</sup> jaws<sup>38</sup>, and the faithful slave could not defend<sup>39</sup> his young master from so terrible an attack<sup>40</sup>, for the shark bit off his arm just above the elbow. Mungo swam forward with the wounded boy in his arms, and had almost gone to<sup>41</sup> land, when Blue Peter again rushed<sup>42</sup> after his prey, and seizing<sup>43</sup> Mungo by the leg<sup>44</sup>, he severed<sup>45</sup> it from the body<sup>46</sup> at (mit) one bit. Nothing could exceed<sup>47</sup> the horror of the spectators<sup>48</sup>, who had been drawn<sup>49</sup> to the shore. Assistance was given<sup>50</sup>, and Mungo and his young master were rescued<sup>51</sup> from the shark. When the boy got better, his father did not fail<sup>52</sup> to impress on his mind<sup>53</sup> the sin of disobedience, and told him, that he might have had to answer<sup>54</sup> for the life of their poor slave, who even as it was (auđ jo) would remain a cripple all his days<sup>55</sup>. The loss of his own arm was a sad calamity<sup>56</sup>. Poor Mungo at last got well<sup>57</sup> and stumped<sup>58</sup> about with a wooden leg. Blue Peter continued his devastations in the bay, but Mungo had not forgotten him, and he was determined to make him pay for<sup>59</sup> the injuries<sup>60</sup> he had done<sup>61</sup> to his young master and himself. Mungo set<sup>62</sup> to work, and when he had completed<sup>63</sup> his plan, he told his master, that he was going to kill Blue Peter. The news spread<sup>64</sup> throughout the island, that Munko intended to attack<sup>65</sup> Blue Peter on the following morning, and when the time arrived, the shore was crowded<sup>66</sup> with spectators. Mungo made his appearance<sup>67</sup> with a large coil<sup>68</sup> of ropes<sup>69</sup> and a cutlass<sup>70</sup>, while a friend of his rolled a cask<sup>71</sup> towards<sup>72</sup> the bay. The cask was stuck<sup>73</sup> over the inside<sup>74</sup> with large nails<sup>75</sup> and iron hooks<sup>76</sup>, on which Mungo had placed<sup>77</sup> large pieces of pork<sup>78</sup>, that (um) the shark might be tempted<sup>79</sup> to put his head into the cask. The cask was made fast<sup>80</sup> to a boat, into which Mungo had stepped, armed with a cutlass, saying, he was going to give<sup>81</sup> Massa Blue Peter a bit of breakfast. [For] a long time, Mungo rowed around<sup>82</sup> the rock, without seeing his enemy, who at last rushed forward and dashed<sup>83</sup> his head into the cask. Mungo seized his

cutlass and attacked the shark, who, in<sup>84</sup> attempting to get his head out of the cask, was caught<sup>85</sup> by the hooks. Mungo lost not a moment, but cut away<sup>86</sup> at Blue Peter and plunged<sup>87</sup> his cutlass into his body so often, that he overcame<sup>88</sup> him. Then taking up his oars<sup>89</sup>, he rowed to the shore amid the acclamations<sup>90</sup> of the multitude<sup>91</sup>. It was a strange<sup>92</sup> sight<sup>93</sup> to see the wooden legged black tugging<sup>94</sup> at the oars, dragging along<sup>95</sup> his old enemy, Blue Peter, who reddened<sup>96</sup> the billows with his blood.

Many white men took<sup>97</sup> Mungo [by] the hand, when he landed, calling him a brave fellow, and his curly-headed country-men were not [a] little proud, that Blue Peter had been killed by a negro. Mungo grinned<sup>98</sup> with delight<sup>99</sup> at the success<sup>100</sup> of his enterprise, and the loss of his leg was forgotten in (über) the pleasure<sup>99</sup>, he derived<sup>101</sup> from the feat<sup>102</sup> he had performed<sup>103</sup>. That day was a day of rejoicing<sup>99</sup>, for not only was Mango made<sup>104</sup> free, but a general holiday<sup>105</sup> was given to the slaves to commemorate<sup>106</sup> the death of their rapacious<sup>107</sup> enemy Blue Peter.

<sup>1</sup> gefräßig. <sup>2</sup> der Haifisch. <sup>3</sup> verheeren. <sup>4</sup> arge Verheerungen anrichten. <sup>5</sup> der Reger. <sup>6</sup> die Mannschaft. <sup>7</sup> anfern. <sup>8</sup> nichts wissen. <sup>9a</sup> das Ungeheuer. <sup>9</sup> nennen (a, a). <sup>10</sup> hervorstieken (o, o). <sup>11</sup> erstaunlich. <sup>12</sup> so oft. <sup>13</sup> erscheinen. <sup>14</sup> schrecklich. <sup>15</sup> der Gouverneur. <sup>16</sup> versprechen. <sup>17</sup> töten. <sup>18</sup> die Gerechtigkeit. <sup>19</sup> sich begeben. <sup>20</sup> beschließen (o, o). <sup>21</sup> trotz. <sup>22</sup> überreden. <sup>23</sup> Land. <sup>24</sup> um so eigenfinniger. <sup>25</sup> ausgleichen. (o, o) s. <sup>26</sup> beträchtlich. <sup>27</sup> Strecke. <sup>28</sup> um — zu schwimmen. <sup>29</sup> im Auge behalten. <sup>30</sup> die ganze Zeit. <sup>31</sup> hervorstieken. <sup>32</sup> erhaschen. <sup>33</sup> Beute. <sup>34</sup> ausstoßen (ie, o) s. <sup>35</sup> sich stürzen. <sup>36</sup> unverletzt. <sup>37</sup> gierig. <sup>38</sup> der Rachen. <sup>39</sup> beschützen gegen. <sup>40</sup> der Angriff. <sup>41</sup> erreichen. <sup>42</sup> sich losstürzen. <sup>43</sup> fassen. <sup>44</sup> das Wein l. <sup>45</sup> trennen. <sup>46</sup> der Körper. <sup>47</sup> groß sein. <sup>48</sup> der Zuschauer. <sup>49</sup> herbeieilen. <sup>50</sup> leisten. <sup>51</sup> entreißen (i, i) dat. <sup>52</sup> unterlassen. <sup>53</sup> ernstlich vorhalten (ie, ie) s. <sup>54</sup> verantwortlich werden. <sup>55</sup> sein Leben lang. <sup>56</sup> arges Unglück. <sup>57</sup> wieder genesen (a, e). <sup>58</sup> humpeln. <sup>59</sup> sich rächen an. <sup>60</sup> das Unheil. <sup>61</sup> zufügen (s.). <sup>62</sup> sich machen an. <sup>63</sup> fertig. <sup>64</sup> sich verbreiten. <sup>65</sup> angreifen (i, i) s. <sup>66</sup> gedrängt voll. <sup>67</sup> erscheinen (ie, ie). <sup>68</sup> die Rolle. <sup>69</sup> das Seil. <sup>70</sup> der Hirschkäfer. <sup>71</sup> das Faß. <sup>72</sup> nach — hin. <sup>73</sup> beschlagen. <sup>74</sup> inwendig. <sup>75</sup> der Nagel. <sup>76</sup> der Angelhaken. <sup>77</sup> stecken. <sup>78</sup> Schweinefleisch. <sup>79</sup> veranlassen. <sup>80</sup> befestigen. <sup>81</sup> bringen. <sup>82</sup> um — herum. <sup>83</sup> hineinfahren. <sup>84</sup> als er. <sup>85</sup> fassen. <sup>86</sup> losstrecken auf (a, o). <sup>87</sup> stoßen (ie, o). <sup>88</sup> überwältigen. <sup>89</sup> das Ruder. <sup>90</sup> der Beifallsruf l. <sup>91</sup> die Menge. <sup>92</sup> seltsam. <sup>93</sup> der Anblick. <sup>94</sup> führen. <sup>95</sup> hinter sich her schleppen. <sup>96</sup> röten. <sup>97</sup> geben. <sup>98</sup> grinsen. <sup>99</sup> vor Freude. <sup>100</sup> der Erfolg. <sup>101</sup> machen. <sup>102</sup> die That. <sup>103</sup> vollbringen. <sup>104</sup> freigeben. <sup>105</sup> der Feiertag. <sup>106</sup> zum Andenken. <sup>107</sup> raubgierig.

## 80. The return home<sup>1</sup>.

Play<sup>2</sup> by A. Lewald.

Dramatis personae.

Master<sup>3</sup> Spahn, a joiner.

His wife.

A traveller.

Anna.

A child.

### First Scene.

(Master Spahn and his wife at table, having just done supper.)

M. Sp. (wipes<sup>4</sup> his mouth and pushes<sup>5</sup> back his chair):  
Thank God (fei).

W.: Amen! (She rises and carries away<sup>6</sup> the things<sup>7</sup>, then returns, takes a knife and the bread, and is just beginning to cut some.) Will you have (trinken) a glass by way of dessert<sup>8</sup>?

M. Sp.: No, thank [you], old [woman]. I have had enough<sup>9</sup>.

W. (carries the bread away and returns): I wonder, if our poor Henry<sup>10</sup> can say the same<sup>11</sup>.

M. Sp. (crossly<sup>12</sup>): How, what?

W. (with emotion<sup>13</sup>): I have had enough.

M. Sp.: Always thinking (infin.) of that boy!

W.: How can I help it<sup>14</sup>? Every time I lie down satisfied<sup>15</sup>, I think, that perhaps he is not so well off<sup>16</sup>.

M. Sp.: He would [have] it so, you know.

W. (dries her eyes with her apron).

M. Sp.: Do not cry, wife. It is the duty of a good child to make his parents comfortable<sup>17</sup> in their old age, and he has forsaken us. And why? Because he was not satisfied with the lot, which he was born to. How foolish to be always looking upwards<sup>18</sup> instead of minding<sup>19</sup> the path, we have to follow<sup>19a</sup>! The consequence<sup>20</sup> is, that one stumbles<sup>21</sup>, falls, and often can not rise again.

W.: You are too harsh, dear husband. Our poor boy was not born to (be) a mechanic<sup>22</sup>.

M. Sp.: There (haben wir's) again! How you talk! Not born to be a mechanic? And to what was he then



born? To be a minister [of state] perhaps? Yes, yes, it has certainly happened before now<sup>22a</sup>, that the sons of honest mechanics have risen to be<sup>23</sup> ministers and to rule a country, while their fathers were continuing to boil glue<sup>24</sup> or to manufacture<sup>25</sup> with the pitched thread<sup>26</sup>. But such cases are rare and not dependent on our will; something else is necessary for it, which we don't understand.

W.: Ah, but our poor Henry never thought of being a minister, he only wanted to be something better than a mechanic.

M. Sp.: The most sensible<sup>27</sup> [thing], he could have done, would have been to be my apprentice<sup>28</sup>. A joiner's trade<sup>29</sup> is a very profitable<sup>30</sup> [one], and a good joiner-master, if he understands his business, will hold his ground<sup>31</sup> in spite of bunglers<sup>32</sup> and dabblers<sup>33</sup>, in spite of speculants and furniture-manufacturers. If he had really a dislike<sup>34</sup> to it, why, there were many other trades for a man, who has sense in his head<sup>27</sup> and knows how to use his arms and legs. I myself do not like<sup>35</sup> any other trade better than a joiner's, however lucrative<sup>30</sup> it may be. But he might have made<sup>36</sup> his own (the) choice; there was neighbour Böhme, the shoemaker, his godfather<sup>37</sup> Koch, the carpenter<sup>38</sup>, cousin Müller, the potter<sup>39</sup>; they all would have liked to take my son as apprentice<sup>28</sup>, if he had only been willing, and would have treated<sup>40</sup> him well.

W.: He was clever<sup>41</sup> and wanted to become a professional man<sup>42</sup>.

M. Sp.: He was always up to foolish tricks<sup>43</sup>, loitering about<sup>44</sup> and dawdling away<sup>45</sup> his time; and he continued to do<sup>46</sup> so, until he ran away; and he will have done just the same abroad, unless trouble (Not) has cured him; for that is the only hope; trouble teaches [one] to pray.

W.: Not so, dear husband; too much trouble, when underserved, leads to despair, and that, I fear, will be the fate<sup>47</sup> of our poor Henry. Ah, what a pity<sup>48</sup>, (daß) we are so poor! If we had only been able to support him, Henry would have given us as much joy, as he has caused us sorrow<sup>49</sup>. All depends<sup>50</sup> on good fortune; if one is lucky,

people will soon call that right, which before seemed imprudent and foolish. Ah, if we only were better off (bran)!

M. Sp.: Woman, do not be ungrateful. Are we badly off, as long as we are satisfied, and do not aspire to more<sup>51</sup> than we ought? No, Henry made his own choice, and as one makes one's bed<sup>52</sup>, so one [must] lies [upon it]. But why [must we] always talk about the boy?

W.: Is he not our child?

M. Sp.: Is our life to be rendered miserable<sup>53</sup> by<sup>53a</sup> him? (Sollen wir.) We are healthy and contented amid<sup>54</sup> our poverty; why should the boy always embitter<sup>55</sup> our minds<sup>55a</sup>? It will end (damit), by our quarelling<sup>56</sup> (daß wir) with each other, which God forbid<sup>57</sup>! No, I will put all thoughts about him out of my head<sup>57a</sup>; he considered<sup>58</sup> his father's trade not good enough for him; indeed, he scorned<sup>59</sup> every kind of trade, and so I will give him up. Now (da) again it has put<sup>60</sup> me in an ill humour<sup>61</sup>. (He rises, takes some money out of his pocket and counts it.) I will just go over the way<sup>62</sup> to our neighbour, if it is enough, and drink a pint<sup>63</sup> to drive away the blue devils<sup>61</sup>.

W.: Yes, do (that) dear husband. You scarcely ever<sup>64</sup> give yourself a little comfort<sup>65</sup> in that way<sup>66</sup>, and yet you need<sup>67</sup> it enough.

M. Sp. (pulls off<sup>68</sup> his jacket and hangs it over the chair, takes down his coat from the nail, and is putting it on<sup>69</sup>, when some one knocks).

W. (who has lighted a small candle): I fancy some (es) knocked. (Knocking again, es.)

M. Sp. ([standing] in the same attitude<sup>70</sup>, listening<sup>71</sup> with his coat half on): Yes, indeed, some one knocks. Come in!

(The wife shields<sup>72</sup> the light with her hand, and holds it<sup>73</sup> towards the person entering<sup>74</sup>. Master Spahn puts on his coat.)

<sup>1</sup> die Heimkehr. <sup>2</sup> das Schauspiel. <sup>3</sup> Meister. <sup>4</sup> abweisen (s.).  
<sup>5</sup> rücken. <sup>6</sup> abtragen (u, a) s. <sup>7</sup> die Sache. <sup>8</sup> zum Nachtsch. <sup>9</sup> satt sein.  
<sup>10</sup> Heirath. <sup>11</sup> daß auch. <sup>12</sup> verdrücklich. <sup>13</sup> die Rührung. <sup>14</sup> anders.  
<sup>15</sup> gestärkt. <sup>16</sup> gut gehen (dat.). <sup>17</sup> erleichtern. <sup>18</sup> die Blide nach oben  
richten. <sup>19</sup> schauen auf. <sup>19a</sup> gehen. <sup>20</sup> die Folge. <sup>21</sup> stolpern. <sup>22</sup> das  
Handwerk. <sup>22a</sup> schon mehr. <sup>23</sup> werden. <sup>24</sup> der Reim. <sup>25</sup> hantieren.  
<sup>26</sup> der Bedröht. <sup>27</sup> vernünftig. <sup>28</sup> in die Lehre gehen. <sup>29</sup> Schreinerei.  
<sup>30</sup> einträglich. <sup>31</sup> sich behaupten. <sup>32</sup> Stümper. <sup>33</sup> Pfücher. <sup>34</sup> der Wider-  
willen. <sup>35</sup> gefallen (dat.). <sup>36</sup> die Wahl haben. <sup>37</sup> der Pate. <sup>38</sup> Zimmer-

mann. <sup>39</sup> Opfer. <sup>40</sup> behandeln. <sup>41</sup> geſcheit. <sup>42</sup> ſtudieren. <sup>43</sup> dummer Streich. <sup>44</sup> herumſchlendern. <sup>45</sup> verändeln. <sup>46</sup> es machen. <sup>47</sup> das Schickſal. <sup>48</sup> wie ſchade. <sup>49</sup> der Kummer. <sup>50</sup> ankommen auf. <sup>51</sup> höher ſtreben. <sup>52</sup> ſich betten. <sup>53</sup> ſich unglücklich machen. <sup>54a</sup> wegen. <sup>54</sup> bei. <sup>55</sup> verbittern. <sup>56a</sup> das Gemüt (ſing.). <sup>56</sup> im Unfrieden leben. <sup>57</sup> verhüte. <sup>57a</sup> aus dem Sinn ſchlagen. <sup>58</sup> halten für. <sup>59</sup> verachten. <sup>60</sup> verſehen. <sup>61</sup> die böſe Laune. <sup>62</sup> hinüber. <sup>63</sup> der Schoppen. <sup>64</sup> faſt wie. <sup>65</sup> ſich ein Gütchen anthun. <sup>66</sup> dieſer Art. <sup>67</sup> nötig haben. <sup>68</sup> ausziehen (s.). <sup>69</sup> anziehen (s.). <sup>70</sup> die Stellung. <sup>71</sup> hören. <sup>72</sup> halten vor. <sup>73</sup> entgegen leuchten. <sup>74</sup> der Eintretende.

Second scene.

(The former<sup>1</sup>. A traveller.)

Trav.: Good evening. Is this (bin ich hier recht bei) joiner Spahn?

Sp.: I am he (der). What do you want?

T.: I am a stranger, a traveller passing through, and I want some boxes for packing<sup>2</sup>, which I came (möchte) to order here.

W. (places<sup>3</sup> a chair [for] him and wipes it): Will not the Gentleman take a seat<sup>4</sup>?

T.: Thank you (sits down).

Sp.: I do not like to refuse<sup>5</sup> any (a) work; but if you are in a hurry<sup>6</sup> about<sup>7</sup> the boxes, I am sorry, that I can not undertake<sup>8</sup> them. There in the workshop<sup>9</sup> stands a coffin<sup>10</sup>, and although he<sup>11</sup>, who wants it, is quiet and still enough, yet he is in a hurry<sup>12</sup>; for the funeral<sup>13</sup> can not be put off<sup>14</sup>. I have no journeymen<sup>50</sup>, and work alone.

T.: I am very sorry for it (daß that).

Sp.: There is nothing lost<sup>15</sup>, however. We have master-joiners enough in the town, who carry on<sup>16</sup> a large business, and will be able to serve<sup>17</sup> the gentleman fast enough.

T.: That is not quite the same<sup>18</sup> to me, though you may think so. I wish very [much], that you [should] make the boxes [for] me.

Sp. (takes his hat): But if I can not.

T.: You are going out? And so late? Perhaps to carry home<sup>19</sup> some (a) work?

Sp.: Not so<sup>20</sup>. But what a question? You live, I suppose<sup>21</sup> a long way off<sup>22</sup>.

T.: Well yes. I am an American.

W.: Ah, mercy on me<sup>28</sup>! So far off, and you speak German so well.

T.: My parents were German emigrants.

Sp.: Well then, Sir, you ought to know, where the master goes to of [an] evening, when he has done his work<sup>24</sup>. He goes to drink a glass, to pluck up his spirits<sup>25</sup>, and to strengthen himself for the next day, when he will have enough to do again and perhaps too much.

T.: If you are only going out to drink a glass, we might as well drink a bottle together.

Sp.: Certainly, if the company there be not too bad for you, Sir.

T.: I suppose, the master will scarcely go into bad company.

Sp.: That is<sup>26</sup> as one takes it. The company is all right for me. They are principally<sup>27</sup> of my own calling<sup>28</sup> with<sup>29</sup> a few [belonging to] (von) other trades. No great people among them, however (doch).

T.: The company is good enough for me too. But I wish, your good wife would drink with us also, and besides I have many things to talk of<sup>30</sup>, which would be better to be said<sup>31</sup> in this place<sup>32</sup> than in the public house<sup>33</sup>. So if it is agreeable to you — (He takes from his pocket-book<sup>34</sup> a card<sup>35</sup> and gives it to the woman.)

Sp. (interrupting him): I [will] not allow<sup>36</sup> that. If the gentleman wishes to take a glass with me, I have no objection<sup>37</sup>; but he need (Sic dürfen) not treat<sup>38</sup> me. Here, wife, is the money that I meant<sup>39</sup> to spend, and now fetch two pints (Schoppen).

T.: But your wife?

W.: I am not used to wine; it gets<sup>40</sup> into my head.

T.: [I will have] nothing [to do]<sup>41</sup> with the two pints, keep your money, to (unb) treat me another time. But carry this card with my name to the wine-merchant at the corner<sup>42</sup> and ask for<sup>43</sup> two bottles of the wine, that I bought of (bei) him. You must know, that I am in wine-trade<sup>44</sup>, and have bought some Rhenish wine for America; the many Germans there like to drink the wine of their own county, though it is somewhat dear. We will just

taste it, and you shall tell me, if it will not do credit<sup>45</sup> to my selection<sup>46</sup> among (bei) your country-men in the new world.

Sp.: Well, well, so let it be<sup>47</sup>. Go, wife, and do as the gentleman says.

W. (takes a basket<sup>48</sup> and lights<sup>49</sup> a lantern): So that (damit) I do not break the bottles with the precious wine. I shall soon return. (She goes out.)

<sup>1</sup> Vorige. <sup>2</sup> die Packfiste. <sup>3</sup> hinsetzen. <sup>4</sup> Platz nehmen, sich setzen.  
<sup>5</sup> abweisen (s.). <sup>6</sup> eilig sein. <sup>7</sup> mit. <sup>8</sup> übernehmen. <sup>9</sup> die Verhältnisse.  
<sup>10</sup> der Sarg 1. <sup>11</sup> derjenige. <sup>12</sup> Gile haben. <sup>13</sup> Verdringung. <sup>14</sup> auf-  
 schieben (o. o) s. <sup>15</sup> das hat nichts zu sagen. <sup>16</sup> haben. <sup>17</sup> bedienen.  
<sup>18</sup> gleichgültig. <sup>19</sup> fort. <sup>20</sup> das nicht. <sup>21</sup> vermuten. <sup>22</sup> weit weg von hier.  
<sup>23</sup> du liebe Zeit. <sup>24</sup> Feierabend machen. <sup>25</sup> sich die Grillen vertreiben.  
<sup>26</sup> kommt darauf an. <sup>27</sup> hauptsächlich. <sup>28</sup> Geschäft. <sup>29</sup> neß. <sup>30</sup> besprechen.  
<sup>31</sup> sich besprechen lassen. <sup>32</sup> hier. <sup>33</sup> Wirtshaus. <sup>34</sup> Briefstache. <sup>35</sup> Karte.  
<sup>36</sup> zugeben (s.). <sup>37</sup> nichts dagegen. <sup>38</sup> traktieren. <sup>39</sup> vorhaben (s.).  
<sup>40</sup> steigen. <sup>41</sup> nichts mit. <sup>42</sup> die Ede. <sup>43</sup> sich geben lassen. <sup>44</sup> Wein-  
 händler sein. <sup>45</sup> Ehre machen. <sup>46</sup> die Wahl. <sup>47</sup> dann lasse ich's gelten.  
<sup>48</sup> der Korb. <sup>49</sup> anzünden (s.). <sup>50</sup> Gefelle 4.

### Third scene.

(The former without the woman.)

T.: It is a pity, your business is not more extensive<sup>1</sup>, for then we might have dealings<sup>2</sup> together. I could send you foreign wood, particularly mahogany<sup>3</sup>, cheap, if you chose<sup>4</sup> to take<sup>5</sup> it direct from me. What do people<sup>6</sup> pay now for mahogany in logs<sup>7</sup>?

Sp.: Good heaven! How can I know (that)? Mahogany so seldom comes in my way<sup>7a</sup>; scarcely ever except indeed<sup>8</sup> when some other joiner has too much work [on hand], and then he [will] give<sup>9</sup> me a job<sup>10</sup> and supply<sup>11</sup> me with a piece of veneer<sup>12</sup>, just as much as I want. If you have a mind for any such speculation<sup>13</sup>, you must apply<sup>14</sup> to some of the principal<sup>15</sup> masters, who have plenty of apprentices (Arbeiter).

T.: But how is<sup>16</sup> it then, that you keep none?

Sp.: Why! the work, that I can get, I can do alone. I had nothing and my wife very little, when I married her. That little was spent<sup>17</sup> in gaining my mastership<sup>18</sup>

and in settling myself<sup>19</sup>, and I began, so to speak<sup>20</sup>, with nothing. Work<sup>21</sup> came slowly. I was obliged to pay dearly [for] the wood in retail<sup>22</sup>, and was often very glad<sup>23</sup> to work for the principal masters, who took the best profit<sup>24</sup> for themselves and paid me little enough. And in this way<sup>25</sup> it is not possible to get on<sup>26</sup> quickly.

T.: But why did you not try (with) something else?

Sp.: What could I try? It (daß) may be the case with you in the new world, as you call it; people there may have some chance<sup>27</sup> of getting<sup>28</sup> what they try for<sup>29</sup>; but in the old world everything is taken up<sup>30</sup>, every one has his [appointed] portion meted<sup>31</sup> to him, and can do no more<sup>32</sup>. This has its good side also. Struggling and striving<sup>33</sup> only brings disquiet<sup>34</sup> to [one's] mind, and actual<sup>35</sup> possession can never be really<sup>36</sup> enjoyed (man); but if we stick<sup>37</sup> to which we were bred<sup>38</sup>, we are inwardly<sup>39</sup> contented, my common sense tells me that.

T.: And what do you call actually possess?

Sp.: Besides my tools<sup>40</sup>, one suit of Sunday clothes<sup>41</sup>, and what you see here, I actually possess nothing. But I have no debts. The wood, that I want for my work, I take on credit, it is true, but as soon as I get payment<sup>42</sup> for my work, I discharge<sup>43</sup> my debt. That, however, is not the thing<sup>44</sup>; my happiness lies in my conscience<sup>45</sup>, and in the inward<sup>46</sup> freedom, which arises<sup>47</sup> from it. See, Sir, that is a happiness, which I would not exchange<sup>48</sup> with any<sup>49</sup> other in the world.

<sup>1</sup> bedeutend. <sup>2</sup> Geschäfte machen. <sup>3</sup> Mahagoni. <sup>4</sup> wollen. <sup>5</sup> beziehen. <sup>6</sup> man. <sup>7</sup> der Block l. <sup>7a</sup> vor. <sup>8</sup> höchstens. <sup>9</sup> zuweisen (ie, ie) s. <sup>10</sup> etwas davon. <sup>11</sup> versehen. <sup>12</sup> Furnierholz. <sup>13</sup> das Geschäft. <sup>14</sup> sich wenden. <sup>15</sup> groß. <sup>16</sup> kommt. <sup>17</sup> drauf gehen. <sup>18</sup> um Meister zu werden. <sup>19</sup> sich einrichten. <sup>20</sup> sagen. <sup>21</sup> die Kundschaft. <sup>22</sup> im kleinen. <sup>23</sup> froh. <sup>24</sup> der Hauptnugen. <sup>25</sup> auf diese Weise. <sup>26</sup> vorankommen (s.). <sup>27</sup> die Aussicht. <sup>28</sup> erlangen. <sup>29</sup> erstreben. <sup>30</sup> vergeben. <sup>31</sup> beschieden. <sup>32</sup> darüber hinaus. <sup>33</sup> Greifen und Fassen. <sup>34</sup> Unruhe. <sup>35</sup> wirklich. <sup>36</sup> recht. <sup>37</sup> bleiben bei. <sup>38</sup> erlernen. <sup>39</sup> innerlich. <sup>40</sup> das Handwerkszeug. <sup>41</sup> der Anzug. <sup>42</sup> Zahlung. <sup>43</sup> bezahlen. <sup>44</sup> das alles ist es nicht. <sup>45</sup> das Gewissen. <sup>46</sup> innere. <sup>47</sup> entspringen aus. <sup>48</sup> vertauschen. <sup>49</sup> irgend ein.

Fourth scene.

[The former. The wife (places her basket on the floor<sup>1</sup>, takes out of it two bottles of wine, wipes them with her apron and places them carefully<sup>2</sup> on the table).]

W. (while she is thus occupied): The wine-merchant sends his compliments<sup>3</sup> and wishes (lâßt) you a good evening. He knows me by sight<sup>4</sup> because I often pass<sup>5</sup> by his house, and he asked me, if I was waiting on<sup>6</sup> the strange gentleman. At first, indeed, I did not know how (was) to answer, but truth, thought I, is always the best. He was not a little astonished and would scarcely believe me. (She places two glasses between the bottles while speaking.)

T. (remarking this): Well, and for the good woman?

W.: Ah! I am not accustomed to that. I will taste<sup>7</sup> it out of my husband's glass.

Sp.: Why are you ashamed to speak it right<sup>8</sup> out? Well then, we have only two glasses. Once yes, once we had another, then<sup>9</sup> a third [person] sat at the table with us.

T.: An apprentice, I suppose.

W. (in a low tone<sup>10</sup>): Ah no, he means our son.

T.: Well, fetch this glass.

W.: It was (ist) broken long ago<sup>11</sup>.

Sp. (as if wishing to give another turn<sup>12</sup> to the conversation<sup>13</sup>): There are actually labels<sup>14</sup> on the bottles, that must be something first rate<sup>15</sup>.

T.: And why did you say (sagst) your son's glass was broken?

W.: It was a present from his godfather, engraven<sup>16</sup> with the letter H. (darauf). Our son drank out of it, as long as he was with us, but after he had left us —

Sp.: I threw it on the floor, and it broke.

T.: Pardon [me]<sup>16a</sup>! The remembrance of your son seems to awaken<sup>17</sup> old griefs. But come, let us be merry<sup>18</sup>. (Pours out<sup>19</sup> the wine.) To your [good] health. (Clinks<sup>20</sup> with the old man.) No, really that [will] not do<sup>21</sup>. Your wife must join us<sup>22</sup>.

Sp.: Well then, fetch your coffee-cup.

W.: (The) coffee-cup, husband?

Sp.: It [will] not be desecrated<sup>23</sup> by this good wine.

W.: No, but is it proper manners<sup>24</sup> (auch)?

T.: Now without ceremony<sup>25</sup>.

W. [fetches the cup and holds it [for] the traveller (hin)]: Oh, it runs over.

T. (lifts his glass): To your good health!

W. (in reply<sup>26</sup>): Heaven send<sup>27</sup> you blessings and [good] luck.

T.: Amen. (He places a chair for the woman. She sits down.)

Sp. (tasting): It is Rhine-wine, I can tell that, but I should also like to know, how you call it. For when you know, what you drink, you fancy, it tastes<sup>28</sup> better.

T.: It is Steinberger.

Sp.: That costs money! I know very well, but that is no business of mine<sup>29</sup>.

T. (again filling the glasses): What do you say to what I am about<sup>30</sup> to propose; while we are so cheerful<sup>31</sup>, should we not think of those who are less so? To the better luck<sup>32</sup> of the unfortunate, the poor, and the forsaken, and may their troubles<sup>33</sup> soon come to<sup>34</sup> an end! (Lifts his glass.)

W. (quickly lifting her cup, with emotion): To their better luck!

T.: Well, and the master?

Sp.: I do not know, whether we should drink to the life of the unhappy. Is not death their best consolation?

T.: Well, good man, it is double misery to depart<sup>35</sup> from this life in the midst of troubles<sup>36</sup>, without receiving any compensation<sup>36</sup> for them. No, no, long life is the best for the wretched<sup>37</sup>; every thing in the end is made even in the balance<sup>38</sup>, and a sudden unlooked-for death alone can destroy this beautiful equilibrium<sup>38</sup>. So we will wish the wretched a long life, that the fool<sup>39</sup> may learn wisdom<sup>40</sup>, the criminal be reformed<sup>41</sup> and the sufferer<sup>42</sup> find a balsam for his pains<sup>43</sup>.

W.: You speak so comfortingly<sup>44</sup>.

Sp.: You are right. Here, I agree with you<sup>45</sup>; may the unfortunate live, to experience<sup>46</sup> a happy end to their sorrows<sup>45</sup>.

W.: That is right, husband. You know, whom I thought of.



Sp.: Well, I say also<sup>47</sup>. (Drinks with his wife.) To his health!

W.: To our Henry's good luck<sup>48</sup>!

Sp.: And may he, if still living, acknowledge<sup>48</sup> his past errors.

W.: Oh, if he would only return to us. We would receive him as loving parents.

T.: Good woman! Your wish may perhaps one day be gratified<sup>49</sup>; providence often leads men by strange paths<sup>50</sup> to the appointed goal<sup>51</sup>. I, whom you now see (as) a rich man, the free citizen<sup>52</sup> of a powerful state, respected and looked up to<sup>53</sup>, with wife<sup>54</sup> and child, have attained<sup>55</sup> all this in the most wonderful<sup>56</sup> manner. [It was] not by my own industry or hard striving<sup>57</sup> towards a fixed aim<sup>58</sup> [that] I became (zum) the happiest of men. — I wasted<sup>59</sup> my youth, I never thought of exerting<sup>60</sup> my powers, I learned nothing. I was idle and proud and looked with envy on the career<sup>61</sup> of other men, but I never considered<sup>62</sup>, how hard<sup>63</sup> they had worked for the attainment of their desires. Thence sprang<sup>64</sup> ill humour<sup>65</sup>, spite<sup>66</sup> against the world and my fellow-beings<sup>67</sup>. I only saw in them prosperous ones, whom a blind chance<sup>68</sup> had favoured<sup>69</sup>, while it had denied<sup>70</sup> every thing to others. Had I only been less cowardly and undecided<sup>71</sup>, I should have rid myself of life<sup>72</sup>, that was such a burden<sup>73</sup>. But this craven<sup>74</sup> irresolution<sup>71</sup> saved me; fortunately<sup>75</sup> saved me, for I was destined<sup>76</sup> to come to my senses<sup>77</sup> and see better times. But you do not drink; take your glass.

Sp.: To (auf) your future<sup>78</sup> good luck, Sir! .

W.: With all my heart. But tell us your story to the end. (They drink together.)

T.: I went abroad at last. An inward disquiet had seized<sup>79</sup> [on] me, which I could not overcome<sup>80</sup>. I wandered about, necessity compelled<sup>81</sup> me to adopt<sup>82</sup> various modes of living<sup>83</sup>. Necessity is a good school-[master]; it tamed me down<sup>84</sup>. My former haughtiness<sup>85</sup> humbled<sup>86</sup>, I was forced<sup>81</sup> to earn<sup>87</sup> my daily bread. I became in turn<sup>88</sup> sailor, soldier and ship-wright<sup>89</sup>; as [a] sailor, I was clumsy<sup>90</sup> and too effeminate<sup>91</sup>; as a soldier, my proud spirit<sup>92</sup> some-

times rebelled<sup>93</sup>, and I deserted<sup>94</sup>; as ships-workman, my stubborn<sup>95</sup> neck<sup>96</sup> bowed down<sup>97</sup> to carry burdens, and I ate my bread soaked with tears<sup>98</sup>. And then I thought upon my old condition<sup>99</sup>, on my good parents, who were long ago dead of (auß) grief<sup>100</sup> for (um) me. Alas! I could no more conjure back<sup>1</sup> those days that once<sup>2</sup> smiled [on] me. Those suns (sing.) were set for ever! (He looks at the old people, who listen<sup>3</sup> to him attentively.)

Sp.: And how then did you come<sup>4</sup> to be a rich man at once?

T.: Not all at once. We (man) sink quickly down<sup>5</sup> into the depths (sing.) of misery, but recover<sup>6</sup> slowly our senses, and mount<sup>7</sup> to the surface<sup>8</sup> with difficulty<sup>9</sup>. I thought<sup>9a</sup> over my sad fate, and then came the idea, how I could carve out<sup>10</sup> for me (eß) a happier one. Industry and economy might help me (thee) [on], and so to (auß) work with manly<sup>11</sup> fortitude<sup>12</sup>, thought I. When the waves threaten to overwhelm the swimmer, he must collect<sup>13</sup> all his powers together; when difficulties rise up<sup>14</sup> as a wall against us, then we must summon<sup>15</sup> all our energy, that we may come off<sup>16</sup> (aß) conquerors<sup>17</sup> from the fight<sup>18</sup>. I began to recollect<sup>19</sup> rubbish<sup>20</sup> from the docks<sup>21</sup>. Old iron, crooked<sup>22</sup> nails, the ends of ropes<sup>23</sup>, the most insignificant<sup>24</sup> things, that no one thought worth<sup>25</sup> preserving<sup>26</sup>, I carried home, and laid up<sup>27</sup> [in] a sort of magazine. I sorted<sup>28</sup> and separated<sup>29</sup> the pieces according to their size and worth; hammered<sup>30</sup> the nails straight, spliced<sup>31</sup> the ropes together, as I had learned from the seamen. And then I found customers, who paid me for them; even what seemed quite useless, was bought up (von mir) for single pence, I did not disdain<sup>32</sup> anything, but went on<sup>33</sup> collecting and saving. Many years passed over, and at last with what I had gained<sup>34</sup> in this way, I amassed<sup>35</sup> a small sum with which I began a little trade.

W.: Ah, thank God (fei), I was quite anxious<sup>35a</sup> about you, dear Sir.

Sp.: Don't interrupt the gentleman! This is indeed a wonderful story.

T.: I prudently<sup>36</sup> confined<sup>37</sup> my trade to objects<sup>38</sup>,

which I understood. I did not wish to risk on uncertainty<sup>39</sup>, what I had so dearly<sup>40</sup> won. I established myself<sup>41</sup> in the harbour and traded in ship-stores<sup>42</sup>. My property increased<sup>43</sup>; and I then extended my trade to (auf) such provisions<sup>44</sup>, as are required<sup>45</sup> for long voyages. This I could do on a larger scale<sup>46</sup> with [the] help of the good name, I had won<sup>47</sup> by long tried<sup>48</sup> honesty. At last I grew acquainted with one of the richest ship-owners<sup>49</sup>, who had thirty vessels constantly employed<sup>50</sup>. We transacted<sup>51</sup> much business together, and I was often in his house. Then I became acquainted with his daughter, and now this rich ship-owner is my father-in-law, and I am his partner<sup>52</sup>. Our ships carry American products to Europe and bring back others to our harbours in exchange. See, so I have offered you mahogany-wood, and wished to order boxes to pack<sup>53</sup> the wine, I have bought here. But indeed you shall not refuse either my offer<sup>54</sup> or my orders; take a couple of apprentices and make me the boxes, and you shall have the mahogany-wood on credit.

Sp.: That can not be. I am too old for that. Let me go on my own way<sup>55</sup> to the end of my days.

T.: Which I hope, is yet a long way off<sup>56</sup>. But I see, that my time is up<sup>57</sup> (draws out his watch). Indeed, it is the hour, that (wo) my wife and little son are expecting me.

W.: Have you then brought your wife with [you]?

T.: She is in Europe for the first time. Would you like to see an American woman?

W.: Ah, I am a plain<sup>58</sup> woman, I should not even know how to speak to her.

T.: Don't say so. My wife and son speak German. My father-in-law is a German, like my parents; and one excellent<sup>59</sup> trait<sup>60</sup> of your countrymen in the new world is, that they hold sacred<sup>61</sup> the speech and customs<sup>62</sup> of their old home, and implant<sup>63</sup> them carefully in their descendants<sup>64</sup>. (Some one (es) knocks softly<sup>65</sup>.)

Sp.: But listen! there is some one at the door. I fancied<sup>66</sup> for some time past, I heard (inf.) some one groping about<sup>67</sup> in the dark.

T.: That must be my child.

W.: Your child?

T.: My wife was with him in the house of a merchant of my acquaintance<sup>68</sup>, and she knew, that I was going here; she has perhaps come to inquire, whether I am still here.

Sp.: Well, open the door, wife.

W. (opens the door).

<sup>1</sup> der Boden. <sup>2</sup> behutsam. <sup>3</sup> die Empfehlung. <sup>4</sup> von Ansehen.  
<sup>5</sup> vorbeigehen. <sup>6</sup> bebienen. <sup>7</sup> versuchen. <sup>8</sup> gerade heraus. <sup>9</sup> damals.  
<sup>10</sup> mit bewegter Stimme. <sup>11</sup> schon. <sup>12</sup> Wendung. <sup>13</sup> das Gespräch.  
<sup>14</sup> die Etikette. <sup>15</sup> ausgezeichnet. <sup>16</sup> eingravieren. <sup>16a</sup> verzeihen. <sup>17</sup> er-  
<sup>weden.</sup> <sup>18</sup> fröhlich. <sup>19</sup> einschenken (s.). <sup>20</sup> anstoßen (s.). <sup>21</sup> gehen.  
<sup>22</sup> mittrinken. <sup>23</sup> entweichen. <sup>24</sup> sich schiden. <sup>25</sup> Umstände. <sup>26</sup> Bescheid  
<sup>thun.</sup> <sup>27</sup> möge schenken. <sup>28</sup> schmecken. <sup>29</sup> darnach fragen. <sup>30</sup> will.  
<sup>31</sup> fröhlich. <sup>32</sup> das Wohl. <sup>33</sup> das Elend. <sup>34</sup> haben. <sup>35</sup> scheiden aus.  
<sup>36</sup> die Ausgleichung. <sup>37</sup> der Unglückliche. <sup>38</sup> ins Gleichgewicht kommen.  
<sup>39</sup> der Thor 4. <sup>40</sup> weise werden. <sup>41</sup> sich bessern. <sup>42</sup> der Dülde. <sup>43</sup> die  
<sup>Weiden.</sup> <sup>44</sup> tröstlich. <sup>45</sup> bestimmen in (s.). <sup>46</sup> erleben. <sup>47</sup> meinethwegen  
<sup>denn.</sup> <sup>48</sup> erkennen. <sup>49</sup> erfüllen. <sup>50</sup> Weg. <sup>51</sup> das bestimmte Ziel. <sup>52</sup> Bürger.  
<sup>53</sup> angesehen. <sup>54</sup> das Weib. <sup>55</sup> erlangen. <sup>56</sup> wunderbar. <sup>57</sup> beharrliches  
<sup>Streben.</sup> <sup>58</sup> das vorgezeichnete Ziel. <sup>59</sup> vergeuben. <sup>60</sup> anstrengen (s.). <sup>61</sup> die  
<sup>Raufbahn.</sup> <sup>62</sup> bedeuten (a, a). <sup>63</sup> angestrengt. <sup>64</sup> erwachsen (u, a). <sup>65</sup> der  
<sup>Unmut.</sup> <sup>66</sup> der Groß. <sup>67</sup> Mitmenschen. <sup>68</sup> der Zufall. <sup>69</sup> begünstigen.  
<sup>70</sup> versagen. <sup>71</sup> unentschlossen. <sup>72</sup> sich das Leben nehmen. <sup>73</sup> mir zur Last.  
<sup>74</sup> feige. <sup>75</sup> unglücklicher Weise. <sup>76</sup> bestimmen zu. <sup>77</sup> Befinnung. <sup>78</sup> ferner.  
<sup>79</sup> ergreifen. <sup>80</sup> bemeistern. <sup>81</sup> zwingen. <sup>82</sup> versuchen. <sup>83</sup> allerlei. <sup>84</sup> mürbe  
<sup>machen.</sup> <sup>85</sup> der Hochmut. <sup>86</sup> gedemüthigt sein. <sup>87</sup> verdienen. <sup>88</sup> der Reiche  
<sup>nach.</sup> <sup>89</sup> Arbeiter in den Schiffswerften. <sup>90</sup> sich ungeschickt zeigen. <sup>91</sup> ver-  
<sup>wechsell.</sup> <sup>92</sup> der rebellische Sinn. <sup>93</sup> sich regen. <sup>94</sup> besertieren. <sup>95</sup> fährlich.  
<sup>96</sup> der Rachen. <sup>97</sup> sich fügen. <sup>98</sup> mit Thränen besuchten. <sup>99</sup> Verhältnisse.  
<sup>100</sup> der Gram. <sup>1</sup> herbeizubern (s.). <sup>2</sup> einfl. <sup>3</sup> zuhören (s.). <sup>4</sup> dazu  
<sup>kommen.</sup> <sup>5</sup> hinab. <sup>6</sup> zurückkehren (s.). <sup>7</sup> emporstimmen. <sup>8</sup> zur Höhe.  
<sup>9</sup> schwer. <sup>9a</sup> nachdenken. <sup>10</sup> gestalten. <sup>11</sup> rüstig. <sup>12</sup> der Mut. <sup>13</sup> zu-  
<sup>sammen nehmen.</sup> <sup>14</sup> sich erheben. <sup>15</sup> anbieten (o, o). <sup>16</sup> hervorgehen.  
<sup>17</sup> Sieger. <sup>18</sup> der Kampf. <sup>19</sup> sammeln. <sup>20</sup> der Abfall 1. <sup>21</sup> die Werfte.  
<sup>22</sup> krumm. <sup>23</sup> das Lau. <sup>24</sup> unscheinbar. <sup>25</sup> wert halten (gen.). <sup>26</sup> Be-  
<sup>achtung.</sup> <sup>27</sup> sich anlegen. <sup>28</sup> fortieren. <sup>29</sup> sondern. <sup>30</sup> hämmern. <sup>31</sup> spießen.  
<sup>32</sup> verschmähen. <sup>33</sup> fortfahren. <sup>34</sup> verdienen. <sup>35</sup> zusammenbringen. <sup>36a</sup> dange  
<sup>sein um.</sup> <sup>36</sup> flüglig. <sup>37</sup> beschränken auf. <sup>38</sup> der Gegenstand. <sup>39</sup> an Un-  
<sup>gewisses.</sup> <sup>40</sup> mühsam. <sup>41</sup> sich etablieren. <sup>42</sup> Schiffsbedürfnisse. <sup>43</sup> sich  
<sup>mehren.</sup> <sup>44</sup> Artikel. <sup>45</sup> gebrauchen. <sup>46</sup> im großen betreiben. <sup>47</sup> erwerben  
<sup>(a, o).</sup> <sup>48</sup> erproben. <sup>49</sup> Reeder. <sup>50</sup> in See haben. <sup>51</sup> machen. <sup>52</sup> Teil-  
<sup>haber.</sup> <sup>53</sup> verpacken. <sup>54</sup> das Anerbieten. <sup>55</sup> in meiner Weise fortfahren.  
<sup>56</sup> weit entfernt. <sup>57</sup> abgelassen. <sup>58</sup> einfach. <sup>59</sup> schön. <sup>60</sup> Eigenschaft.  
<sup>61</sup> heilig. <sup>62</sup> die Sitten. <sup>63</sup> fortpflanzen auf. <sup>64</sup> der Nachkomme. <sup>65</sup> leise.  
<sup>66</sup> glauben. <sup>67</sup> herumkrabbeln. <sup>68</sup> befreundet.

Fifth Scene.

(The former. A boy.)

Child (springing to the traveller): Ah, here is papa.

Sp. (merry<sup>1</sup> with the wine he had drunk): Ah, there is a dear little thing<sup>2</sup>! Come here to me, little American!

T. (to the child, who hesitates<sup>3</sup>): Go, George, to the good man. (The child runs to Spahn, who lays his hand on his head and looks at him kindly.) Where is your mother?

Child: She is waiting for you, father, outside.

W.: In the dark!

T.: Will you allow me to bring her in? (Goes out.)

W.: What strange things<sup>4</sup> have happened<sup>5</sup> (pres.) to day. Such grand<sup>6</sup> people in our house!

Sp.: What [do you mean by] grand! The stranger is an honest man<sup>7</sup> and so frank<sup>8</sup>; I like him very much.

Child: Yes, every one loves my father.

T. (leads his wife in): This is my wife, my dear Anna.

W.: Will the lady take a seat.

T.: Sit down, Anna; I wish you also to know these good people.

A.: I have become acquainted<sup>9</sup> with many good people already in this country. I quite longed<sup>10</sup> to see Germany. I had heard so much about it. My father and mother were Germans, and we had a friend, whom unfortunate circumstances<sup>11</sup> drove<sup>12</sup> from [his] house. He was called<sup>13</sup> Harry Span.

T. (suddenly starting<sup>14</sup>): What a strange impression<sup>15</sup> that name makes upon me<sup>16</sup> now!

Sp.: What is [the matter with] you, Sir?

T.: Your name is Spahn, is it not (nicht wahr)?

Sp.: That is my name<sup>13</sup>.

T.: And your son's name is<sup>13</sup>?

Sp.: Henry Spahn, like my own.

A.: Is it possible?

W.: What do you mean?

A. (seeing her husband's emotion<sup>17</sup>, which hinders<sup>18</sup> him speaking): Our friend's name is Harry, and what we call Span is your German Spahn.

W. (seats herself): Pardon me, it overpowers<sup>19</sup> me.

Sp.: Harry in America! Your friend! Oh tell me all about him.

W.: How is he?

Sp.: But is he really him (e&)?

W.: If I could but see him, to make sure myself<sup>20</sup>.

A.: You will see him. He is preparing<sup>21</sup> for a journey to Europe. He said, he should visit his parents.

Sp.: He told you that, and you come here to tell us, and this rich man with his orders, his mahogany-wood, his Rhenish wine, his feeling heart<sup>22</sup>, heavens! can it be possible!

W.: Terror and joy! I do not know, it seems, as if I should die!

T.: Not die, mother! You shall live! I can not contain<sup>23</sup> myself any longer (falls down before her).

W. (crying<sup>24</sup> loud): Son! Henry! (sinks into his arms with her head upon his shoulders).

Sp.: What! you? is it possible?

T.: The repentant<sup>24a</sup> lost son, who can now turn<sup>25</sup> all your trouble to joy.

Sp.: And the story you told us before?

Son: It was my own story (rises).

Sp.: You so rich?

Son: Through my industry and exertion<sup>26</sup>.

W.: And this your child?

Son: Pardon me, this is the only untruth. The little boy is my brother-in-law<sup>27</sup>, the brother of my dear wife. He was to tell me, that she was come, and so it was only proper<sup>28</sup>, that he should pass<sup>29</sup> for my son. How could you imagine, that I could have enjoyed my happiness<sup>30</sup>, without finding you out<sup>31</sup>, my beloved parents? No, as long as my trial<sup>32</sup>, hard and severe as it was, lasted, I would not present myself<sup>33</sup> before you, I was resolved first to secure my position, so as not to be cheated by any illusion<sup>34</sup>, and not to disappoint<sup>35</sup> you again. And at last that for which I strove<sup>36</sup> was achieved<sup>36a</sup>. Anna, once my wife, our journey was no longer postponed<sup>37</sup>. And now we are come to entreat<sup>38</sup> your blessing<sup>39</sup>.

Sp.: Ah, children, now my reason<sup>40</sup> forsakes<sup>41</sup> me; that

is too much for my old head. I am to lift up<sup>43</sup> these brown hands stained with varnish<sup>43</sup> to bless this noble rich lady!

Son: A father's blessing is a holy [thing].

Anna: We entreat it. (They kneel<sup>44</sup> down.)

Sp.: Come wife, and bless them with me; they must not kneel so long upon the ground (with inward<sup>45</sup> emotion, almost tears). God bless you, my dear children!

W. (with folded<sup>46</sup> hands): Amen!

Son (rising with his wife): I have the means<sup>47</sup> of securing<sup>48</sup> your old age free from care<sup>49</sup>. I am in earnest (es ist) about (mit) the mahogany-wood. Will you take some apprentices and continue<sup>50</sup> your business in wholesale<sup>51</sup>, or do you prefer to live independently<sup>52</sup> on your income<sup>53</sup>?

Sp.: Neither one nor the other; let me go on<sup>54</sup>, as I have hitherto done<sup>54a</sup>. I was always contented and am now quite happy, now that (da) I know, you have become a good<sup>55</sup> man, and that my old wife is provided for, when I am gone<sup>56</sup>.

Son: My father-in-law remains in America, I shall establish myself in Hamburg, and in this way we shall carry on<sup>57</sup> our business together. Every year we will visit you.

W.: Ah, what happiness! Come to my heart, Henry.

Sp.: Now, the old woman takes heart<sup>58</sup>.

W.: But I never lost faith<sup>59</sup> in my Henry.

Sp.: I say the proverb<sup>60</sup> is true: Every man is the architect<sup>61</sup> of his (own) fortune.

Son: And better late than never! (They form<sup>62</sup> a group<sup>63</sup>.)

<sup>1</sup> aufgeheitert. <sup>2</sup> der Junge. <sup>3</sup> zögern. <sup>4</sup> alle. <sup>5</sup> begegnen (uns).  
<sup>6</sup> vornehm. <sup>7</sup> Ehrenmann. <sup>8</sup> offenherzig. <sup>9</sup> kennen lernen. <sup>10</sup> sich sehnen.  
<sup>11</sup> Verhältnisse. <sup>12</sup> vertreiben (ie, ie). <sup>13</sup> heißen (ie, ie). <sup>14</sup> in die Höhe  
fahren. <sup>15</sup> der Klang. <sup>16</sup> für mich hat. <sup>17</sup> Nahrung. <sup>18</sup> verhindern.  
<sup>19</sup> überwältigen. <sup>20</sup> sich überzeugen. <sup>21</sup> sich rüsten zu. <sup>22</sup> die Teilnahme.  
<sup>23</sup> halten. <sup>24</sup> aufschreien. <sup>24a</sup> reuig. <sup>25</sup> verwandeln. <sup>26</sup> Anstrengung.  
<sup>27</sup> Schwager. <sup>28</sup> passend. <sup>29</sup> gelten. <sup>30</sup> im Glück leben. <sup>31</sup> aufsuchen (s.).  
<sup>32</sup> Prüfungszeit. <sup>33</sup> erscheinen. <sup>34</sup> sich einer Täuschung hingeben. <sup>35</sup> be-  
trüben. <sup>36</sup> streben. <sup>36a</sup> erreichen. <sup>37</sup> hinauschieben. <sup>38</sup> bitten um. <sup>39</sup> der  
Segen. <sup>40</sup> Handwerker-Verband. <sup>41</sup> verlassen. <sup>42</sup> aufgeben. <sup>43</sup> Firnis-  
hände. <sup>44</sup> niederknien (s.). <sup>45</sup> innigst. <sup>46</sup> gefaltet. <sup>47</sup> die Mitte. <sup>48</sup> ver-  
schaffen. <sup>49</sup> sorgenfrei. <sup>50</sup> fortsetzen. <sup>51</sup> im großen. <sup>52</sup> unabhängig.  
<sup>53</sup> die Renten. <sup>54</sup> formachen. <sup>54a</sup> treiben (ie, ie). <sup>55</sup> tüchtig. <sup>56</sup> nicht  
mehr da. <sup>57</sup> fortfreiben. <sup>58</sup> sich ein Herz fassen. <sup>59</sup> der Glaube. <sup>60</sup> das  
Sprichwort. <sup>61</sup> Schmieb. <sup>62</sup> bilden. <sup>63</sup> die Gruppe.

# Vocabulary

to the exercises 1—139.

The numbers behind the nouns refer to the 5 different forms of declension, the letters behind the verbs to the alteration of the vowels of irreg. verbs in the imperfect and past participle.  
pp. = preposition, adv. = adverb.

**Able** fähig, imstande  
to abound in reich sein an  
about (pp.) um, über  
about (adv.) ungefähr  
above oben (adv.), oberhalb (pp.)  
abroad im, ins Ausland  
abruptly plötzlich  
absence die Abwesenheit  
abundance of der Überfluß an  
to abuse mißbrauchen  
academy die Akademie  
acceptable annehmbar  
to accompany begleiten  
to be accomplished zustande kommen  
according to laut, zufolge, nach  
account die Rechnung  
on account of wegen (gen.)  
accurately genau  
to accuse anklagen  
to accustom to gewöhnen an  
to be accustomed gewohnt sein  
ache der Schmerz 5  
ear — Ohrenschmerzen  
eye — Augenschmerzen  
acquaintance die Bekanntschaft  
to act handeln  
action die Handlung  
to address to adressieren an  
adherent der Anhänger  
to admire bewundern  
admirer der Bewunderer  
to adopt an Kindesstatt annehmen  
to admit to zulassen zu

to adulterate fälschen  
advanced vorgerückt  
advice der Rat  
advisable ratksam  
aera die Zeitrechnung  
affable freundlich  
affair die Sache, pl. die Verhältnisse  
affliction die Trübsal 1  
to be afraid of sich fürchten vor  
after nach (dat.)  
afternoon der Nachmittag 1  
afterwards nachher, später  
again wieder  
against wider, gegen (acc.)  
age das Alter  
of age volljährig  
under age unmündig  
ago vor (dat.)  
to agree einig sein  
to aim at zielen auf  
air die Luft 1, die Melodie  
open air die freie Luft  
to alight (from a horse) absteigen  
— (from a carriage) aussteigen  
alive lebendig  
all aller, e, es; ganz  
not at all gar nicht  
to allow lassen, erlauben  
allowance das Taschengeld, Zahrgeld  
to allude to anspielen auf  
ally der Verbündete  
almost fast, beinahe  
alms das Almosen



along entlang (dat. and acc.)  
 already schon  
 also auch  
 altar der Altar 1  
 always immer  
 ambassador der Gesandte  
 ambitious ehrgeizig  
 to amend sich bessern  
 amiable liebenswürdig  
 to amount to sich belaufen auf  
 amply reichlich  
 to amuse gut unterhalten  
 amusement das Vergnügen  
 anarchy die Anarchie  
 ancestor der Vorfahr 4  
 anew neu  
 angel der Engel  
 angry with, at böse über  
 to make — aufbringen, erzürnen  
 animal das Tier 1  
 to animate beleben  
 annoyance der Ärger  
 to anoint salben zu  
 answer die Antwort  
 to answer antworten (dat.), be— (acc.)  
 antiquity das Altertum 2  
 anything etwas, alles  
 to apologize sich entschuldigen  
 to appear scheinen, er—  
 appearance der Schein  
 to appease stillen  
 appetite der Appetit  
 apple der Apfel  
 application der Fleiß  
 to apply to sich wenden an  
 to appoint to ernennen zu  
 appointment as Ernennung zu  
 archduke der Erzherzog 1  
 argument der Grund, Beweis— 1  
 to arise sich erheben (o, o), auf—  
     stehen (a, a)  
 arm der Arm 1  
 armchair der Armstuhl 1  
 army die Armee, das Heer 1  
 around um (acc.), um — herum  
 to arrange ordnen  
 arrival die Ankunft  
 to arrive ankommen (a, o)  
 art die Kunst 1

work of — das Kunstwerk 1  
 artist der Künstler  
 as — as so — wie  
 to ascend steigen (ie, ie)  
     auf —, be —, ersteigen  
 ashamed, to be — sich schämen (gen.)  
 ashes die Asche (sing.)  
 Asia Asien  
 to ask for fragen nach, bitten um  
 asparagus die Spargel  
 to assassinate ermorden  
 to assist beiwohnen (dat.)  
 assistance der Beistand, die Hilfe  
 assizes die Assisen  
 to associate with umgehen mit  
 astonished at erstaunt über  
 to assure versichern (gen.)  
 at an, in, bei, auf, um  
 Athens Athen  
 Atlantic der atlantische Ozean  
 attack der Anfall 1  
 attempt of flight der Fluchtversuch 1  
 to attend behandeln, besuchen,  
     besorgen, nachgehen  
 attendant der Begleiter  
 attention die Aufmerksamkeit  
 to pay — acht geben auf  
 attentive aufmerksam  
 aunt die Tante  
 Austria Österreich  
 author der Verfasser  
 autumn der Herbst  
 to avail of Nutzen ziehen aus  
 avarice der Geiz  
 to awake wachen, aufwachen, erwachen  
 away weg  
 awkward ungeschickt.  
 Back zurück  
 bad schlecht, schlimm  
 bag die Tasche  
 baker der Bäcker  
 ball der Ball 1  
 balloon der Luftballon 1  
 balsam der Balsam  
 Baltic die Ostsee  
 bank das Ufer  
 barber der Barbier 1  
 bark die Rinde  
 to bark bellen

barley die Gerste  
 barn die Scheune  
 to barter for handeln um  
 bath das Bad 2  
 to bathe baden  
 battalion das Bataillon 1  
 to be sein, stehen, liegen  
 to be at something an etwas sein  
 bean die Bohne  
 to beat schlagen (u, a)  
 beautiful schön  
 to become werden (u, o)  
 bed das Bett 5, das Beet 1  
 beer das Bier  
 beetle der Käfer  
 before (pp.) vor (dat. and acc.)  
 before (adv.) vorher, früher  
 to beg betteln, bitten (a, e)  
 beggar der Bettler  
 to begin anfangen (ie, a)  
 beginning der Anfang 1  
 to behave sich betragen (u, a)  
 behind (pp.) hinter (dat. and acc.)  
 behind (adv.) zurück  
 to behold sehen (a, e)  
 to believe glauben an  
 to belong gehören (dat.)  
 below (pp.) unter (dat. and acc.),  
 unterhalb (gen.)  
 below (adv.) unten  
 bench die Bank 1  
 benefactor der Wohlthäter  
 benefit die Wohlthat  
 to bend beugen  
 besides außerdem  
 best best, am besten  
 to betray verraten (ie, a)  
 bible die Bibel  
 to bid bitten (a, e)  
 to bind binden (a, u)  
 bird der Vogel  
 birthday der Geburtstag 1  
 to bite beißen (i, i)  
 black schwarz  
 Black-forest der Schwarzwald  
 to blame tadeln  
 to bless segnen, loben  
 blessing der Segen  
 blessings die Segnungen

blind blind  
 blissfulness die Seligkeit  
 blood das Blut  
 blossom die Blüte  
 blow der Schlag, a cruel blow ein  
 schwerer Schlag  
 blue blau  
 blunt stumpf  
 boar das Wildschwein 3  
 to boil kochen  
 bone der Knochen  
 bonnet die Mütze, der Hut 1  
 book das Buch 2, —seller der  
 Buchhändler, —printing die  
 Buchdruckerkunst  
 boot der Stiefel 3  
 born geboren  
 bottle die Flasche  
 bough der Ast 1  
 bound for bestimmt nach  
 bowle die Bowle  
 box die Schachtel, die Kiste  
 boy der Knabe 4  
 brave tapfer  
 to break brechen (a, o), zer—  
 to breakfast frühstücken  
 breakfast das Frühstück  
 breast-pin die Nadel  
 breath der Atem  
 out of — außer Atem  
 bridge die Brücke  
 — of boats die Schiffsbrücke  
 railway — Eisenbahn —  
 wooden — der Steg  
 bright hell  
 to be bright glänzen  
 to bring bringen (a, a)  
 to — to pass wohl machen  
 British britisch  
 broad breit  
 brook der Bach 1  
 brother der Bruder  
 to build bauen  
 bull-fight das Stiergefecht 1  
 to burn brennen (a, a) ver—  
 to burst bersten (a, o), springen (a, u)  
 to bury begraben (a, u)  
 business das Geschäft 1  
 bustle das Treiben

busy beschäftigt  
 but aber, nur  
 not — but nicht — sondern  
 butcher der Metzger  
 button der Knopf 1  
 to buy kaufen.  
 Cage der Käfig 1  
 cake der Kuchen  
 calf das Kalb 2  
 to call rufen (ie, u), weden, nennen  
 (a, a), to call on besuchen  
 to call upon anrufen  
 to calumniate verleumben  
 campaign der Feldzug 1  
 canal der Kanal 1  
 cancer of the stomach der Magen-  
 krebß  
 candle-light das Lampenlicht  
 candle-stick der Leuchter  
 capacity die Fähigkeit  
 capital die Hauptstadt 1  
 captain der Hauptmann  
 captivity die Gefangenschaft  
 cardinal der Kardinal  
 care die Sorge  
 take care acht geben auf  
 careful sorgfältig, vorsichtig  
 careless nachlässig  
 carpet der Teppich 1  
 carriage der Wagen  
 to carry tragen (u, a)  
 — out ausführen  
 case der Fall 1  
 to cast away wegwerfen (a, o)  
 castle das Schloß 2, die Burg  
 cat die Katze  
 to catch fangen (i, a)  
 — cold sich erkälten, sich eine  
 Erkältung zuziehen (o, o)  
 cathedral der Dom 1  
 Catholic katholisch  
 Caucasus der Kaukasus  
 to cause verursachen, lassen  
 cause die Sache, die Ursache  
 to be the cause of schuld sein an  
 cavalry die Kavallerie  
 Caesar Cäsar  
 to cease aufhören  
 to celebrate feiern

celebrated berühmt  
 cellar der Keller  
 celibacy das Eölibat  
 cemetery der Friedhof 1  
 century das Jahrhundert  
 certain, —ly gewiß  
 chain die Kette  
 chair der Stuhl 1  
 to change verändern, sich —  
 change of air der Luftwechsel  
 changeable veränderlich  
 Channel der Kanal  
 character der Charakter 1  
 charitable wohlthätig, mildthätig,  
 barmherzig  
 charming reizend  
 cheap wohlfeil  
 to cheat out of betrügen um (o, o)  
 cheerful heiter  
 cheese der Käse  
 cherry die Kirche  
 chess das Schach  
 a game at — eine Partie —  
 chest of drawers die Kommode  
 chicken das Hühnchen  
 chief der Chef  
 chiefly hauptsächlich  
 child das Kind 1  
 childhood die Kindheit  
 chimney das Kamin 1  
 Chinese der Chinese  
 christian der Christ 4  
 christian christlich  
 christianity das Christentum  
 Christmas Weihnachten  
 — eve Weihnachtsabend  
 — tree — -baum, Christbaum  
 church die Kirche  
 — yard der Kirchhof  
 circumstance der Umstand 1  
 citizen der Bürger  
 class die Klasse  
 clean rein  
 to clean reinigen  
 clear klar, hell  
 clergy die Geistlichkeit  
 clergyman der Geistliche  
 clever geschickt, gelehrt  
 climate das Klima

cloak der Mantel  
 clock die Uhr, Pendeluhr  
 close schwül, drückend  
 closed geschlossen  
 cloth das Tuch 2  
 clothes die Kleider  
 to clothe kleiden  
 cloud die Wolke  
 clownish bäuerlich  
 coal die Kohle  
 coast die Küste  
 cock-chaser der Maitäfer  
 coffee der Rasse  
 cold kalt  
 in cold blood kaltblütig  
 the cold die Kälte  
 a cold eine Erkältung  
 — in the head der Schnupfen  
 to have, to catch a cold sich erkälten  
 colonel der Oberst 4  
 colony die Kolonie  
 colour die Farbe  
 to command kommandieren  
 commander der Befehlshaber  
 commander in chief der kommandierende General  
 to come kommen (a, o)  
 to — to something zu etwas —  
 comfort der Trost  
 comfortable freundlich, bequem  
 commerce der Handel  
 to commit suicide sich das Leben nehmen  
 companion der Gefährte, Kamerad  
 company die Gesellschaft, Compagnie  
 to keep — umgehen mit  
 compass der Kompaß  
 to compel zwingen  
 compensation die Entschädigung  
 to compensate entschädigen  
 to complain of sich beklagen über  
 complete vollständig  
 to concern in sich beteiligen bei  
 concert das Konzert 1  
 to conclude from schließen (o, o) aus  
 conduct das Betragen  
 confederation der Bundesstaat 5  
 to confess gestehen (a, a)

to confide sich verlassen auf  
 congress der Kongreß 1  
 to conquer siegen, besiegen, erobern  
 conquest die Eroberung  
 consent die Zustimmung, Einwilligung  
 to consider betrachten, schauen  
 considerable ansehnlich, beträchtlich  
 constant beständig  
 constitutional konstitutionell  
 to consult zu Rat ziehen (o, o)  
 to contain enthalten (ie, a)  
 contented zufrieden  
 continual beständig  
 to continue fortfahren, bleiben  
 to contradict widersprechen  
 on the contrary im Gegenteil  
 conversation die Unterhaltung  
 to convey bringen, überbringen  
 to convince überzeugen  
 cook der Koch 1, die Köchin  
 cool kühl  
 to cool one's self sich abkühlen  
 cord das Seil 2  
 corn das Korn 2  
 cornfield das Kornfeld  
 to correct forrigieren, sich bessern  
 corridor der Gang 1  
 to cost kosten  
 cost of building die Baukosten  
 cotton die Baumwolle  
 cough der Husten  
 to count on zählen, rechnen auf  
 — among zählen zu  
 count der Graf 4  
 countenance das Gesicht 2  
 country das Land 2  
 — life das Landleben  
 — man der Landmann  
 county die Grafschaft  
 courage der Mut  
 course der Lauf  
 cousin der Vetter 5, die Cousine  
 to cover bedecken  
 cow die Kuh 1  
 coward der Feigling 1  
 to create machen zu  
 creation die Schöpfung, Erschaffung  
 creditor der Gläubiger  
 crew die Schiffsmannschaft

criminal der Verbrecher  
 cringing kriechend  
 cripple der Krüppel  
 to crop flugen  
 to cross durchfahren (u, a), kreuzen  
 to crown krönen zu  
 crown-prince der Kronprinz 4  
 cruel grausam  
 crusade der Kreuzzug 1  
 crutch die Krücke  
 to cry weinen  
 cucumber die Gurke  
 cuff die Manschette  
 to be culpable of schuld sein an  
 cultivation of mind geistige Bildung  
 cup die Tasse, der Becher  
 to cure heilen  
 to curse fluchen  
 curtain der Vorhang 1  
 custom die Gewohnheit  
 to cut schneiden  
 — off abschneiden, abhauen  
 cutlery Ringen (plur.)  
 Cyprus Cypern.  
 Daily täglich  
 damp feucht  
 to dance tanzen  
 danger die Gefahr  
 dangerous gefährlich  
 Danube die Donau  
 to dare wagen  
 darling der Liebling  
 to dart upon sich stürzen auf  
 daughter die Tochter 3  
 day der Tag 1, to day heute  
 the other day neulich  
 daylight hell, tag  
 deaf taub  
 deal, a good — viel  
 to deal in handeln mit  
 to deal with — gegen  
 to deal cards Karten geben  
 dead tot, der Tote  
 dear teuer  
 death der Tod, Todesfall  
 — bed das Totenbett  
 debt die Schuld  
 to run into — Schulden machen  
 debtor der Schuldner, Schuldiger

deceased der Verstorbene  
 to be deceived sich täuschen  
 to decide entscheiden (ie, ie) über  
 decisive of entscheidend für  
 declaration of war Kriegserklärung  
 to declare erklären  
 to decline ablehnen  
 to decrease abnehmen (a, o)  
 deep tief  
 to defend verteidigen  
 defendant der Angeklagte  
 degree der Grad 1  
 delicious herrlich, köstlich  
 delightful köstlich  
 to deliver erretten, erlösen  
 to demand verlangen  
 Denmark Dänemark  
 to depart for abreisen nach  
 department das Fach 2  
 departure die Abreise  
 to deprive berauben  
 to deserve well of sich verdient  
 machen um  
 desirous of begierig nach  
 desk der Schreibfäße, das Pult  
 despair die Verzweiflung  
 despise verachten  
 desert die Wüste  
 to destroy zerstören, vernichten  
 to detain from abhalten von  
 to detest verabscheuen  
 to dethrone entthronen  
 to devastate verheeren  
 diamond der Diamant 5  
 to die of sterben an (a, o)  
 different verschieden, anders  
 difficult schwer  
 difficulty die Schwierigkeit  
 to dig graben (u, a)  
 to dig through durchstechen (a, o)  
 dignity die Würde  
 diligence der Eilwagen  
 diligent fleißig  
 dinner das Mittagessen  
 dint, by — of (pp.) vermöge (gen.)  
 to direct to richten an  
 direction die Richtung  
 directly gleich, direkt, geradezu  
 to dirty beschmutzen

dirty schmutzig  
to disappoint täuschen  
disastrous verderblich  
to discern unterscheiden (ie, ie)  
discontented unzufrieden  
to discourage entmutigen  
to discover entdecken  
to discuss sprechen über  
disease die Krankheit  
to disguise sich verstellen  
to be disgusted with zuwider sein  
dish die Schüssel  
to dislike nicht mögen, zuwider sein,  
mißfallen (ie, a)  
dislike der Widerwillen  
disobedient ungehorsam  
disorder die Unordnung  
to displease mißfallen (ie, a)  
to dispute about streiten (i, i) über  
dissatisfied unzufrieden  
distance die Entfernung  
distinctly deutlich  
to distinguish sich auszeichnen  
distress die Not  
to disturb stören  
ditch der Graben  
to do thun (a, a)  
to be done geschehen (a, e)  
doctrine die Lehre  
dog der Hund 1  
door die Thüre  
to doubt of zweifeln an  
no doubt ohne Zweifel  
doubtful zweifelhaft  
down herunter, hinunter  
down stairs unten  
dozen das Duzend 1  
dramatist der Dramatiker  
to draw from zeichnen nach  
drawing-master Zeichenlehrer  
to dread fürchten  
dreadful fürchterlich, schrecklich  
to dream of träumen von  
to dress ankleiden, — a wound  
eine Wunde verbinden (a, u)  
dress das Kleid 2  
drilling-ground der Exerzierplatz  
to drink trinken (a, u)  
to drown ertränken

to be drowned ertrinken  
to dry trocknen  
duke der Herzog  
dumb stumm  
duration die Dauer  
during während (gen.)  
Dutch holländisch  
duty die Pflicht  
dutiful pflichttreu  
to dwell wohnen, bleiben (ie, ie)  
dying man der Sterbende.  
Ear das Ohr 5  
early früh  
earnest der Ernst  
to be in full — es ganz ernst meinen  
earth die Erde  
— quake das Erdbeben  
east der Osten  
— wind der Ostwind  
Easter Ostern  
easy, —ly leicht  
to eat essen (a, e)  
to economize sparsam umgehen mit  
economy die Sparsamkeit  
education die Erziehung  
egg das Ei 2  
Egypt Ägypten  
either — or entweder — oder  
to elect wählen zu  
election die Wahl  
elective empire das Wahlreich  
electric elektrisch  
electricity die Elektrizität  
else sonst  
embarrassed verlegen  
to embark sich einschiffen nach  
to embellish verschönern  
emigrant der Auswanderer  
emperor der Kaiser  
empire das Reich, Kaiserreich  
empress die Kaiserin  
to employ anwenden  
empty leer  
end das Ende 5  
endless endlos  
to endure ertragen (u, a)  
enemy der Feind 1  
England England  
English englisch

enough genug  
 enraged at wütend über  
 to enrich bereichern  
 ensign der Fähnrich  
 enterprise die Unternehmung  
 entire ganz  
 entirely gänzlich  
 entreaty die Bitte  
 envious neidisch  
 to envy beneiden  
 to enjoy sich freuen, sich erfreuen  
 (gen.), genießen (o, o) gen.  
 epidemic epidemisch  
 eruption der Ausbruch 1  
 to escape entfliehen, entkommen  
 especially besonders  
 to establish errichten, gründen  
 estate das Gut 2  
 to esteem achten  
 eternal ewig  
 eternity die Ewigkeit  
 Europe Europa  
 even (adv.) sogar  
 evening der Abend  
 in the — abends  
 ever je, ever so noch so  
 for evermore immerdar  
 every jeder, e, es  
 — one jedermann  
 everything alles  
 every where überall  
 evil das Übel  
 examination die Prüfung  
 to exclaim ausrufen (ie, u)  
 to excuse entschuldigen  
 to excell sich auszeichnen  
 to execute hinrichten  
 exercise die Aufgabe, Bewegung  
 to exercise ergreifen  
 to exhaust erschöpfen  
 exile die Verbannung, das Exil  
 to exist existieren, leben  
 to expect erwarten  
 expectation die Erwartung  
 expensive teuer, kostspielig  
 experience die Erfahrung  
 to expose aussetzen  
 to extend sich ausdehnen  
 extent weit, ausgedehnt

extinct erlöschen  
 extinguished erlöschen  
 extravagant verschwenderisch  
 extreme case der Notfall (s.)  
 eye das Auge 5.  
 Face das Gesicht  
 fact die Thatfache  
 to fade abschließen (o, o)  
 to fail mißlingen (a, u)  
 failure das Mißlingen  
 fair schön, billig  
 fair die Messe  
 faith der Glaube, die Treue  
 faithful, —ly treu, ergebenst  
 to fall fallen (ie, a)  
 — upon sich stützen auf  
 — ill krank werden  
 false falsch  
 falsehood die Lüge, Unwahrheit  
 family die Familie  
 famous berühmt  
 to fancy sich einbilden, sich vorstellen  
 far weit, by — bei weitem  
 as far as bis nach, an, zu  
 farming die Landwirtschaft  
 fashion die Mode  
 fast schnell, stark, fest  
 to fast fasten  
 father der Vater  
 fatigue die Strapaze  
 fatiguing ermüdend  
 fault der Fehler  
 to have the — of schuld sein an  
 favour der Gefallen  
 to fear fürchten  
 for fear of aus Furcht vor  
 feast das Fest 1  
 feature der Zug 1  
 feeble schwach  
 to feed füttern, nähren  
 to feel fühlen  
 fellow der Mensch 4, der Berl  
 fellow-men Mitmenschen, Neben—  
 fence der Zaun 1  
 fertile fruchtbar  
 to fetch holen  
 fever das Fieber  
 feverish fieberisch  
 few einige, wenige

field das Feld 2  
 fieldmarshal der Feldmarschall  
 to fight fechten (o, o)  
 fight der Kampf 1  
 figure die Gestalt, Figur  
 finally schließlich  
 to find finden (a, u)  
 to finish endigen, beendigen, schließen,  
     vollenden, fertig bringen  
 finished fertig (sein)  
 to fire at schießen auf (o, o)  
 fire das Feuer  
 fire-place das Kamin 1  
 first erst, at— zuerst  
 to fish fischen  
 fist die Faust 1  
 to fit passen  
 flat flach  
 to flatter schmeicheln  
 flax der Flachs  
 to flee fliehen (o, o)  
 fleet die Flotte  
 flight der Flug, die Flucht  
 to take to — die Flucht ergreifen  
 flour das Mehl  
 to flourish blühen  
 to flow fließen (o, o)  
 flower die Blume  
     — bed das Blumenbeet 1  
     — garden der Blumengarten  
 to fly fliegen (o, o)  
 fog der Nebel  
 foggy nebelig  
 to follow folgen (dat.)  
     — (neut. v.) erfolgen  
 following folgend  
 folly die Thorheit  
 to be fond of gern haben  
 food die Nahrung  
 fool der Narr 4, der Thor 4  
 foolish thöricht, dumm  
 foot der Fuß 1, on — zu —, at  
     the — of unten an  
 foot-stool der Fußstempel  
 for (pp.) für (acc.), wegen (gen.)  
 for (conj.) denn  
 to forbid verbieten (o, o)  
 to force zwingen (a, u)  
 foreigner der Fremde, Ausländer  
*Freudenberg, German grammar I.*

forest der Wald 2  
 to forget vergessen (a, e)  
 forgetful vergeßlich  
 to forgive vergeben (a, e)  
 fork die Gabel  
 former der erstere  
 formerly früher, ehemals  
 to forsake verlassen (ie, a)  
 a fortnight vierzehn Tage  
 fortress die Festung  
 fortune das Vermögen, Glück  
 to found gründen  
 founder der Gründer  
 fox der Fuchs 1  
 fraction der Bruch 1  
 fragile gebrechlich  
 France Frankreich  
 Franconian fränkisch  
 free frei  
 French französisch  
 Frenchman der Franzose  
 frequent häufig  
 to frequent besuchen, umgehen mit  
 fresh frisch  
 to freeze frieren (o, o)  
     — over aufrieren  
 to be frozen erfrieren  
 Friday der Freitag  
 good — Karfreitag  
 friend der Freund 1  
 friendship die Freundschaft  
 from von, aus (dat.)  
 frontier die Grenze  
 frost der Frost 1  
 fruit das Obst, die Frucht  
 fruits der Ertrag  
 to fulfil erfüllen  
 full voll  
 full-grown ausgewachsen  
 fully völlig  
 fun der Spaß  
 funds die Kapitalien  
 furious with wütend über  
 furnished möbliert  
 further on weiter, weiterhin  
 future die Zukunft.  
 to Gain in gewinnen an (a, o)  
     — (of a watch) vorgehen  
 galoshe der Überschuß 1



to gamble spielen  
 gambler der Spieler  
 gambling bank die Spielbank  
 game das Spiel, die Partie  
 — at billiards eine Partie Billard,  
 to have a — eine Partie —  
 machen  
 garden der Garten  
 gardener der Gärtner  
 garrison die Garnison  
 gate das Thor 1  
 general General, Feldherr  
 gentle sanft, artig  
 gentleman der Herr 4  
 genuine echt  
 German deutsch  
 German der Deutsche  
 Germany Deutschland  
 to get bekommen, lassen, werden  
 to get on vorankommen  
 to get up aufstehen (a, a)  
 giddy schwindelig  
 gift die Gabe  
 gilt vergolbet  
 girl das Mädchen  
 to give geben (a, e)  
 — away verschicken  
 — up aufgeben  
 glad lieb, I am glad es ist mir  
 lieb, ich freue mich  
 glass das Glas 2  
 gloomy düster  
 to glorify preisen  
 glorious ruhmreich  
 glove der Handschuh 1  
 to go gehen (i, a)  
 — in hineingehen  
 — off abgehen, — out ausgehen,  
 — down hinuntergehen, ablaufen  
 (watch)  
 — in a carriage fahren  
 — on horseback reiten  
 — on foot zu Fuß gehen  
 gold das Gold, of — golden  
 gone fort  
 good gut  
 goose die Gans 1  
 government die Regierung  
 grand großartig

grandfather der Großvater  
 grandmother die Großmutter  
 to grant gewähren, geben  
 grape die Traube  
 grateful dankbar  
 grass das Gras 2  
 grease der Fettsäden  
 Greece Griechenland  
 green grün  
 grief der Schmerz 5, Nummer  
 to grieve at sich grämen über  
 ground der Grund, der Boden  
 to grow (verb n.) wachsen (u, a),  
 (verb active) ziehen (o, o)  
 to grow into heranwachsen zu  
 to guard bewachen  
 guard die Wache, der Schaffner  
 guardian der Vormund 2  
 to guess erraten (ie, a)  
 guild die Zunft 1  
 guilt die Schuld  
 guilty schuldig  
 gulf der Golf.  
 Habit die Gewohnheit  
 half halb, — a day ein halber Tag  
 hail der Hagel  
 to hail hageln  
 hair das Haar 1  
 hand die Hand 1  
 — of a watch der Zeiger  
 to hand reichen  
 to hang hangen (ie, a)  
 — up aufhängen  
 to happen geschehen (a, e), sich zu  
 tragen (u, a)  
 happiness das Glück  
 happy glücklich  
 harbour der Hafen  
 hard hart, schwer, stark  
 — work angestrengte Arbeit  
 hardly schwerlich, kaum  
 hare der Hase  
 harmless harmlos  
 haste die Eile  
 hastily eilig  
 hat der Hut 1  
 to hate hassen  
 haughty hochmütig  
 to have haben

hawk der Habicht 1  
 hay das Heu  
 head der Kopf 1, a — ache das  
 Kopfweh  
 to heal heilen  
 health die Gesundheit  
 healthy gesund  
 to hear hören  
 heart das Herz 5, with all my —  
 von Herzen gern, by — auswendig  
 heartily herzlich  
 heat die Hitze  
 heathen der Heide  
 heaven der Himmel  
 heavenly himmlisch  
 heavy schwer, stark, heftig  
 height die Höhe  
 heir der Erbe  
 to help helfen (a, o) dat.  
 help die Hilfe  
 hen das Huhn 2, die Henne  
 herdsman der Hirt 4  
 here hier, her  
 hereditary erblich  
 to hide from verbergen vor (a, o)  
 high hoch, the most — der Höchste,  
 — road die Landstraße  
 hill der Hügel  
 hire mieten  
 historical geschichtlich  
 history die Geschichte  
 hitherto bisher  
 hock Rheinwein  
 hole das Loch 2  
 a holiday ein freier Tag  
 holidays Ferien  
 hollow hohl  
 holy heilig  
 home die Heimat, nach Hause  
 at — zu Hause  
 honestly ehrlich  
 honey der Honig  
 honour die Ehre  
 to honour ehren  
 to hope for hoffen auf  
 hops der Hopfen  
 horse das Pferd 1  
 hospitality die Gastfreundschaft  
 hot heiß, red — glühend

hotel das Hotel, der Gasthof 1  
 hour die Stunde  
 house das Haus 2  
 house-maid die Magd  
 human menschlich  
 humour die Laune  
 hunger der Hunger  
 hungry hungrig  
 to hunt jagen  
 hunting die Jagd  
 huntsman der Jäger  
 to hurt weh thun, sich verletzen an(dat.)  
 husband der Mann, Gatte  
 hut die Hütte.  
 Ice das Eis  
 idea die Idee, der Begriff 1  
 idle faul  
 idle fellow der Faulenzer  
 ignorant unwissend  
 ill krank  
 illness die Krankheit  
 illustrate illustrieren  
 imagination die Einbildungskraft  
 to imagine sich einbilden  
 immense ungeheuer  
 immortal unsterblich  
 imperceptibly unmerklich  
 importance die Wichtigkeit  
 important wichtig  
 impossible unmöglich  
 to imprison einkerkern  
 to improve sich bessern, ver—, bilden,  
 — in gewinnen an  
 impudence die Frechheit, Unver-  
 schämtheit  
 in (pp.) in, (adv.) herein, hinein  
 inattentive unaufmerksam  
 to increase zunehmen (a, o)  
 to be indebted for zu danken  
 haben  
 indeed wirklich  
 independent unabhängig  
 India rubber der Gummi  
 indigent dürftig  
 to indulge verzeihen (o, o)  
 indulgent nachsichtig  
 industry der Fleiß  
 infantry die Infanterie  
 inferior geringer

to be inferior to stehen unter  
 inferior der Untergebene  
 to inform benachrichtigen  
 ingratitude die Unanbarkeit  
 to inhabit bewohnen  
 inhabitant der Bewohner  
 to inherit erben  
 inheritance die Erbschaft  
 to injure beschädigen  
 ink die Tinte  
 inkstand das Tintenfaß  
 innocence die Unschuld  
 innocent of unschuldig an  
 inside drin, innerhalb (gen.)  
 to insist upon bestehen auf  
 instead of anstatt (gen.)  
 — going anstatt zu gehen  
 institution die Einrichtung  
 to instruct belehren  
 to intend gedenken, beabsichtigen  
 intense streng  
 intercourse der Umgang  
 interest der Einfluß 1, das Interesse  
 interesting interessant  
 to interrupt unterbrechen (a, o)  
 interview die Zusammenkunft 1  
 to introduce einführen  
 to invent erfinden (a, u)  
 invention die Erfindung  
 to invite einladen (u, a)  
 iron das Eisen, eisern  
 irreconcilable unversöhnlich  
 irritable reizbar  
 island die Insel  
 Italian der Italiener, italienisch  
 Italy Italien  
 ivory das Elfenbein.  
 Jealous of eifersüchtig auf  
 Jew der Jude  
 jeweller der Juwelier  
 jewelry Schmuckachen (plur.)  
 joiner der Schreiner  
 journey die Reise  
 joy die Freude  
 to judge richten  
 — from urteilen nach  
 to jump springen (a, u)  
 June der Juni  
 July der Juli

just gerecht, eben, gerade  
 just now soeben  
 juicy saftig.  
 to keep halten, behalten (ie, a)  
 verwahren  
 — up sich bewahren  
 — silent schweigen (ie, ie)  
 — waiting warten lassen  
 — the bed das Bett hüten  
 — word Wort halten  
 key der Schlüssel  
 to kill töten  
 kind gütig, gut  
 of the kind derart  
 kind hearted liebevoll  
 kindly freundlich  
 most kindly freundlichst  
 king der König  
 kingdom das Königreich  
 kitchen die Küche  
 kitten das Kätzchen  
 knife das Messer  
 knight der Ritter  
 — of St. John Johanniter Ritter  
 to knit stricken  
 to knock against stoßen an (ie, o)  
 — at the door anknöpfen  
 — down umwerfen (a, o)  
 to know kennen (a, a), wissen (u, u)  
 knowledge die Kenntnis 1.  
 to lack fehlen an  
 he lacks money es fehlt ihm an Geld  
 ladder die Leiter  
 lady die Dame  
 lake der See  
 lamp die Lampe  
 landlady die Hausfrau  
 landscape die Landschaft  
 language die Sprache  
 to last dauern, halten (ie, a)  
 last last, at — zuletzt, endlich  
 late spät, verstorben  
 lately kürzlich  
 latest spätestens  
 the latter der letztere  
 to laugh at lachen über  
 law das Gesetz 1, Jura  
 lawlessness die Gesetzlosigkeit  
 to lay legen, — down niederlegen

lazy faul  
 to lead zu führen zu  
 leaf das Blatt 2  
 to learn lernen  
 learned gelehrt  
 a — man ein Gelehrter  
 at least wenigstens, mindestens  
 in the least im geringsten  
 leather das Leder  
 leave der Abschied  
 to leave verlassen (ie, a), abreißen,  
     überlassen  
 to leave off aufhören  
 to lecture lesen (a, e) über  
 left links  
 to have — übrig haben  
 left hand links  
 leisure for Ruhe zu  
 lemon die Citrone  
 to lend leihen (ie, ie)  
 lesson die Lektion, Stunde  
 lest damit nicht  
 to let vermieten  
 to be let vermieten  
 to let alone in Ruhe lassen  
 letter der Brief 1  
 liar der Lügner  
 liberal freigebig, liberal  
 liberality die Freigebigkeit  
 liberty die Freiheit  
 library die Bibliothek  
 licentious leichtfertig  
 to lie liegen (a, e), lügen (o, o)  
 lieutenant der Lieutenant  
 life das Leben  
 light leicht, hell  
     — minded leichtsinnig  
 to light erleuchten  
 light das Licht 2  
 light-house der Leuchtturm  
 to lighten bligen  
 lightening der Blitz 1  
 flash of — der Blitzstrahl 5  
 to like gern haben, gefallen (ie, a)  
 I like it es gefällt mir  
 to like better lieber haben, besser  
     gefallen  
 to like best am liebsten haben  
 like (adv.) gleich (dat.), wie

likeness die Ähnlichkeit, das Bild 2  
 lily die Lilie  
 lime-tree die Linde  
 to limp hinken  
 line die Zeile  
 lion der Löwe 4  
 liquid flüssig  
 to listen to hören auf  
 little klein, wenig  
 to live leben, wohnen  
     — upon leben von  
 lodgings die Wohnung  
 long lang  
 to long for verlangen nach  
 to look at sehen, betrachten  
 to look about umher sehen (a, e),  
     — blicken  
 to look forward with pleasure to  
     sich freuen auf  
 to look like aussehen wie  
 looking-glass der Spiegel  
 to lose in verlieren (o, o) an, nach-  
     gehen (of a watch)  
 to be lost untergehen (ship)  
 loss der Verlust 1  
 lot das Los 1  
 loud laut  
 love die Liebe  
 to love lieben  
 low niedrig  
 luck das Glück  
 lucky glücklich.  
 Magazine das Magazin  
 magnificent prachtvoll  
 Mahometanism Muhamedanismus  
 to maintain behaupten  
 major der Major 1  
 to make machen  
     — haste sich eilen  
 malicious schadenstroh  
 malleable dehnbar  
 malt das Malz  
 man der Mann 1  
 manners die Manieren  
 to manufacture fabrizieren  
 many viele  
 many a mancher, e, es  
 to march marschieren  
 market der Markt 1

to marry heiraten  
 to be married verheiratet sein  
 mass die Masse  
 mast der Mast 1  
 master der Lehrer, Herr 4  
 — piece das Meisterstück  
 materially wesentlich  
 matter die Sache  
 it does not — es thut nichts  
 meadow die Wiese  
 to mean meinen  
 meaning die Bedeutung  
 by means of mittelst, mittelst  
 by all means durchaus  
 measles die Mäserten  
 measure das Maß 1  
 meat das Fleisch  
 medical skill die ärztliche Kunst  
 medicament das Heilmittel  
 medicine die Medizin  
 to take — Medizin einnehmen  
 to meet begegnen (dat.), treffen,  
 antreffen (a, o)  
 to come to meet entgegen kommen  
 to melt schmelzen (a, o)  
 memory das Gedächtnis  
 to mend ausbessern  
 mental geistig  
 merchant der Kaufmann  
 merit das Verdienst 1  
 merry lustig, fröhlich  
 metal das Metall 1  
 precious — edles —  
 middle die Mitte  
 midnight die Mitternacht  
 midsummer Johanni  
 mighty mächtig  
 migration die Wanderung  
 migratory-bird der Zugvogel  
 mile die Meile  
 military militärisch  
 — academy die Kriegsschule  
 — band die Militärmusik  
 milk die Milch  
 million die Million  
 mind der Geist 2, die Lust, der Sinn 1  
 to have a mind to Lust haben zu  
 to mind acht geben, hören auf  
 to mind of erinnern an

mine das Bergwerk 1  
 minute die Minute  
 minutely genau, sorgfältig  
 misbehaviour schlechtes Betragen  
 miser der Geizhals  
 miserable from elend vor  
 misfortune das Unglück  
 to mislead verführen  
 to miss vermissen, entbehren  
 — the aim das Ziel verfehlen  
 mistake der Fehler, Irrtum 2  
 to be mistaken sich irren  
 to misunderstand mißverstehen (a, a)  
 to mock at spotten über  
 model das Muster  
 modern neu  
 moment der Augenblick 1  
 Monday der Montag  
 money das Geld  
 monk der Mönch 1  
 monkey der Affe 4  
 month der Monat 1  
 monument das Denkmal 2  
 moon der Mond 1  
 moon-shine der Mondschein  
 more mehr, some — noch einige,  
 noch etwas  
 no more nicht mehr, kein mehr  
 morning der Morgen  
 in the — morgens  
 to morrow morgen  
 — night — Abend  
 — morning — früh  
 mortal sterblich  
 to mortify fränken  
 moss das Moos 1  
 most meist, —ly meistens, at —  
 höchstens  
 mother die Mutter 3  
 to mount aufsteigen, besteigen (ie, ie)  
 mountain der Berg 1  
 range of —s das Gebirge 1  
 to mourn over trauern über  
 mouse die Maus 1  
 — trap die Mausefalle  
 to move fortbewegen  
 to mow mähen  
 mower der Mäher  
 much viel

music die Musik  
 — school die Musikschule  
 mustard der Senf.  
 Nail der Nagel  
 naked nackt  
 name der Name 5  
 Naples Neapel  
 narrow eng  
 nation die Nation  
 native country das Vaterland  
 nature die Natur  
 naughty, unartig  
 naval battle die Seeschlacht  
 near (pp.) neben, (adv.) nahe bei  
 nearly beinahe  
 necessary notwendig  
 needle die Nadel  
 to neglect vernachlässigen  
 neighbour der Nachbar 5, der Mit-  
 mensch 4, der Nächste  
 neighbourhood die Nachbarschaft  
 neither — nor weder — noch  
 nephew der Nefse  
 nest das Nest 2  
 never nie  
 nevertheless gleichwohl, dessen  
 ungeachtet  
 new neu, — year das Neujahr  
 news die Neuigkeit, Nachricht  
 newspaper die Zeitung  
 next nächst, — time das nächste Mal,  
 in the — nächsten  
 niece die Nichte  
 night die Nacht 1, at — abends,  
 nachts, last — gestern Abend,  
 to — heute Abend  
 no kein, no more kein mehr, nicht mehr  
 nobody niemand  
 noise der Lärm, das Geräusch  
 none keiner, e, s  
 noon der Mittag 1  
 at noon mittags  
 nor auch nicht, noch  
 north der Norden  
 — America Nordamerika  
 — pole der Nordpol  
 not nicht, — any keine  
 not any body niemand  
 not anything nichts

not at all gar nicht  
 note (of music) die Note  
 noted bekannt  
 nothing nichts  
 notwithstanding dessen ungeachtet  
 not yet noch nicht  
 novel der Roman 1  
 now jetzt, nun  
 nowhere nirgends  
 number die Zahl  
 numerous zahlreich  
 nut die Nuß 1.  
 Oats der Hafer  
 to obey gehorchen (dat.)  
 to be obliged müssen, verbunden sein  
 to obtain erhalten (ie, a), bekommen  
 (a, o), sich erwerben (a, o)  
 occasion die Gelegenheit  
 to occupy with beschäftigen mit  
 ocean der Ozean  
 o'clock, at two — um zwei Uhr  
 offence die Beleidigung  
 offer das Anerbieten  
 to offer anbieten (o, o), darbieten,  
 bieten, opfern  
 officer der Offizier 1  
 often oft  
 oil das Öl  
 old alt, old man der Greis 1  
 on auf, — it darauf, — the top of  
 oben auf, — the other side  
 drüben  
 once einmal, once more noch einmal,  
 at — sogleich  
 only nur, erst (Zeit), adj. einzig  
 open offen  
 to open öffnen, aufmachen, aufthun  
 opponent der Gegner  
 opportunity die Gelegenheit  
 opposite gegenüber (dat.)  
 or oder  
 orchard der Obstdgarten  
 to order verordnen, bestellen, machen  
 lassen  
 order die Ordnung, der Befehl, das  
 Verbot  
 in order to um zu  
 origin die Herkunft  
 ornament die Zierde

orphan die Waise  
 other ander  
 another noch ein  
 otherwise anders, sonst  
 ours der, die, das unsrige  
 out (adv.) heraus, hinaus  
 out of (pp.) aus (dat.)  
 outside (pp.) außerhalb (gen.), vor  
 outside (adv.) draußen  
 over (pp.) über (dat. and acc.)  
 over (adv.) herüber, hinüber  
 to overhurry übereilen  
 to oversleep sich verschlafen (ie, a)  
 to overtake einholen  
 own eigen  
 ox der Ochse 4.  
 to Pack up packen  
 paganism das Heidentum  
 page die Seite  
 pain der Schmerz 5  
 painful schmerzlich, peinlich  
 to paint malen  
 painting-school die Malerschule  
 pair das Paar 1  
 palace der Palast 1, das Schloß 2  
 pale blaß  
 Palestine Palästina  
 paper das Papier 1, die Tapete  
 parade die Parade  
 paradise das Paradies  
 parasol der Sonnenschirm 1  
 parcel das Paket 1  
 to pardon verzeihen (ie, ie), begnadigen  
 pardon die Verzeihung  
 parents die Eltern  
 parlour die Wohnstube  
 parsonage das Pfarrhaus 2  
 part der Teil 1  
 particular besonders  
 — ly besonders  
 to participate sich beteiligen an  
 participation die Beteiligung  
 party die Gesellschaft  
 to pass vorbeigehen, —fahren, be-  
 stehen (examination)  
 to pass away vergehen (i, a)  
 passage der Ausgang 1, die Stelle  
 (of a book)  
 passion die Leidenschaft

past nach, über  
 passenger der Passagier 1  
 patient geduldig  
 patriotic patriotisch  
 to pay for bezahlen  
 — attention acht geben  
 payment die Bezahlung  
 pea die Erbse  
 peace der Frieden  
 to make — Frieden schließen (o, o)  
 to peal schälen  
 pear die Birne  
 — tree der Birnbaum 1  
 pearl die Perle  
 peasant der Bauer 5  
 pen die Feder  
 — holder der Federhalter  
 — knife das Federmesser  
 pencil der Bleistift 1  
 to penetrate eindringen (a, u)  
 people die Leute, das Volk  
 perhaps vielleicht  
 to perish umkommen (a, o)  
 permission die Erlaubnis  
 to permit erlauben  
 perpetual beständig  
 perseverance die Ausdauer  
 to persecute verfolgen  
 Persian der Perser  
 Persian persisch  
 philosopher der Philosoph 4  
 Phoenician der Phönizier  
 physician der Arzt 1  
 picture das Bild 2  
 piece das Stück 1  
 — of poetry das Gedicht 1  
 piercing schneidend, scharf  
 pigeon die Taube  
 pin die Stednadel  
 pious fromm  
 pipe die Pfeife  
 to pity beklagen, bedauern  
 place der Platz 1, die Stelle  
 to plague plagen  
 plain einfach, eben  
 plain die Ebene  
 plan der Plan 1  
 plant die Pflanze  
 plate der Teller

to play spielen  
 play-ground der Spielplatz 1  
 play das Spiel, Schauspiel 1  
 pleasant angenehm, freundlich  
 please bitte, gefälligst  
 to please gefallen (ie, a)  
 pleasure das Vergnügen  
 plot der Fleden  
 to pluck pflücken, — out ausreißn (i, i)  
 plum die Pflaume, Zwetsche  
 to plunder plündern  
 pocket die Tasche  
 — handkerchief das Taschentuch  
 poem das Gedicht 1, die Dichtung  
 poet der Dichter  
 pointed spitz  
 poison das Gift 1  
 Poland Polen  
 polar ice das Polareis  
 — expedition — expédition  
 pole der Pol, die Stange  
 politics die Politik  
 pond der Teich 1  
 poor arm  
 pope der Pappst  
 population die Bevölkerung  
 populous volkreich  
 porcelain das Porzellan  
 pork das Schweinefleisch  
 port der Hafen  
 position die Stellung  
 possession der Besitz  
 possible möglich  
 postman der Briefträger  
 post-office die Post  
 pot der Topf 1  
 potato die Kartoffel  
 poultry das Geflügel  
 pound das Pfund 1  
 power die Macht 1, die Kraft 1  
 great power Großmacht 1  
 powerful mächtig  
 pox, small — die Pocken (plur.)  
 praise das Lob, to — loben  
 to pray beten, bitten (a, e)  
 to preach predigen  
 precious kostbar, teuer  
 to prefer vorziehen (o, o)  
 to prepare for vorbereiten auf

prescription die Vorschrift  
 presence die Gegenwart  
 present gegenwärtig, zugegen  
 at present jetzt  
 present das Geschenk 1  
 presently gleich, nachher  
 preservation die Erhaltung  
 to preserve from bewahren vor  
 to pretend to be sich ausgeben für  
 pretty hübsch, schön  
 to prevail vorherrschen  
 price der Preis  
 prince der Prinz 4, Fürst 4  
 principal — Haupt —  
 principality das Fürstentum 2  
 principle der Grundsatz 1  
 print der Druck, out of — vergiffen  
 prison das Gefängnis  
 prisoner der Gefangene  
 private gentleman Privatmann  
 privation die Entbehrung  
 probable wahrscheinlich  
 to proclaim ausrufen zu  
 product das Produkt 1  
 profit der Gewinn 1  
 to make profit in gewinnen an  
 to project projektieren  
 to promise versprechen (a, o)  
 to promote befördern  
 proof der Beweis 1  
 properly gehörig, richtig  
 property das Eigentum, Vermögen  
 to propose vorschlagen (u, a)  
 to protect from schützen gegen  
 Protestant der Protestant 4  
 proud to stolz gegen, — of stolz auf  
 to prove beweisen (ie, ie)  
 proverb das Sprichwort 2  
 to provide for versorgen, versehen (a, e)  
 provided vorausgesetzt daß  
 province die Provinz  
 prudent klug  
 Prussia Preußen, Prussian preussisch  
 pump die Pumpe  
 punctual pünktlich  
 to punish bestrafen  
 punishment die Strafe  
 pupil der Schüler, Zögling 1  
 purchase der Einkauf 1



pure rein  
 to purify reinigen, läutern  
 to purpose beabsichtigen  
 purse der Geldbeutel  
 to push against stoßen (ie, o) an  
 to put stellen, legen, thun (a, a), stecken  
 to put on anziehen (o, o), aufsetzen  
 to put off verschieben (o, o), aufschieben.  
 Quack der Quacksalber  
 to quarrel streiten (i, i), sich zanken  
 quarter das Viertel  
 — of an hour eine Viertelstunde  
 queen die Königin  
 to quench löschen  
 question die Frage  
 quick schnell  
 quicksilver das Quecksilber  
 quiet ruhig  
 quill die Gänsefeder  
 to quit verlassen (ie, a)  
 quite ganz.  
 Rain der Regen, to — regnen  
 rainy regnerisch  
 railway die Eisenbahn, — bridge  
 — brücke, — station der Bahnhof  
 to raise erheben zu, in  
 range of mountains das Gebirge 1  
 rank der Rang  
 — of prince der Fürstenstand  
 rare, —ly selten  
 rat die Ratte  
 rather lieber, ziemlich  
 razor das Rasiermesser  
 reach der Reich, to — erreichen  
 real, —ly wirklich  
 to reap ernten  
 reason die Vernunft  
 to receive erhalten (ie, a), empfangen  
 (ie, a), bekommen (a, o)  
 reception der Empfang  
 to recognize erkennen (a, a)  
 to recommence wieder anfangen  
 to recommend empfehlen (a, o)  
 record die Nachricht, der Bericht 1  
 to reconcile versöhnen  
 to recover sich erholen, gesund werden,  
 herstellen  
 recovery die Wiederherstellung,  
 Genesung

to read lesen (a, e)  
 — to einem vorlesen  
 to recreate erquicken  
 red rot, — hot glühend  
 to reflect on nachdenken über  
 to refresh erfrischen  
 regards Grüße (plur.)  
 region die Region  
 to regret bedauern  
 regularly regelmäßig  
 to regulate regeln, regulieren  
 reign die Regierung  
 to reign over herrschen über  
 to rejoice at sich freuen über  
 to relate erzählen  
 to relieve erlösen, erleichtern  
 religion die Religion  
 to rely upon sich verlassen auf  
 to remain bleiben (ie, ie, sein)  
 remark die Bemerkung  
 to remember grüßen, sich erinnern  
 (gen.), gedenken (a, a)  
 to remind of erinnern an  
 remote entfernt  
 renown der Ruf  
 to repeat wiederholen  
 repeatedly wiederholt  
 to reply to antworten auf  
 to report berichten  
 report die Nachricht, der Bericht  
 to repose ruhen  
 to reprimand tadeln  
 reproach der Vorwurf 1  
 republic die Republik  
 republican der Republikaner  
 request die Bitte  
 to request bitten, ersuchen  
 to require erfordern  
 to rescue retten  
 to resemble gleichen (i, i) dat.  
 to resist widerstehen (a, a) dat.  
 to respect achten  
 in respect in Hinsicht  
 respectfully achtungsvoll  
 to rest ruhen  
 to restore herstellen  
 to return zurückkehren, zurückkommen,  
 zurückgeben  
 to revere verehren

to reward belohnen  
 reward die Belohnung, der Lohn  
 rice der Reis  
 rich in reich an  
 riches der Reichtum 2  
 to ride on horseback reiten (i, i)  
 — off wegreiten  
 — in a carriage fahren (u, a)  
 rider der Reiter  
 rifle die Büchse  
 right recht, to be — recht haben  
 righteousness die Gerechtigkeit  
 ring der Ring 1  
 ripe reif  
 to rise sich erheben (o, o)  
 to risk wagen  
 river der Fluß 1  
 to roar brüllen  
 roaring das Gebrüll  
 to roast rösten, braten  
 robber der Räuber  
 rock der Fels, Felsen  
 Roman der Römer, römisch  
 roof das Dach 2  
 room das Zimmer  
 root die Wurzel  
 rose die Rose  
 rough rauh, unruhig  
 to be rough (sea) hoch gehen  
 round rund, in der Runde  
 to row rudern  
 rowing-boat das Ruderboot 1  
 royalty das Königtum  
 rude roh  
 to ruin zu Grunde richten  
 ruin das Verderben, (plur.) die Ruine  
 rule die Regel  
 to run laufen (ie, au) (sein)  
 — away weglaufen  
 to rush upon sich stürzen auf  
 Russia Rußland  
 Russian der Russe, russisch  
 rye der Roggen.  
 Sabel der Sabel  
 to sacrifice opfern  
 sad traurig  
 safely glücklich  
 sage der Weise  
 to sail fahren, segeln

sailor der Matrose, Seemann  
 for the sake of halben, um — willen  
 (gen.)  
 saloon der Saal 1  
 salt das Salz  
 salted gesalzen  
 the same der-, die-, dasselbe  
 sample die Probe  
 satisfied zufrieden  
 Saturday der Samstag  
 to save retten  
 to say sagen  
 scaffold das Schaffot  
 scarce selten, — ly kaum  
 to scare erschrecken  
 school die Schule  
 science die Wissenschaft  
 sea die See, das Meer 1  
 to go to the sea-side an die See gehen  
 sea-sick seetrant  
 to sail segeln  
 season die Jahreszeit  
 seat der Sitz 1  
 to see sehen (a, e)  
 to seem scheinen (ie, ie)  
 selfish selbstsüchtig  
 to sell verkaufen  
 senate der Senat 1  
 to send schicken, senden (a, a)  
 — off abschicken  
 — for holen lassen  
 — word sagen lassen  
 sense der Verstand  
 sentence der Satz 1  
 to separate trennen  
 sergeant der Unteroffizier  
 serious ernst  
 — ly ernsthaft, ernstlich  
 sermon die Predigt  
 servant, man — der Diener, der  
 Bediente [foot-man]  
 to serve dienen  
 service der Dienst 1  
 to set aufstellen, — about something  
 sich an etwas machen  
 a set die Garnitur  
 to settle sich niederlassen, sich setzen  
 several mehrere  
 — times mehrmals

severe streng, hart  
 to sew nähen  
 shade der Schatten, — less Schattenlos  
 shady schattig  
 sharp scharf, schlau  
 sheet der Bogen  
 shelter, to take — Schutz suchen  
 to shine scheinen (ie, ie)  
 ship das Schiff, — wreck der Schiff-  
   bruch  
 shirt das Hemd 5  
 shoe der Schuh 1  
 shoemaker der Schuhmacher  
 shooter der Schütze  
 shop der Laden  
 short kurz, — sighted kurzfristig  
 to be — of fehlen an  
 to shout jauchzen  
 shouts der Jubel  
 to show zeigen  
 shrove-tide die Fastnacht 4  
 sick krank, sick-bed das Krankenbett  
 side die Seite  
 by the — of (pp.) neben  
 on this — diesseits (gen.)  
 on that — jenseits (gen.)  
 on the other — drüben (adv.)  
 to sign unterschreiben (ie, ie)  
 sight das Gesicht, die Augen, der Anblick  
 out of sight aus den Augen  
 silent still, schweigend  
 to keep silent schweigen (ie, ie)  
 to remain — sich ruhig verhalten  
 silly albern  
 silver das Silber, of — silbern  
 sin die Sünde, to — sündigen  
 sincere, —ly aufrichtig  
 to sing singen (a, u)  
 to sink sinken (a, u)  
 sister die Schwester  
 to sit, to be seated sitzen (a, e)  
 to sit down sich setzen  
 to sit up wachen  
 to be situated liegen (a, e)  
 situation die Lage  
 size die Größe  
 skate der Schlittschuh 1  
 to skate Schlittschuh laufen  
 skater Schlittschuhläufer

skating-rink die Rollbahn  
 skilful geschickt  
 skill die Geschicklichkeit  
 to skin abziehen (o, o)  
 skin die Haut 1  
 sky der Himmel  
 slave der Sklave  
 sledge der Schlitten  
 asleep der Schlaf, to — schlafen (ie, a)  
 sleepy schläfrig  
 slipper der Pantoffel 5  
 slow langsam  
 to be slow (watch) nachgehen (i, a)  
 smell der Geruch 3  
 to smell of riechen (o, o) nach  
 to smile lächeln  
 to smoke rauchen  
 to snow schneien  
 snow der Schnee, — fall Schneefall,  
   — line die Schneelinie  
 soberly mäßig  
 sobriety die Mäßigkeit  
 sociability Geselligkeit  
 society die Gesellschaft  
 soil der Boden  
 soldier der Soldat 4  
 solitude die Einsamkeit  
 some etwas, einige  
   — more noch, noch etwas, noch einige  
 somebody jemand  
 sometimes manchmal, zuweilen  
 son der Sohn 1  
 song das Lied 2  
 soon bald, — erst baldigst  
 as soon as possible so bald als möglich  
 sorry leid, I am — es ist mir leid  
 soul die Seele  
 soup die Suppe  
 sour sauer  
 south der Süden  
 southern südlich  
 sovereign der Herrscher  
 sovereignty die Herrschaft  
 to sow säen  
 space der Raum 1  
 Spain Spanien  
 Spanish spanisch  
 to spare entbehren  
 Spartan der Spartaner

to speak sprechen (a, o)  
 spectacles eine Brille  
 speech die Rede  
 speedy baldig  
 spendthrift der Verschwender  
 spice das Gewürz 1  
 to spin spinnen (a, o)  
 spirit der Geist 2  
 spirits die Saune  
 in spite of trotz (pp.) gen.  
 splendid prächtig, prachtvoll  
 spoon der Löffel  
 to sprain verrenken  
 to spread verbreiten  
 spring der Frühling  
 to squander verschwenden  
 stable der Stall 1  
 staff der Generalstab  
 stag der Hirsch  
 stain der Flecken  
 stairs die Treppe  
 to stand stehen (a, a), sich stellen  
 to start abgehen, abreißen, abfahren  
 to state berichten  
 state der Staat  
 statesman der Staatsmann  
 station der Bahnhof  
 to stay bleiben  
 to stay behind zurückbleiben  
 stay der Aufenthalt  
 to steal stehlen (a, o)  
 steam der Dampf 1  
 — engine die Dampfmaschine  
 steamer das Dampfschiff 1  
 steel der Stahl, — pen Stahlfeder  
 steep steil  
 to steer steuern  
 to step treten, steigen, sich stellen  
 — in einsteigen (ie, ie)  
 — out aussteigen  
 stick der Stod 1  
 still noch  
 stipulation die Bestimmung  
 stocking der Strumpf 1  
 stomach der Magen  
 stone der Stein 1, — bottle der Trug 1  
 store der Vorrat 1  
 storm der Sturm, das Gewitter  
 stormy stürmisch

stove der Ofen  
 strange fremd  
 stranger der Fremde  
 strategist der Strategier  
 street die Straße  
 strength die Stärke  
 to strengthen stärken  
 strict streng, — ness die Strenge  
 stroke of the heart Herzschlag  
 to stroll about herumhulndern  
 strong stark  
 to study studieren  
 to succeed gelingen (a, u)  
 I have succeeded es ist mir gelungen  
 success der Erfolg 1  
 successful erfolgreich, glücklich  
 successor der Nachfolger  
 such solcher, e, es  
 suddenly plötzlich  
 to suffer from leiden an, erleiden,  
 erdulden  
 suffering das Leiden  
 sufficient hinreichend  
 sugar der Zucker  
 sultry schwül  
 suit der Anzug 1  
 suitable, to be — sich schicken  
 sum die Summe, die Rechenaufgabe  
 summer der Sommer  
 summit der Gipfel  
 sun die Sonne  
 — set der Sonnenuntergang  
 — rise der Sonnenaufgang  
 — shine der Sonnenschein  
 Sunday der Sonntag  
 superior der Vorgesetzte  
 supper das Abendessen  
 to support unterstützen, sich stützen  
 — one's self sich ernähren  
 to suppose vermuten  
 surely gewiß  
 surgeon der Chirurg  
 surprise die Überraschung  
 to surprise überraschen  
 to surrender sich ergeben  
 to survive überleben  
 suspicious argwöhnisch  
 to sustain bestehen (a, a)  
 swallow die Schwalbe

Swede der Schwede  
 sweet süß  
 to swim schwimmen (a, o)  
 swimmer der Schwimmer  
 swindler der Schwindler  
 swindling der Schwindel  
 sympathetic teilnehmend.  
 Table der Tisch 1  
 tail der Schwanz, Schweif  
 tailor der Schneider  
 to take nehmen (a, o)  
   — for verwechseln mit  
   — off ausziehen, abnehmen  
   — care of acht geben auf, sorgen für  
   — medicine Medicin einnehmen  
   — part in teil nehmen an  
 tale die Sage  
 talk das Gespräch 1  
 tall groß  
 task die Arbeit, Aufgabe  
 to taste of schmecken nach  
 taste der Geschmack  
 tea der Thee  
 to teach lehren  
 teacher der Lehrer  
 to tear zerreißen (i, i)  
 to tell sagen, erzählen  
 temperature die Temperatur  
 templar der Tempelherr  
 temptation die Versuchung  
 ten zehn  
 tender zart  
 serpentine der Serpentin  
 to thank danken (dat.)  
 thanksgiving der Dank  
 than als  
 that jener, e, es; das (gen. dessen)  
 that (conj.) daß  
 thaw der Tau, to — tauen  
 theatre das Theater  
 Theban der Thebaner  
 then dann  
 there da, dort, hin, hinein  
 therefore darum, deshalb, deswegen  
 thick dick  
 to thicken into sich verdichten zu  
 thin dünn  
 thing das Ding 1, die Sache  
 to think of denken an, glauben

to think rich für reich halten  
 thirst der Durst, —y durstig  
 this dieser, e, es  
 thoroughly durchaus, völlig  
 thought der Gedanke 5  
 to thrive vorankommen  
 throat der Hals 1, sore — Halsweh  
 throne der Thron 1  
 through durch (acc.)  
 to throw werfen (a, o)  
   — away wegwerfen  
 thunder der Donner, to — donnern  
   — storm das Gewitter  
 Thursday der Donnerstag  
 tie die Halsbinde  
 tight eng, knapp  
 till bis  
 time die Zeit, das Mal  
 for the first — zum ersten Mal  
 by times zu Zeiten  
 tired müde  
 to zu, nach, bis  
 tobacco der Tabak  
 together zusammen  
 tonic stärkend, kräftig  
 to toil arbeiten  
 too auch, too much zu viel  
 tooth der Zahn 1, —ache das Zahnweh  
 topic das Gespräch 1  
 tourist der Tourist 4  
 towards gegen  
 tower der Turm  
 tract die Fläche  
 trade der Handel, das Gewerbe  
 wine — Weinhandel  
 train der Zug 1  
 transaction das Geschäft  
 to translate übersetzen  
 translation die Übersetzung  
 transparent durchsichtig  
 to travel reisen  
 traveller der Reisende  
 travelling das Reisen  
 for — zum Reisen  
 treatise on die Abhandlung über  
 treatment die Behandlung  
 tree der Baum 1  
 tremendous fürchterlich  
 trifle, trifling cause die Kleinigkeit

to triumph over triumphieren über  
trouble die Mühe, die Not  
troublesome beschwerlich, lästig  
true wahr  
truly ergebenst  
to trust in hoffen auf, sich verlassen  
auf, vertrauen auf  
truth die Wahrheit  
to try versuchen, suchen  
Tuesday der Dienstag  
to tumble down hinfallen  
tune die Melodie  
Turk der Türke  
Turkey die Türkei  
Turkish türkisch  
turn die Wendung  
tutor der Lehrer  
twelve zwölf  
twenty zwanzig  
two zwei.  
Umbrella der Regenschirm 1  
uncivilized uncivilisiert  
uncle der Onkel  
unconsciously unbewußt  
under unter (dat. and acc.)  
to understand verstehen (a, a)  
to undertake unternehmen (a, o)  
undertaking das Unternehmen  
uneasy unruhig  
unexpected unerwartet  
unhappy unglücklich  
unhealthy ungesund  
unintentional fahrlässig  
united vereint, vereinigt  
university die Universität  
unless wenn nicht  
unlucky unglücklich  
unnecessary unnötig  
unripe unreif  
until bis  
untruth die Unwahrheit  
unwell unwohl  
unwholesome ungesund  
up herauf, hinauf  
upon auf (dat. and acc.)  
urgent dringend  
to use gebrauchen, benutzen, pflegen  
use der Gebrauch 1  
of no use, useless nutzlos

usual gewöhnlich.  
Vaccination das Impfen  
in vain vergebens  
valley das Thal 2  
value der Wert 1  
valuable wertvoll  
to vanquish siegen  
vapour der Dampf 1, Dunst 1  
vast groß, ungeheuer  
veal das Kalbfleisch  
vegetable das Gemüse  
— s die Vegetabilien  
— garden Gemüsegarten  
verb das Verb 5  
verily wahrlich  
very sehr  
vexation der Verdruß  
to be vexed at sich ärgern über  
vice das Laster  
vicious lasterhaft  
victorious siegreich  
victory der Sieg 1  
Vienna Wien  
view die Aussicht  
vigorous kräftig  
villa die Villa (plur. en)  
village das Dorf 2  
vinyard der Weinberg 1  
violent heftig  
violin die Violine, Geige  
virtue die Tugend  
in — of kraft (gen.)  
virtuous tugendhaft  
visible sichtbar  
visit der Besuch  
to pay a — einen Besuch machen  
to visit besuchen  
volcano der Vulkan 1  
volume der Band 1  
vow das Gelübde 1  
voyage die Reise.  
to Wait for warten auf  
to wake wecken  
to walk gehen (i, a)  
to take a — spazieren gehen, einen  
Spaziergang machen  
wall die Mauer, die Wand 1  
to want brauchen, wünschen, fehlen an  
for — of aus Mangel an

war der Krieg 1  
ward-robe der Kleiderkram  
warm warm, to — wärmen  
to warn against warnen vor  
warning die Warnung  
to wash waschen (u, a)  
wash hand-stand der Waschtisch 1  
watch die Uhr  
watchmaker der Uhrmacher  
water das Wasser  
water-place der Badeort 1, das Bad 2  
waterworks Wasserleitung  
to water begießen (o, o)  
wave die Welle  
wax das Wachs  
way der Weg 1, half — halbwegs  
in his — in seiner Art, auf seine Art  
wealthy wohlhabend  
to wear tragen (u, a)  
wearisome mühsam, beschwerlich  
weather das Wetter  
Wednesday der Mittwoch  
week die Woche  
— day der Wochentag  
weight das Gewicht, die Last  
welcome willkommen  
welfare das Wohlergehen  
well wohl, gut, nun  
well der Brunnen  
wet naß  
what was, was für, was für ein  
wheat der Weizen  
when wann, wenn, als  
where wo, wohin, — from woher  
— to wohin  
which welcher, e, es; der, die, das  
while die Weile  
for a — eine Zeit lang  
to whistle pfeifen (t, t)  
white weiß  
Whitsuntide die Pfingsten  
who wer; welcher, e, es  
whole gang  
wholesome gesund  
whose dessen, dessen  
why warum, nun  
wicked gottlos, böse  
wide weit

widow die Witwe  
wife die Frau  
wild wild  
will der Wille 5, das Testament 1  
to be willing wollen  
willingly gern  
to win gewinnen (a, o)  
wind der Wind 1  
window das Fenster  
windy windig  
wine der Wein  
— merchant — Händler  
wise weise  
wish der Wunsch 1, to — wünschen  
with mit, bei (dat.)  
without ohne (acc.)  
wolf der Wolf 1  
woman die Frau  
to wonder at sich wundern über  
wood das Holz 2, der Wald 2  
woody waldig  
wool die Wolle  
word das Wort 1. 2  
to work arbeiten  
— hard sich anstrengen  
work das Werk 1, die Arbeit  
to do a — eine Arbeit machen  
world die Welt  
worsted wollen  
worth der Wert  
wound die Wunde  
to dress a — eine Wunde ver-  
binden  
to wreck scheitern  
to write to schreiben (ie, ie) an  
writing die Schrift  
wrong unrecht  
to wrong unrecht thun  
to do wrong fehlen  
to be wrong unrecht haben.  
Yard der Hof 1  
year das Jahr 1  
yellow gelb  
yes ja, ja wohl  
yesterday gestern  
the day before — vorgestern  
yet doch, dennoch  
youth die Jugend, der Jüngling.

1/2

1)

1/2

- 1/2

1/2  
1/2

1



war der Krieg 1  
ward-robe der Kleiderschrank  
warm warm, to — wärmen  
to warn against warnen vor  
warning die Warnung  
to wash waschen (u, a)  
wash hand-stand der Waschtisch 1  
watch die Uhr  
watchmaker der Uhrmacher  
water das Wasser  
water-place der Badeort 1, das Bad 2  
waterworks Wasserleitung  
to water begießen (o, o)  
wave die Welle  
wax das Wachs  
way der Weg 1, half — halbwegs  
in his — in seiner Art, auf seine Art  
wealthy wohlhabend  
to wear tragen (u, a)  
wearisome mühsam, beschwerlich  
weather das Wetter  
Wednesday der Mittwoch  
week die Woche  
— day der Wochentag  
weight das Gewicht, die Last  
welcome willkommen  
welfare das Wohlergehen  
well wohl, gut, nun  
well der Brunnen  
wet naß  
what was, was für, was für ein  
wheat der Weizen  
when wann, wenn, als  
where wo, wohin, — from woher  
— to wohin  
which welcher, e, es; der, die, das  
while die Weile  
for a — eine Zeit lang  
to whistle pfeifen (i, i)  
white weiß  
Whitsuntide die Pfingsten  
who wer; welcher, e, es  
whole ganz  
wholesome gesund  
whose dessen, dessen  
why warum, nun  
wicked gottlos, böse  
wide weit

widow die Witwe  
wife die Frau  
wild wild  
will der Wille 5, das Testament 1  
to be willing wollen  
willingly gern  
to win gewinnen (a, o)  
wind der Wind 1  
window das Fenster  
windy windig  
wine der Wein  
— merchant — Händler  
wise weise  
wish der Wunsch 1, to — wünschen  
with mit, bei (dat.)  
without ohne (acc.)  
wolf der Wolf 1  
woman die Frau  
to wonder at sich wundern über  
wood das Holz 2, der Wald 2  
woody waldig  
wool die Wolle  
word das Wort 1. 2  
to work arbeiten  
— hard sich anstrengen  
work das Werk 1, die Arbeit  
to do a — eine Arbeit machen  
world die Welt  
worsted wollen  
worth der Wert  
wound die Wunde  
to dress a — eine Wunde ver-  
binden  
to wreck scheitern  
to write to schreiben (ie, ie) an  
writing die Schrift  
wrong unrecht  
to wrong unrecht thun  
to do wrong fehlen  
to be wrong unrecht haben.  
Yard der Hof 1  
year das Jahr 1  
yellow gelb  
yes ja, ja wohl  
yesterday gestern  
the day before — vorgestern  
yet doch, dennoch  
youth die Jugend, der Jüngling.



